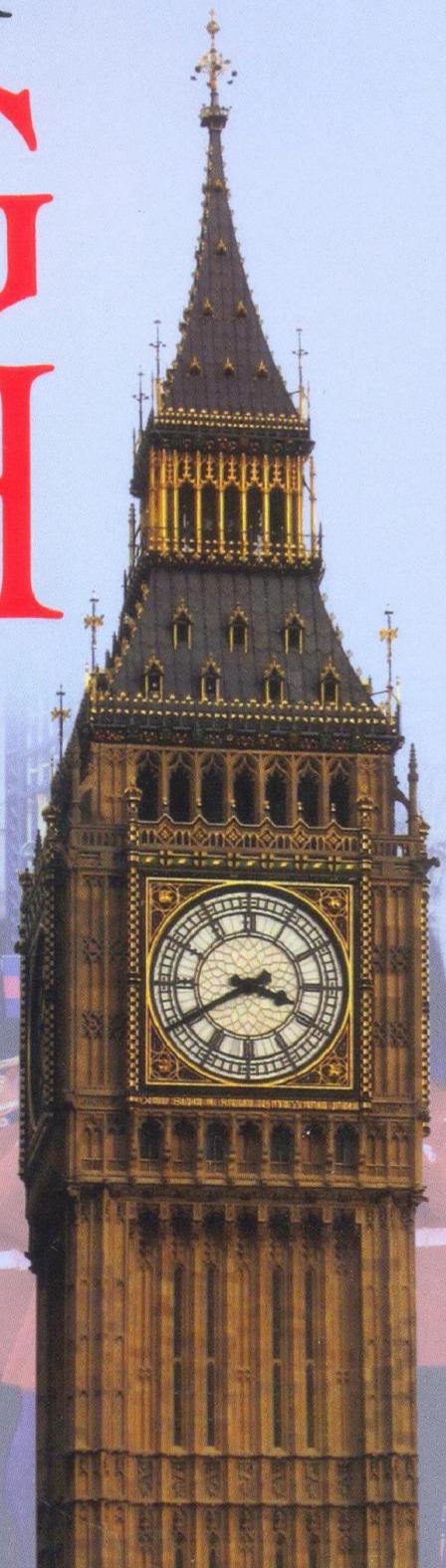


MAI LAN HƯƠNG  
NGUYỄN THANH LOAN

# NGỮ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH

TỦ SÁCH HAY

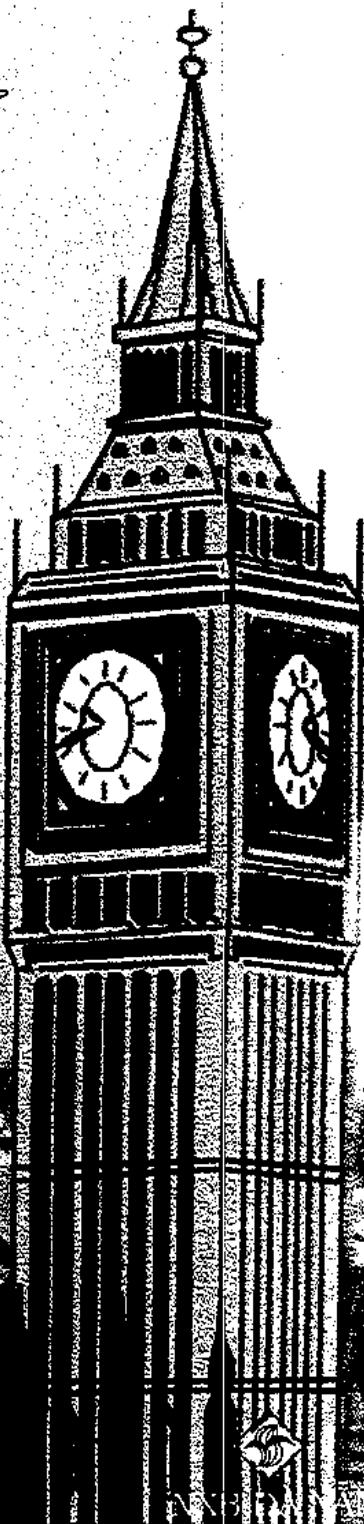


NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐÀ NẴNG

MAI LAN HUONG  
NGUYỄN THANH LOAN

# NGỮ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH

CHỈNH LÍ, BỔ SUNG VÀ THAY ĐỔI KHÓ SÁCH  
TÁI BẢN NĂM 2011



# NGỮ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH

MAI LAN HƯƠNG - NGUYỄN THANH LOAN

---

Chủ trách nhiệm xuất bản:

TRƯỜNG CÔNG BÁO

Tổng biên tập:

HOÀNG VĂN CUNG

Biên tập:

HUỲNH YÊN TRẦM MY

Trình bày:

SAIGONBOOK

Bìa:

TRẦN VĂN NHÂN

Sửa bản in:

QUỲNH MAI

---

**ĐỂ CHỐNG LÀM GIẢ - IN LÂU; CHÚNG TÔI CHO IN  
32 TRANG MÀU CÓ HÌNH CHÌM, CHẤT LƯỢNG CAO.  
XIN QUÝ KHÁCH HÀNG KIỂM TRA ĐỂ TRÁNH MUA  
NHẦM SÁCH GIẢ.**

**Đơn vị liên doanh: CTY TNHH PHÁT HÀNH SÁCH SÀI GÒN**

---

In 1.000 cuốn, khổ 17 x 25 cm, tại Cty cổ phần in Hoa Mai. Số DKKHXB: 549-2009/CXB/ 167 - 01/ĐaN cấp ngày 19 tháng 8 năm 2009; Số 67/QĐ-ĐaN  
Nhà xuất bản Đà Nẵng cấp ngày 28 tháng 01 năm 2010. In xong và nộp lưu  
chiểu tháng 4 năm 2011.

# **LỜI TÁC GIẢ**

## **VIẾT CHO LẦN TÁI BẢN THÁNG 8 NĂM 2008**

**Bạn đọc thân mến !**

Chúng tôi hoàn thành Quyển NGỮ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH này vào năm 2000 và đã được bạn đọc đón nhận nhiệt liệt. Tuy nhiên, sau khi sách bán chạy thì bị bon làm giả - in lâu bẩn lan tràn, khiến chúng tôi không bán được sách. Chúng tôi dự định bỏ hẳn quyển sách này nên đã viết một quyển sách Ngữ pháp tiếng Anh mới lấy tên "Giải thích Ngữ pháp tiếng Anh". Tuy nhiên, rất nhiều người học đã tìm mua quyển "Ngữ Pháp Tiếng Anh" mà tôi đã viết năm 2000 và được tái bản năm 2008 với giá 50.000đ.

Trước tình hình đó chúng tôi thấy có nghĩa vụ phải biên tập, chỉnh lý lại quyển sách cho chính xác, đầy đủ và dễ hiểu hơn. Những chỗ bạn đọc góp ý đều được chúng tôi lưu trữ để xem xét sửa đổi cho thích hợp. Chúng tôi không thay đổi nội dung, bổ xung quyển sách. Tuy nhiên, lần này chúng tôi thu nhỏ cỡ chữ, in trên khổ giấy lớn hơn (bằng với khổ sách giáo khoa 17x24) và hạ giá bán. Để giảm khó khăn cho người học, đặc biệt là học sinh; chúng tôi đã thống nhất với nhà xuất bản Đà Nẵng và nhà sách Quỳnh Mai: **bằng nhiêu biện pháp phối hợp phải giảm giá những tựa sách do chúng tôi biên soạn**. Hy vọng là một ngày gần đây những quyển sách như thế này sẽ rẻ hơn.

Chúng tôi rất mong nhận được thư góp ý phê bình để chúng tôi hoàn thiện sách cho lần tái bản sau.

**Mai Lan Hương**

**Thư góp ý phê bình sách xin gửi đến:**

**TRUNG TÂM BIÊN SOAN DỊCH THUẬT SÁCH SÀI GÒN**

217/4 đường Nơ Trang Long, Q.Bình Thạnh Tp.HCM

Email: saigonbook@hem.fpt.vn

**ĐỂ CHỐNG LÀM GIẢ - IN LÂU; CHÚNG TÔI CHO IN  
32 TRANG MÀU CÓ HÌNH CHÌM, CHẤT LƯỢNG CAO.  
XIN QUÝ KHÁCH HÀNG KIỂM TRA ĐỂ TRÁNH MUA  
NHẦM SÁCH GIẢ.**

# LỜI NÓI ĐẦU

Bạn đọc thân mến!

Bạn đang cầm trên tay cuốn NGỮ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH mà chúng tôi tin tưởng rằng nó đáp ứng đầy đủ và thiết thực nhất những yêu cầu của bạn, nhất là đối với học sinh, sinh viên.

Ngữ pháp là một hệ thống những quy tắc kết cấu của một ngôn ngữ. Muốn nắm bắt ngôn ngữ tiếng Anh, ngoài những yếu tố khác, người học cần phải hiểu đầy đủ, sâu sắc những kiến thức ngữ pháp cơ bản và thực hành thành thạo. Để thỏa mãn những yêu cầu trên, chúng tôi đã dày công nghiên cứu chuyên sâu nhiều tài liệu ngữ pháp tiếng Anh, đồng thời dựa trên kinh nghiệm giảng dạy nhiều năm ở các trường phổ thông cũng như các trung tâm Anh ngữ. Trên cơ sở đó, chúng tôi trình bày bằng một phương pháp sư phạm với phương châm: “THIẾT THỰC – DỄ HIỂU – DỄ NHỚ – DỄ THỰC HÀNH”. Do vậy, nội dung kiến thức trong sách rất cô đọng, súc tích, giản dị và dễ hiểu.

Nhờ sự biên soạn công phu, lại được nhiều đồng nghiệp biên tập và góp ý nên chúng tôi hy vọng rằng cuốn sách sẽ có ít sai sót. Tuy nhiên, chúng tôi rất mong bạn đọc (nhất là các bạn học sinh, sinh viên) trong quá trình sử dụng sách, thấy cần phải sửa đổi, bổ sung ở những phần nào thì xin vui lòng viết thư góp ý cho chúng tôi để sách được hoàn thiện hơn trong những lần xuất bản sau.

Nhóm biên soạn

**ĐỂ CHỐNG LÀM GIẢ - IN LÂU; CHÚNG TÔI CHO IN  
32 TRANG MÀU CÓ HÌNH CHÌM, CHẤT LƯỢNG CAO.  
XIN QUÝ KHÁCH HÀNG KIỂM TRA ĐỂ TRÁNH MUA  
NHẦM SÁCH GIẢ.**

# TENSES (CÁC THÌ)

## 1. Thì hiện tại đơn (The Simple Present Tense)

### a. Cấu trúc (Form)

I, We, You, They + Verb (bare-infinitive)  
He, She, It + Verb + s/es

- Động từ chia ở hiện tại (V<sub>1</sub>)

(Nếu chủ ngữ ở ngôi 3 số ít, ta phải thêm s hoặc es vào sau động từ)

### b. Cách dùng (Usage)

- Thị hiện tại đơn diễn tả một chân lý, một sự thật hiển nhiên.

Ex: The sun rises in the East.

They live in England.

I am a student.

- Thị hiện tại đơn diễn tả một thói quen, một hành động xảy ra thường xuyên ở hiện tại.

Ex: Mary often goes to school by bicycle.

I get up early every morning.

What do you do every night?

- Thị hiện tại đơn còn được dùng để diễn tả hành động, sự việc tương lai sẽ xảy ra theo thời gian biểu hoặc chương trình, kế hoạch đã định theo thời gian biểu.

Ex: The train leaves at seven twenty-three tomorrow morning.

I've got the tour details here. We spend three days in Rome.

Lưu ý: Ta thêm es sau các động từ tận cùng là: o, s, x, ch, sh.

### c. Các phó từ thường được dùng chung với thị hiện tại đơn:

+ often, usually, frequently	: thường
+ always, constantly	: luôn luôn
+ sometimes, occasionally	: thỉnh thoảng
+ seldom, rarely	: ít khi, hiếm khi
+ every day / week/ month...	: mỗi ngày/ tuần/ tháng...

### d. Thể phủ định (Negative form)

- Đối với động từ đặc biệt (be, can, may...), ta thêm **not** ngay sau động từ đó.

Ex: He is a good student. → He is not/ isn't a good pupil.

My brother can swim. → My brother can not/ can't swim.

- Đối với động từ thường, ta dùng trợ động từ **do** (với các chủ ngữ *I, you, we, they*) hoặc **does** (với các chủ ngữ *he, she, it*), và thêm **not** sau **do/ does**.

Ex: She likes coffee. → She does not/ doesn't like coffee.

They want new clothes. → They do not/ don't want new shoes.

### e. Thể nghi vấn (Interrogative form)

Đối với động từ đặc biệt, ta đưa động từ ra đầu câu.

Ex: You are tired now. → Are you tired now?

Peter can drive a car. → Can Peter drive a car?

- Đối với động từ thường, ta thêm do hoặc does vào đầu câu. (Nhớ đưa động từ chính về nguyên mẫu).

Ex: Her father likes tea. → Does her father like tea?

They do their homework every day. → Do they do their homework every day?

## 2. Thời hiện tại tiếp diễn (The Present Continuous Tense)

### a. Cấu trúc (Form)

I	+ am	
He, She, It	+ is	+ V-ing
We, You, They	+ are	

### b. Cách dùng (Usage)

- Thời hiện tại tiếp diễn diễn tả một hành động hay một sự việc đang diễn ra ngay lúc nói. Cách dùng này thường đi kèm với các trạng từ hoặc trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian *now, right now, at the moment, at present*.

Ex: The children are playing football now.

What are you doing at the moment?

Be quiet! The baby is sleeping in the next room.

- Thời hiện tại tiếp diễn diễn tả một hành động hoặc sự việc nói chung đang diễn ra nhưng không nhất thiết phải thực sự diễn ra ngay lúc nói. Cách dùng này thường đi kèm với *now, at the moment, today, this week, this term, this year, ...*

Ex: I'm quite busy these days. I'm doing a course at college.

The company I work for isn't doing so well this year.

- Thời hiện tại tiếp diễn còn được dùng để diễn tả một hành động sắp xảy ra (ở tương lai gần). Cách dùng này thường diễn tả một sự sắp xếp hoặc một kế hoạch đã định.

Ex: He is coming next week.

My parents are planting trees tomorrow.

Lưu ý: Không dùng thời hiện tại tiếp diễn với các động từ chỉ nhận thức, tri giác như: *to be, see, hear, understand, know, like, want, glance, feel, think, smell, love, hate, realize, seem, remember, forget, ...*. Với các động từ này, ta dùng thời Simple Present.

Ex: I am tired now.

She wants to go for a walk at the moment.

Do you understand your lesson? ~ Yes, I understand it now.

## 3. Thời hiện tại hoàn thành (The Present Perfect Tense)

### a. Cấu trúc (Form)

I, We, They, You	+ have	
He/ She/ It	+ has	+ past participle (V <sub>3</sub> )

(Thể phủ định: S + haven't/ hasn't + V<sub>3</sub>; Thể nghi vấn: Have/ Has + S + V<sub>3</sub>?)

### b. Cách dùng (Usage)

- Thị hiện tại hoàn thành diễn tả một hành động hoặc sự việc vừa mới xảy ra.  
Ex: I have just seen my sister in the park.  
She has finished her homework recently.
- Thị hiện tại hoàn thành diễn tả một hành động được lặp đi lặp lại nhiều lần ở quá khứ và còn có thể được lặp lại ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.  
Ex: Daisy has read that novel several times.  
I have seen "Titanic" three times.
- Thị hiện tại hoàn thành diễn tả một hành động bắt đầu ở quá khứ, kéo dài đến hiện tại và có khả năng tiếp tục ở tương lai.  
Ex: Mary has lived in this house for ten years.  
They have studied English since 1990.
- Thị hiện tại hoàn thành diễn tả hành động hoặc sự việc xảy ra trong quá khứ khi người nói không biết rõ hoặc không muốn đề cập đến thời gian chính xác.  
Ex: I have gone to Hanoi.  
He has done his housework.
- Thị hiện tại hoàn thành diễn tả hành động hoặc sự việc đã xảy ra trong quá khứ nhưng kết quả vẫn còn trong hiện tại.  
Ex: He has broken his leg, so he can't play tennis.  
You've broken this watch. (It isn't working now.)

### c. Các phó từ thường đi kèm với thị hiện tại hoàn thành:

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| + just, recently, lately: <i>gần đây, vừa mới</i>                            | + ever: <i>đã từng</i>             |
| + never: <i>chưa bao giờ</i>   | + already: <i>rồi</i>              |
| + yet: <i>chưa</i>   | + since: <i>từ khi (thời điểm)</i> |
| + for: <i>trong (khoảng thời gian)</i>                                       |                                    |
| + so far = until now = up to now = up to the present: <i>cho đến bây giờ</i> |                                    |

Lưu ý: Các phó từ này chỉ được dùng kèm với thị hiện tại hoàn thành trong các câu đơn. Đối với câu có từ hai mệnh đề trở lên hoặc trong một đoạn văn thì động từ phải được chia theo ngũ cành chủ không phụ thuộc vào các phó từ (xem thêm ở phần Sequence of Tenses).

Ex: He has just seen her. *But:* He said that he had just seen her.

I have already done my exercises. *But:* When I came, they had already shown the film.

## 4. Thị hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn (The Present Perfect Continuous Tense)

### a. Cấu trúc (Form)

I, We, You, They	+ have	+ been + V-ing
He, She, It	+ has	

### b. Cách dùng (Usage)

- Thị hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn diễn tả một hành động hoặc sự việc bắt đầu trong quá khứ và kéo dài liên tục đến hiện tại. Cách dùng này thường đi kèm với *since + mốc thời gian, for + khoảng thời gian*.

Ex: I have been studying French for five years.

They have been living in this city since 1995.

How long have you been waiting for her?

- Thị hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn diễn tả một hành động vừa mới kết thúc và có kết quả ở hiện tại.

Ex: You're out of breath. Have you been running?

Lưu ý: Không dùng thì này với các động từ chỉ nhận thức, tri giác (xem các động từ đã nêu trong thị hiện tại tiếp diễn). Với các động từ này ta dùng Present Perfect.

## 5. Thị quá khứ đơn (The Simple Past Tense)

### a. Cấu trúc (Form)

I, We, You, They	+ V <sub>2</sub> / V-ed
He, She, It	

- Nếu động từ có qui tắc: V-ed

- Động từ bất qui tắc: cột 2 (V<sub>2</sub>)

### b. Cách dùng (Usage)

- Thị quá khứ đơn diễn tả hành động đã xảy ra trong quá khứ, chấm dứt rồi và biết rõ thời gian.

Ex: Tom went to Paris last summer.

My mother left this city two years ago.

He died in 1980.

- Thị quá khứ đơn diễn tả hành động đã xảy ra suốt một khoảng thời gian trong quá khứ, nhưng nay đã hoàn toàn chấm dứt.

Ex: Mozart wrote more than 600 pieces of music.

She worked as a secretary for five years before her marriage.

### c. Các phó từ đi kèm: last week/ month/ year/... (tuần trước/ tháng trước/...)..., ago (cách đây), yesterday (hôm qua).

### d. Thể phủ định (Negative form)

- Đối với động từ đặc biệt, ta thêm **not** sau nó.

Ex: He wasn't absent from class yesterday.

I couldn't open the door last night.

- Đối với động từ thường, ta đặt trợ động từ **didn't** trước động từ chính.

Ex: He didn't watch TV last night.

She didn't go to the cinema with him last Sunday.

### e. Thể nghi vấn (Interrogative form)

- Đối với động từ đặc biệt, ta đưa động từ đó ra đầu câu.

Ex: Were they in hospital last month?

Could she answer your questions then?

- Đối với động từ thường, ta đặt trợ động từ **Did** ở đầu câu.

Ex: Did you see my son, Tom?

Lưu ý: Khi đổi sang phủ định và nghi vấn, nhớ đưa động từ chính về nguyên mẫu.

## 3. Thời quá khứ tiếp diễn (The Past Continuous Tense)

### a. Cấu trúc (Form)

I, He, She, It	+ was	+ V-ing
We, You, They	+ were	

### b. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn diễn tả:

- Hành động đã xảy ra và kéo dài một thời gian ở quá khứ.

Ex: Yesterday, Mr Moore was working in the laboratory all the afternoon.

What were you doing from 3 p.m to 6 p.m yesterday?

- Hành động đang xảy ra vào một thời điểm ở quá khứ.

Ex: I was doing my homework at 6 p.m last Sunday.

They were practising English at that time.

What were you doing at this time yesterday?

- Hành động đang xảy ra (ở quá khứ) thì có một hành động khác xen vào (hành động nào kéo dài hơn dùng Past Continuous; hành động nào ngắn hơn dùng Simple Past).

Ex: When I came yesterday, he was sleeping.

What was she doing when you saw her?

As we were crossing the street, the policeman shouted at us.

Hai hành động xảy ra song song cùng một lúc ở quá khứ.

Ex: Yesterday, I was cooking while my sister was washing the dishes.

**Lưu ý:** Không dùng thì quá khứ tiếp diễn với các động từ chỉ nhận thức, tri giác.  
Thay vào đó, ta dùng thì Simple Past.

Ex: When the students heard the bell, they left.

He felt tired at that time.

## Thì quá khứ hoàn thành/ Tiền quá khứ (The Past Perfect Tense)

### a. Cấu trúc (Form)

Subject + had + past participle (V <sub>3</sub> )
---

(Thể phủ định: S + hadn't + V<sub>3</sub>; Thể nghi vấn: Had + S + V<sub>3</sub>...?)

### b. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì quá khứ hoàn thành diễn tả một hành động quá khứ xảy ra trước một thời gian quá khứ hoặc trước một hành động quá khứ khác. (Nếu trong câu có hai hành động quá khứ, hành động nào xảy ra trước ta dùng Past Perfect, hành động nào sau ta dùng Simple Past).

Ex: We had lived in Hue before 1975.

When I got up this morning, my father had already left.

After the children had finished their homework, they went to bed.

It was the most difficult question that I had ever known.

### 8. Thời quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn (The Past Perfect Continuous Tense)

#### a. Cấu trúc (Form)

Subject + had + been + V-ing

#### b. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn diễn tả một hành động quá khứ đã xảy ra và kéo dài liên tục cho đến khi hành động quá khứ thứ hai xảy ra (hành động thứ hai dùng Simple Past). Thường thường khoảng thời gian kéo dài được nêu rõ trong câu.

Ex: The men had been playing cards for 3 hours before I came.

They had been living in London for 10 years when I met them.

### 9. Thời tương lai đơn (The Simple Future Tense)

#### a. Cấu trúc (Form)

You, He, She, I, They    + will  
I, We                         + will/ shall                        + V<sub>(bare-inf.)</sub>

(Thể phủ định: S + will/ shall + not + V<sub>(bare-inf.)</sub>; Thể nghi vấn: Will/ Shall + S + V<sub>(bare-inf.)</sub>...?)

- bare-inf.: bare-infinitive (động từ nguyên mẫu không *to*)

- will not = won't              shall not = shan't

#### b. Cách dùng (Usage)

- Thời tương lai đơn thường diễn tả một hành động sẽ xảy ra ở tương lai.

Ex: He will come back next week.

We will/ shall need the money on the 15th.

- Thời tương lai đơn được dùng diễn đạt ý kiến, đưa ra một lời hứa hoặc một quyết định tức thì.

Ex: I think Liverpool will win.

I'll phone you tonight.

"You can have it for \$50." "OK, I'll buy it."

#### c. Các phó từ đi kèm:

+ someday: *một ngày nào đó*

+ tomorrow: *ngày mai*

+ next week/ month/...: *tuần/ tháng/... tới*

+ soon: *chẳng bao lâu nữa*

### 10. Tương lai gần (Near Future)

#### a. Cấu trúc (Form)

I	+ am			
He, She, It	+ is	+ going to + V <sub>(bare-inf.)</sub>		
We, You, They	+ are			
I	+ am			
He, She, It	+ is	+ V-ing		
We, You, They	+ are			

(dự định sẽ)

(sắp sửa)

### b. Cách dùng (Usage)

*Be going to* và *thì hiện tại tiếp diễn* (present continuous) được dùng để diễn tả một hành động sắp sửa xảy ra hoặc một dự định sắp tới (thường thường trong câu không có cụm từ thời gian)

Ex: My father is retiring.

Where are you going to spend your holidays?

## 11. Thì tương lai tiếp diễn (The Future Continuous Tense)

### a. Cấu trúc (Form)

Subject + will/ shall + be + V-ing

### b. Cách dùng (Usage)

- Thì tương lai tiếp diễn diễn tả một hành động sẽ diễn ra và kéo dài suốt một khoảng thời gian ở tương lai.

Ex: Andrew can't go to the party. He'll be working all day tomorrow.

- Thì tương lai tiếp diễn diễn tả một hành động sẽ đang xảy ra vào một thời điểm ở tương lai.

Ex: He will be doing research at this time tomorrow.

When you come today, I'll be working at my desk.

She will be living in this house in May (next year).

## 12. Thì tương lai hoàn thành (The Future Perfect Tense)

### a. Cấu trúc (Form)

Subject + will/ shall + have + V<sub>3</sub>

### b. Cách dùng (Usage)

- Thì tương lai hoàn thành diễn tả một hành động sẽ hoàn tất trước một thời điểm ở tương lai. Cách dùng này thường được dùng với các cụm từ chỉ thời gian bắt đầu bằng *by: by + mốc thời gian, by the time, by then, by that time*, ...

Ex: I'll have finished my work by noon.

They'll have built that house by July next year.

- Thì tương lai hoàn thành diễn tả một hành động sẽ hoàn tất trước một hành động khác trong tương lai.

Ex: When you come back, I'll have written this letter.

## 13. Thì tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn (The Future Perfect Continuous Tense)

### a. Cấu trúc (Form)

Subject + will/ shall + have been + V-ing

### b. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn diễn tả một hành động bắt đầu từ quá khứ và kéo dài liên tục đến một thời điểm nào đó trong tương lai.

Ex: By November, we'll have been living in this house for 10 years.

By March 15th, I'll have been working for this company for 6 years.

Giống như thì tương lai hoàn thành, thì tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn thường được dùng với các cụm từ trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian bắt đầu bằng *by*.

#### GHI NHỚ:

- Không dùng các thì tiếp diễn (Continuous Tenses) với các động từ chỉ nhận thức, tri giác (*see, be, hear...*).
- Không dùng các thì tương lai (Future Tenses) trong các mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian; thi Simple Future được thay bằng Simple Present, thi Future Perfect (hoặc Future Perfect Continuous) được thay bằng thi Present Perfect (hoặc Present Perfect Continuous).

## EXERCISES

### I) Supply the correct verb form: The Simple Present Tense or The Present Continuous Tense.

- Be quiet! The baby (*sleep*).
- We seldom (*eat*) before 6:30.
- Look! A man (*run*) after the train. He (*want*) to catch it.
- The sun (*set*) in the West.
- It (*be*) often hot in summer.
- I (*do*) an exercise on the present tenses at this moment and I (*think*) that I (*know*) how to use it now.
- My mother sometimes (*buy*) vegetables at this market.
- It (*be*) very cold now.
- It (*rain*) much in summer. It (*rain*) now.
- Daisy (*cook*) some food in the kitchen at present. She always (*cook*) in the morning.

### II) Supply the correct verb form: The Present Perfect or The Present Perfect Continuous.

- How long you (*study*) English? For 5 years.
- I (*wait*) for two hours, but she (*not come*) yet.
- They (*live*) in Ho Chi Minh City since 1975.
- She (*read*) all the books written by Dickens. How many books you (*read*)?
- He (*not, be*) here since Christmas, I wonder where he (*live*) since then.
- Jack (*go*) to Paris for a holiday. He never (*be*) there.
- You (*sleep*) so far? I (*ring*) the bell for the last twenty minutes.
- He (*write*) a novel for two years, but he (*not finish*) it yet.
- Mary (*lose*) her hat and she (*look*) for it until now.
- I (*see*) that film several times because I like it.

### III) Supply the correct verb form: Present Tenses.

- Listen! I (*think*) someone (*knock*) at the door.
- Up to the present, we (*write*) almost every lesson in the book.
- The earth (*circle*) the sun once every 365 days.
- The farmers (*work*) in the field at the moment.
- How many times you (*see*) him since he went to Edinburgh?

6. Rivers usually (flow) to the sea.
7. Look! The boy (cry).
8. Do you know that man, who (smoke) there?
9. Mrs Green always (go) to work by bus.
10. We (be) from France. We (be) there for 20 years.
11. That house (belong) to Mr. Green.
12. Mai (lose) her dictionary.
13. I (be) sorry. I (forget) that girl's name already.
14. I (wait) for the manager for two hours.
15. You (ever, see) a lion?

**IV) Supply the correct verb form: Simple Past or Present Perfect.**

1. I (see) her before.
2. I (see) her last year.
3. Tom (never be) in Hanoi.
4. I (read) the novel written by Jack London several times before.
5. What you (do) yesterday?
6. You (watch) TV last night?
7. She (be) born in 1980.
8. He (write) a book since last year.
9. Mr Green (teach) English in this school since he (graduate) from the university in 1986.
10. How long you (learn) English?

**V) Supply the correct verb form: Simple Past or Past Continuous.**

1. When I (arrive) at this house, he still (sleep).
2. The light (go) out while we (have) dinner.
3. Bill (have) breakfast when I (stop) at this house this morning.
4. As we (cross) the street, we (see) an accident.
5. Tom (see) a serious accident while he (stand) at the bus stop.
6. While my father (read) a newspaper, I (learn) my lesson and my sister (do) her homework.
7. The children (play) football when their mother (come) back home.
8. The bell (ring) while Tom (take) a bath.
9. I (be) very tired because I (work) all day yesterday.
10. He (sit) in a café when I (see) him.

**VI) Give the right forms of the verbs in brackets: Simple Past or Past Perfect.**

1. They (go) home after they (finish) their work.
2. She said that she (already, see) Dr. Rice.
3. When we came to the stadium, the match (already, begin).
4. They told me they (not, eat) such kind of food before.
5. He (ask) why we (come) so early.
6. After they had gone, I (sit) down and (rest).
7. Before she (watch) TV, she (do) her homework.

8. After taking a bath, he (go) to bed.
9. What (be) he when he (be) young?
10. It was the first time I (ever, see) such a beautiful girl.

**VII) Give the right forms of the verbs in brackets: Past Tenses.**

1. Yesterday John (go) to the store before he (go) home.
2. Our teacher (tell) us yesterday that he (visit) England in 1970.
3. When John and I got to the theatre, the movie (start) already.
4. Before Alice (go) to sleep, she (call) her family.
5. When the phone (ring), I (have) dinner.
6. Daisy (agree) with other members in the last meeting.
7. What you (do) at 6 p.m yesterday?
8. The little girl asked what (happen) to her ice-cream.
9. He (teach) in this school before he (leave) for England.
10. She (win) the gold medal in 1986.

**VIII) Give the right forms of the verbs in brackets: Simple Future or Simple Present.**

1. We'll go out when the rain (stop).
2. I (stay) here until he (answer) me.
3. Wait until I (catch) you.
4. She (not come) until you (be) ready.
5. Miss Helen (help) you as soon as she (finish) that letter tomorrow.
6. After the class (be) over, ask the teacher about that sentence.
7. I (come) and (see) you before I leave here.
8. We (go) home as soon as we have finished our work.
9. I (wait) here until you (come) back tomorrow.
10. I (send) you some postcards as soon as I (arrive) in London.

**IX) Give the right forms of the verbs in brackets: Simple Present, Simple Future, Present Perfect or Future Perfect.**

1. I'll wait until he (finish) his novel.
2. When you (come) back, he already (buy) a new house.
3. Don't come until I (finish) lunch.
4. I (hope) it (stop) raining by 5 o'clock this afternoon.
5. The river (not begin) to swell until some rain (fall).
6. By next month I (leave) for India.
7. The film (end) by the time we (get) there.
8. They (build) a house by June next year.
9. We (start) our plan next week.
10. I (give) her your letter when I (see) her tomorrow.

**X) Give the right forms of the verbs in brackets: Simple Present, Simple Future or Future Continuous.**

1. When you (go) into the office, Mr John (sit) at the front desk.

2. Our English teacher (explain) that lesson to us tomorrow.
3. We (wait) for you when you (get) back tomorrow.
4. What you (do) at 7 p.m next Sunday?  
I (practise) my English lesson then.
5. When I (see) Mr Pike tomorrow, I (remind) him of that.
6. When you (come) today, I (work) at my desk in Room 12.
7. He (work) on the report at this time tomorrow.
8. Please wait here until the manager (return).
9. Don't leave until you (see) her.
10. The Browns (do) their housework when you (come) next Sunday.

**XI) Give the right forms of the verbs in brackets: Future Tenses.**

1. I'm sure they (complete) the new road by June.
2. He (wait) for you when you (get) back tomorrow.
3. At this same time tomorrow, we (drive) through Pennsylvania.
4. We (see) you next Monday.
5. In two years from now, the contract (come) to an end.
6. Who (look) after the children when you are away?
7. By November I (work) for this company for 6 years.
8. If you call her at 6, she (practise) the piano then.
9. By March 15, I (be) here for one year.
10. We (move) to our new house at Christmas this year.
11. By the end of December, John (work) as a reporter for ten years.
12. By the time you arrive, I (finish) writing an essay.
13. I (give) him your message when I (see) him.
14. He certainly (not do) all his homework by ten tonight.
15. Don't call him at 2:30 p.m. He (interview) job applicants at that time.
16. The teacher hopes we (pass) our exams.
17. By this time next week, he (write) his novel for 6 months.
18. They (arrive) on Wednesday.
19. I hope the weather (be) fine tonight.
20. You (finish) your work by 9 tonight?

**XII) Supply the correct verb forms.**

1. I (see) a car accident while I (wait) for you on this corner yesterday.
2. Mr Jone (be) principal of our school since last year.
3. Mr Smith (teach) at this school since he (graduate) in 1980.
4. My father (not watch) TV every night.
5. I (meet) Arthur three weeks ago.
6. Yesterday the police (report) that they (capture) the thief.
7. My friend (thank) me for what I had done for him.
8. Someone (steal) my handbag on the bus.

9. The Browns (live) in Paris for 7 years when the second World War (break) out.
10. Last month I (be) in the hospital for ten days.
11. Don't call me in the afternoon. I usually (be) away in the afternoon.
12. Mr Clark (be) in New York 2 months ago. Mr Rossi (be) in New York until 2 months ago.
13. John (drive) that car ever since I (know) him.
14. People (speak) English in most of Canada.
15. The dog (wag) his tail whenever he (see) me.
16. What you (do) when I (ring) you last night?
17. Up to then I never (see) such a fat man.
18. I (not see) him since last Monday.
19. They had sold all the books when we (get) there.
20. I think he (leave) as soon as he (know) the news.
21. She (play) the piano when our guests (arrive) last night.
22. He (come) and (see) you soon.
23. I (come) as soon as I have finished my work. You (be) ready?
24. My mother (come) to stay with us next weekend.
25. Where you (spend) your holidays next summer?
26. Violets (bloom) in spring.
27. We (not live) in England for two years now.
28. I (never forget) what you (just tell) me.
29. They (prepare) the Christmas dinner at the moment.
30. When I last (stay) in Cairo, I (ride) to the Pyramids on a camel that my friend (borrow) the day before.
31. Our teacher (tell) us yesterday that he (visit) England in 1970.
32. George (work) at the university so far.
33. When he lived in Manchester, he (work) in a bank.
34. Birds (build) their nests in summer and (fly) to the South in winter.
35. I (lose) my key. (can) you help me look for it?
36. My father (not smoke) for 5 years.
37. My teacher wasn't at home when I (arrive). He (just go) out.
38. How long Bob and Mary (be) married?
39. You (receive) any letter from your parents yet?
40. My brother (join) the army when he (be) young.
41. You (remember) my name or you (forget) it someday?
42. Tom (study) chemistry for three years and then he gave it up.
43. Miss Lee often (write) when she was on holiday.
44. He (leave) home two weeks ago and we (not hear) from him since then.
45. You (speak) to Mrs Baker yesterday?  
No, I (not see) her for a long time.  
I (not can) remember when I last (see) her.
46. When the teacher came in, the pupils (play) games.

47. Columbus (discover) America more than 400 years ago.  
48. By next month, I (finish) my first novel.  
49. By May 5, we (live) in this city for ten years.  
50. When your father (die)?  
    I (not know) when he (die).  
51. Bill said he (forget) to buy a dictionary.  
52. He felt asleep while he (do) his homework.  
53. We (not see) them for a long time.  
54. It (rain) when we arrived.  
55. Kite and I (wait) right here until you get back.  
56. He'll leave as soon as he (hear) the news.  
57. Dick (start) school before he (be) seven.  
58. How long you (study) in this school?  
59. We (not receive) any letter from him since he (leave) four months ago.  
60. Where are you? I'm upstairs. I (have) a bath.  
61. I (speak) to you about that matter after the meeting tonight.  
62. At this time next week, we (live) in USA.  
63. Hurry up! The train (come).  
64. Be quiet! The teacher (be) angry.  
65. Why didn't you listen while I (speak) to you?  
66. Some animals (not eat) during winter.  
67. I (finish) the book before my next birthday.  
68. John (watch) TV at 8 last evening.  
69. Mr Pike (live) here since last October.  
70. Someone (cut) down all the trees in the garden.  
71. The house (build) two years ago.  
72. Listen! The bird (sing).  
73. Trees (plant) since it (stop) raining.  
74. Tom Baker (not come) here tomorrow.  
75. By the end of last March, I (study) English for 5 years.  
76. He often (say) O.K when he (talk) with the guests.  
77. What you (do) after you (go) home yesterday?  
78. How long you (wait) for me? Just a few minutes.  
79. He (do) his homework before he went to the cinema.  
80. By noon, I (wait) for her for two hours.  
81. By the time you come there, she (make) a big cake.  
82. Yesterday thieves (break) into the house and (steal) a lot of fur coats while the guests (dance).  
83. When I came in, they all (sit) round the fire. Mr Pike (do) a crossword puzzle, Mrs Pike (knit), and the others (read).  
84. Mr Jackson (paint) his house since last month.  
85. She (ask) me to tell about him several times.

86. The audience (listen) to everything he said last night.
87. At 4 p.m yesterday? Well, I (work) in my office at that time.
88. A: I (play) football since I was 5 years old.  
B: You (play) since you (come) to England?
- A: Oh, yes. I (play) quite a lot. I (join) a club the day after I (arrive).
89. I'm preparing to support anything he (say) tomorrow.
90. Sometimes I (get) up before the sun (rise).
91. He said he (be) mistaken.
92. Don't speak until someone (ask) you.
93. Mary (come) from London.
94. Please be quiet! I (work).
95. When I (be) a child, I (want) to be a doctor.
96. David (be) born after his father (die).
97. Long ago, my younger brother often (cry).
98. I (not send) the parcel until I hear from you.
99. The last train (leave) the station at 5 p.m.
100. Up to now, the teacher (give) our class five tests.

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES

(SỰ PHỐI HỢP CÁC THÌ)

Trong câu có hai mệnh đề trở lên, các động từ phải có sự phối hợp về thì.

**L Sự phối hợp của các động từ trong mệnh đề chính (main clause) và mệnh đề phụ (subordinate clause):**

MAIN CLAUSE	SUBORDINATE CLAUSE
Simple Present	Simple Present Present Perfect Present Continuous Simple Future/ Near Future Simple Past (nếu có thời gian xác định ở quá khứ)
Simple Past	Simple Past Past Perfect Past Continuous would + V (bare-inf.) was/ were going to + V (bare-inf.) Simple Present (nếu diễn tả một chân lý)
Present Perfect	Simple Present
Past Perfect	Simple Past

Ex: People have said that London has fog.

She says she has finished her homework already.

She said she would visit me again.

Tom says he will visit me again.

They had done that was necessary.

He says he was born in 1980.

My teacher said that the sun rises in the East.

Mary said that she was cooking then.

## II. Sự phối hợp của các động từ trong mệnh đề chính và mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian (adverbial clause of time):

MAIN CLAUSE	ADVERBIAL CLAUSE OF TIME
Present Tenses	Present Tenses
Past Tenses	Past Tenses
Future Tenses	Present Tenses

- Present Tenses: Tất cả các thì hiện tại tùy theo ngữ cảnh của câu.

- Past Tenses: Tất cả các thì quá khứ tùy ngữ cảnh của câu.

- Future Tenses: Tất cả các thì tương lai tùy ngữ cảnh của câu.

Ex: He never goes home before he has finished his work.

I often read a newspaper while I am waiting for the bus.

We will go as soon as you have finished your work.

It was raining hard when I got there.

The train had already left when I arrived at the station.

Please wait here until I come back.

\* Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian thường được bắt đầu với các liên từ chỉ thời gian:

- when/ as: *khi*

- until/ till: *cho đến khi*

- just as: *ngay khi*

- whenever: *bất cứ khi nào*

- while: *trong khi*

- no sooner... than: *ngay khi*

- before: *trước khi*

- hardly... when: *khó... khi*

- after: *sau khi*

- as long as: *chừng nào, cho đến khi*

- as soon as: *ngay sau khi*

- since: *từ khi*

Lưu ý: Không được dùng thì tương lai (Future Tenses) trong các mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian (có thể thay bằng thì hiện tại).

- Trong trường hợp dùng từ nối *since* lưu ý:

S + V (present perfect/ present perfect cont.) + since + S + V (simple past)

Ex: She has played the piano since she was ten years old.

He has been studying English since he came here.

## **EXERCISES**

**I) Supply the correct verb forms.**

1. He thinks that it (rain) tonight.
2. She said that she (get) married soon.
3. Bill said that he (lose) his bicycle.
4. He knew that I (come) the following week.
5. She understood that we (promise) to go.
6. I was taught that the sun (be) bigger than the moon.
7. The boy knew that an hour (have) sixty minutes.
8. I didn't know what time it (be), so I (turn) on the radio.
9. I wondered whether I (lock) the door or not.
10. She says that she (live) in the country when she (be) a child.
11. They hoped that they (end) soon.
12. The teacher said that the shortest distance between two points (be) a straight line.
13. The student who answered the question (be) John.
14. This is the house that Jack (build) three years ago.
15. Mary (have) dinner when her friend called.
16. John (live) in the same house since he left school.
17. Shut all the windows before you (go) out.
18. You may begin when you (be) ready.
19. He is saving his money so that he (take) a long vacation.
20. I see that Henry (write) his composition now.
21. I had done that (be) necessary.
22. They have found that the road (be) very long.
23. I saw that I (make) a mistake.
24. The teacher asked Bill why he (not go) to school the day before.
25. We find that we (take) a wrong way.
26. I want to know how long she (live) here.
27. I didn't know who (help) him.
28. Do you hear what she (just, say)?
29. Did you hear what she (just, say)?
30. They believed that the police (capture) the thief soon.
31. Did John say he (call) you again?
32. She has thought that the work (be) easy.
33. I wonder what changes the new President (introduce).
34. The students had thought that the English test (be) rather difficult.
35. Mrs Smith complains that her neighbour (make) too much noise.
36. I think John (be) out of town now.
37. Tom promised he (not do) it again.

38. My father said he (be) here by noon.  
 39. Miss White swears that she (never see) that man before.  
 40. She has told me her name (be) Mary.

**II) Choose the correct forms of the verbs in parentheses.**

1. I see that Tom (writes/ is writing) his composition.
2. He says that he (looks/ will look) for a job next week.
3. They think he (was/ would be) here last night.
4. He tells us that he (was/ has been) to the mountains before.
5. I hope that he (will be/ would be) able to attend.
6. He wants to do it before his father (will come/ comes).
7. People have said that the sun (rise) in the East.
8. He says he (does/ will do) it some time.
9. He asked the guard what time the train usually (starts/ started).
10. He told me the morning that he (is going/ was going) with us the following day.
11. He says that he (finished/ will finish) the project by May.
12. I realized that they (are/ were) older than they looked.
13. I hear that Kate (accepted/ has accepted) a new position.
14. They told me they (have never seen/ had never seen) her before.
15. We know that you (move/ will move) to France next year.
16. In Britain, the weather is very varied. People (never know/ have never known) what it (is/ will be) like the next day.
17. He (is/ had been) ill for a long time before he died.
18. She didn't tell me the reason why she (didn't come/ hadn't come) to school the day before.
19. I had no map, that's why I (got/ get) lost.
20. I hope it (does not rain/ will not rain) when we start early tomorrow.

**III) Supply the correct verb forms.**

1. After (leave)<sup>(1)</sup> school when she was 18, Laura (go)<sup>(2)</sup> to Bristol university for three years. While she (be)<sup>(3)</sup> at university, Laura (join)<sup>(4)</sup> a university folk group and started singing. It was at this time that she (write)<sup>(5)</sup> her famous song "The Price of Peace".
2. One of the first novels in history of literature (be)<sup>(1)</sup> written in England in 1719. It (be)<sup>(2)</sup> Robinson Crusoe by Daniel Dofoe. He (bear)<sup>(3)</sup> in London in a rich family. When Daniel (be)<sup>(4)</sup> a schoolboy, he (begin)<sup>(5)</sup> to write stories. After (leave)<sup>(6)</sup> school he (work)<sup>(7)</sup> in his father's shop and (write)<sup>(8)</sup> articles for newspapers. Dofoe (visit)<sup>(9)</sup> many countries and (meet)<sup>(10)</sup> many people. That helped him much in his writings.
3. A friend of mine, Judith Nelson, (presently, work)<sup>(1)</sup> in the international sales division at an electronics firm. She (just, return)<sup>(2)</sup> from a trip to Japan. She (be)<sup>(3)</sup> asked to go there because she can speak Japanese. For four years, she (never have)<sup>(4)</sup> the opportunity to use her Japanese until she (go)<sup>(5)</sup> to Tokyo last month. While she (be)<sup>(6)</sup> there, she (speak)<sup>(7)</sup> Japanese everyday and (enjoy)<sup>(8)</sup> very much of it.

4. Ever since the day I (decide)<sup>(1)</sup> to move to London, I (worry)<sup>(2)</sup> whether the decision I (take)<sup>(3)</sup> was the right one. As I (already sell)<sup>(4)</sup> my house and (arrange)<sup>(5)</sup> a new job, it is too late to change my mind. However, since then I (hear)<sup>(6)</sup> a lot of negative things about living in the Capital and lately some of them (begin)<sup>(7)</sup> to bother me. I (grow)<sup>(8)</sup> up in a small town and have spent all my life there.
5. Mary (have)<sup>(1)</sup> to go to New York last week, but she almost (miss)<sup>(2)</sup> the plane. She (stand)<sup>(3)</sup> in the queue at the check-in desk when she suddenly (realize)<sup>(4)</sup> that she (leave)<sup>(5)</sup> her passport at home. Fortunately, she (not live)<sup>(6)</sup> very far from the airport so she (have)<sup>(7)</sup> time to go back home to get the passport. She (get)<sup>(8)</sup> back to the airport just in time for her flight.
6. Rob Fellow (come)<sup>(1)</sup> from England. He (come)<sup>(2)</sup> to Paris six months ago to learn French. He (start)<sup>(3)</sup> learning French at school in England when he was eleven so he (learn)<sup>(4)</sup> it for nearly 10 years. He just (take)<sup>(5)</sup> an exam. If he passes, he (move)<sup>(6)</sup> into the next class. He (be)<sup>(7)</sup> excited today because his parents (come)<sup>(8)</sup> tomorrow to stay with him for a few days.
7. (Bear)<sup>(1)</sup> in Scotland in 1847, Alexander Bell (become)<sup>(2)</sup> interested very early in the methods of human communication. He (influence)<sup>(3)</sup> by his father and grandfather, who (spend)<sup>(4)</sup> years working with deaf people and those with faulty speech. Bell's father even (go)<sup>(5)</sup> so far as to develop a system of so-called "visible speech" for the deaf. He (use)<sup>(6)</sup> sketches of the different positions of the lips and tongue. This science of visible speech (form)<sup>(7)</sup> the foundation of young Bell's knowledge of the mechanics of human speech. But the young boy's knowledge of other subjects (not/advance)<sup>(8)</sup> quite as rapidly.
8. While I (walk)<sup>(1)</sup> across the campus the other day, I (meet)<sup>(2)</sup> my old friend, John, whom I (not see)<sup>(3)</sup> since July 10. Naturally we (stop)<sup>(4)</sup> (talk)<sup>(5)</sup> to each other for a few minutes. I asked him how he (do)<sup>(6)</sup> in his classes this semester.
9. Jack London (bear)<sup>(1)</sup> in San Francisco on January 12, 1876. He (begin)<sup>(2)</sup> his education at the university of California, but (not finish)<sup>(3)</sup> it there, he (write)<sup>(4)</sup> a lot of adventure books. He (travel)<sup>(5)</sup> much, and his experience in his trips (help)<sup>(6)</sup> him write many famous books.
10. A: Tell us what happened to you yesterday?  
 B: I (walk)<sup>(1)</sup> along Piccadilly when I (realize)<sup>(2)</sup> that a man with a black beard, whom I (see)<sup>(3)</sup> three time already that afternoon, (follow)<sup>(4)</sup> me. I (be)<sup>(5)</sup> very annoyed, and at last I (stop)<sup>(6)</sup> him and (ask)<sup>(7)</sup> him why he (follow)<sup>(8)</sup> me. The man (apologize)<sup>(9)</sup> and (tell)<sup>(10)</sup> me he (mistake)<sup>(11)</sup> me for one of his friends.
11. Last Sunday, Mrs Hay (drive)<sup>(1)</sup> along a small country road when she (see)<sup>(2)</sup> a man at the side of the road. He (wave)<sup>(3)</sup> and pointing at his car. Mrs Hay (stop)<sup>(4)</sup> and (ask)<sup>(5)</sup> the man if he (be)<sup>(6)</sup> all right. "My car's broken down", said the man.
12. I'd just parked my car in the street near a football stadium in Liverpool. It (be)<sup>(1)</sup> ten minutes before the start of the match and I (be)<sup>(2)</sup> in a hurry. Two little boys (come)<sup>(3)</sup> up to me and (say)<sup>(4)</sup>, "Give me some money and we (look)<sup>(5)</sup> after your car while you are at the match". I (tell)<sup>(6)</sup> them to clear off, and one of them (look)<sup>(7)</sup> at me with big,

- round eyes said, "Unless you (give)<sup>(8)</sup> us the money, something might happen to your car while you are away, you know, a scratch or a flat or something like that".
13. He (run)<sup>(1)</sup> as fast as he could, but he realized he was not strong enough (be)<sup>(2)</sup> a good marathon runner. In the distance he could just make out the shapes of the (lead)<sup>(3)</sup> runners, (get)<sup>(4)</sup> further ahead every minute.
14. Every day you can (hear)<sup>(1)</sup> something interesting at school. When you come home after classes, you often (tell)<sup>(2)</sup> your parents what you (hear)<sup>(3)</sup> and (see)<sup>(4)</sup> at school.
15. Two friends went on a trip to London. They (enter)<sup>(1)</sup> restaurant for dinner. On the table (stand)<sup>(2)</sup> a jar of mustard. Not having seen mustard before, one of them (take)<sup>(3)</sup> a spoonfull into his mouth. Tears immediately filled his eyes and his friend asked him what he (cry)<sup>(4)</sup> about.
16. In two minutes I (be)<sup>(1)</sup> up the tree, but it was very difficult (get)<sup>(2)</sup> to the nest. When at last I got there and (can look)<sup>(3)</sup> into the nest, I (see)<sup>(4)</sup> the two young eagles and also some food for them - meat and fish. When I tried (take)<sup>(5)</sup> the young eagles out of the nest, I suddenly (feel)<sup>(6)</sup> a terrible pain in the back of my head. I (look)<sup>(7)</sup> round and (see)<sup>(8)</sup> the mother eagle. And she (be)<sup>(9)</sup> ready to make a second attack. You (must know)<sup>(10)</sup> how strong these eagles are.
17. Eric (bear)<sup>(1)</sup> in 1903 in India where his father worked for the civil service. The family (move)<sup>(2)</sup> to England in 1907 and in 1917 Eric (enter)<sup>(3)</sup> Eton where he (contribute)<sup>(4)</sup> regularly to the college magazine. His first article (appear)<sup>(5)</sup> in Lemon in October 1928 while he (live)<sup>(6)</sup> in Paris.
18. Jack Cooper (be)<sup>(1)</sup> a production manager at Weston Aeronautics for ten years now. He (live)<sup>(2)</sup> in a small house in the suburbs of Bristol with his wife, Peggy. At the moment, Weston (expand)<sup>(3)</sup> into Europe and they (build)<sup>(4)</sup> a new factory in Toulouse.
19. When the train reached the sixth station, Tom (get)<sup>(1)</sup> off, feeling relieved that his journey (be)<sup>(2)</sup> so easy. But he (be)<sup>(3)</sup> alarmed to see that he (get)<sup>(4)</sup> off at a station that he had never heard of. He (not know)<sup>(5)</sup> what to do. He (explain)<sup>(6)</sup> his difficulty to a man who (stand)<sup>(7)</sup> on the platform. With a look of amusement on his face the man (tell)<sup>(8)</sup> Tom that he (travel)<sup>(9)</sup> on a train going in the wrong direction.
20. Maria is Spanish. She (live)<sup>(1)</sup> in Madrid where she (work)<sup>(2)</sup> for an export company. She (be)<sup>(3)</sup> with this company for 2 years now. At the moment she (study)<sup>(4)</sup> English on a one-month intensive course in London. She (arrive)<sup>(5)</sup> in London last Saturday. This is not Maria's first time in Britain. She (be)<sup>(6)</sup> there twice before.
21. Albert Maltz was a progressive American writer. He (be)<sup>(1)</sup> born in 1908. He (write)<sup>(2)</sup> his first play "Peace on Earth" in 1943. It was against wars, so the American police (arrest)<sup>(3)</sup> him and (put)<sup>(4)</sup> him in prison in 1950.
22. Ha (come)<sup>(1)</sup> back a moment ago and (turn)<sup>(2)</sup> the television on very loudly. My son (sleep)<sup>(3)</sup> then, so I (tell)<sup>(4)</sup> her to turn it off.
23. Mary and John are neighbours. They (know)<sup>(1)</sup> each other for several years. Mary (move)<sup>(2)</sup> into her house in 1985 and John (live)<sup>(3)</sup> next door since he (come)<sup>(4)</sup> to the area in 1980.

24. While I (walk)<sup>(1)</sup> to class yesterday morning, I (see)<sup>(2)</sup> Tom. We (say)<sup>(3)</sup> hello and (walk)<sup>(4)</sup> the rest of the way to school together.
25. Yesterday afternoon I (go)<sup>(1)</sup> to visit the Greens. When I (get)<sup>(2)</sup> there about 2 o'clock, Mrs Green (be)<sup>(3)</sup> in the yard. She (plant)<sup>(4)</sup> flowers in her garden. Mr Green (be)<sup>(5)</sup> in the garage. He (work)<sup>(6)</sup> on their car. The children (play)<sup>(7)</sup> in the front yard.
26. When I (hear)<sup>(1)</sup> a knock at the door last night, I (walk)<sup>(2)</sup> to the door and (open)<sup>(3)</sup> it. When I (open)<sup>(4)</sup> the door, I (see)<sup>(5)</sup> my brother. I (greet)<sup>(6)</sup> him and (ask)<sup>(7)</sup> him to come in.
27. John hasn't got a job. He (be)<sup>(1)</sup> unemployed for six months. He (work)<sup>(2)</sup> for a textile firm which (have)<sup>(3)</sup> to close because it (not have)<sup>(4)</sup> enough orders.
28. One day John's father (buy)<sup>(1)</sup> a computer for him. He thought it was a good replacement for John's typewriter, which (break down)<sup>(2)</sup>. John could use the computer to write essays. He (not expect)<sup>(3)</sup> that John would spend all his time playing computer games on it, which (be)<sup>(4)</sup> what he did it. John neglected his studies and he actually failed his tests.  
When that happened, John (realize)<sup>(5)</sup> that he (make)<sup>(6)</sup> a terrible mistake. Now he (play)<sup>(7)</sup> computer games only in his free time. Recently he (top)<sup>(8)</sup> his classmates in the mid-year examination.
29. Short after the war, my brother and I (invite)<sup>(1)</sup> (spend)<sup>(2)</sup> a few days' holiday with an uncle who (just/ return)<sup>(3)</sup> from abroad. He (rent)<sup>(4)</sup> a cottage in the country, although he rarely (spend)<sup>(5)</sup> much time there.  
We (understand)<sup>(6)</sup> the reason for this after our arrival. The cottage (have)<sup>(7)</sup> no comfortable furniture in it, many of the windows (break)<sup>(8)</sup> and the roof (leak)<sup>(9)</sup>, making the whole house damp.
30. Today there (be)<sup>(1)</sup> more than 3.000 different (speak)<sup>(2)</sup> languages in the world. English (be)<sup>(3)</sup> the most widely spoken language, over 350 million people (speak)<sup>(4)</sup> it but more people speak Chinese. You may wonder why English (more widely/ speak)<sup>(5)</sup> although more people speak Chinese. This is because people who (speak)<sup>(6)</sup> Chinese are found in China but English (speak)<sup>(7)</sup> by people (find)<sup>(8)</sup> in almost every corner of the world.

**IV) Complete each of the following sentences with an adverbial clause of time.**

1. Don't bother me while I...
2. You have to listen to your teacher while...
3. You should do a goog deed whenever...
4. He set off for another journey as soon as...
5. It began to rain just as...
6. She had written three novels before...
7. I'll have taken three courses by the time...
8. The dog has followed its master ever since...
9. The train had just left when I...
10. What were you doing when your father...

# CLAUSES AND PHRASES

(MỆNH ĐỀ VÀ CỤM TỪ)

## A- CLAUSES OF CONDITION

(MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ ĐIỀU KIỆN)

1. Mệnh đề điều kiện là mệnh đề phụ chỉ điều kiện, được nối với mệnh đề chính bởi liên từ IF nên còn được gọi là mệnh đề if (If-clause). Câu có mệnh đề điều kiện được gọi là câu điều kiện (conditional sentence).

\* Có 3 loại câu điều kiện được phân theo bảng công thức sau:

TYPE	MAIN CLAUSE	IF - CLAUSE
I. Real in the present or future (có thật ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai)	will can shall + V(bare-inf.) may	Simple Present (V <sub>1</sub> )
II. Unreal in the present (không có thật ở hiện tại)	could would should + V(bare-inf.) might	Past Simple Past Subjunctive (V <sub>2</sub> ; be → were)
III. Unreal in the past (không có thật ở quá khứ)	could would + have + V <sub>3</sub> should might	Past Perfect (had + V <sub>3</sub> )

Ex: If I have time, I'll help you.

If you heat ice it turns/ will turn to water.

If I were you, I would come there.

He would have passed his exam if he had studied hard.

\* Mệnh đề điều kiện có thể đứng trước hoặc sau mệnh đề chính.

2. Trong mệnh đề điều kiện, ta có thể thay liên từ IF bằng UNLESS (nếu... không, trừ phi). Unless tương đương với 'If ... not'.

Ex: If you don't study hard, you'll fail in the exam.

→ Unless you study hard, you'll fail in the exam.

If she doesn't water these trees, they will die.

→ Unless she waters these trees, they will die.

\* Khi đổi câu điều kiện IF sang UNLESS, nhớ lưu ý không được đổi mệnh đề IF ở thể khẳng định sang thể phủ định mà phải đổi mệnh đề chính theo thể ngược lại.

Ex: If I have time, I'll help you.

→ Unless I have time, I won't help you.

If we had more rain, our crops would grow faster.

→ Unless we had more rain, our crops wouldn't grow faster.

If I won a big prize in a lottery, I'd build a school for the poor.

→ Unless I won a big prize in a lottery, I wouldn't build a school for the poor.

\* Ta có thể gút lại công thức sau:

**IF-CLAUSE** → **UNLESS**

Thể phủ định → khẳng định (mệnh đề chính không thay đổi)

Thể khẳng định → khẳng định (đổi động từ trong mệnh đề chính sang thể phủ định)

3. Ta cũng có thể diễn tả câu điều kiện mà không cần dùng IF hay UNLESS bằng cách đảo chủ ngữ ra sau *should, were* hoặc *had*. Lưu ý không được làm với động từ khác.

Ex: If you should run into Peter, tell him he owes me a letter.

→ Should you run into Peter, tell him he owes me a letter.

If they were stronger, they could lift the table.

→ Were they stronger, they could lift the table.

If he had studied hard, he would have passed his exam.

→ Had he studied hard, he would have passed his exam.

4. Provided (that), On condition (that), As long as, so long as (*miễn là, với điều kiện là*), Suppose, Supposing (*giả sử như*), In case (*trong trường hợp*), Even if (*ngay cả khi, dù cho*)... có thể dùng thay cho If trong câu điều kiện.

Ex: In case I forget, please remind me of my promise.

## EXERCISES

### I) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses.

1. If I see him, I (give) him a gift.
2. If I had a typewriter, I (type) it myself.
3. If I had known that you were in hospital, I (visit) you.
4. You could make better progress if you (attend) class regularly.
5. If I (know) his telephone number, I'd give it to you.
6. If you (arrive) ten minutes earlier, you would have got a seat.
7. He could get a job easily if he (have) a degree.
8. I shouldn't have believed it if I (not see) it with my own eyes.
9. If he (study) hard, he can pass the exam.

10. If she had asked you, you (accept)?
11. Rice plants (grow) well if there is enough rain.
12. He might get fat if he (stop) smoking.
13. What you (do) if you found a burglar in your house?
14. If she (not hurry), she may be late.
15. If I (try) again, I think that I would have succeeded.
16. Water (not run) downhill if there were not gravity.
17. If I tell you a secret, you (promise) not to tell it to anyone else?
18. Tell him to ring me if you (see) him.
19. The police (arrest) him if they catch him.
20. If you (speak) more slowly, he might have understood you.

#### **II) Use UNLESS instead of IF.**

1. If you are not careful, you will cut yourself with that knife.
2. If you do not like this one, I'll bring you another.
3. I'll not be able to do any work if I do not have a quiet room.
4. If she does not hurry, she'll be late.
5. If we had more rain, our crops would be better.
6. The crops would have been ruined if the flood had risen higher.
7. If you had not sneezed, he wouldn't have known that we were there.
8. If she did her hair differently, she would look quite nice.
9. If John had played for our football team, we would not have lost the game.
10. If I won a big prize in a lottery, I'd give up my job.

#### **III) Make conditional sentences without conjunctions.**

1. If I were you, I'd accept the job.
2. If you had told me that he never paid his debts, I wouldn't have lent him money.
3. If he had known your telephone number he would have rung you.
4. If it were nice, we would go for a walk.
5. I would come to her wedding if I were invited.
6. Would you visit me if I were sent to prison?
7. Would you have written to her if you had known her address?
8. What would you do if today were a holiday?
9. If they had asked me I would have helped them.
10. Scientists think that men could live on the moon if there were air and water on it.

#### **IV) Complete the following sentences.**

1. If I were the Prime Minister, I...
2. He could buy a new car if...
3. If I had more time,...
4. If he hadn't been ill,...
5. They could have passed the exam if they...

6. We could have come with you if we...
7. If her parents had been richer,...
8. If he had come yesterday,...
9. If it hadn't rained,...
10. The world would be a better place if...

**V) Make conditional sentences according to the facts provided.**

1. Keep silent or you'll wake the baby up.
2. Because you don't leave immediately, I call a policeman.
3. I don't know her number, so I don't ring her up.
4. Go right now or you'll be late for the train.
5. As she is often absent from class, she can't keep pace with her classmates.
6. I couldn't write to Alice because I didn't know her address.
7. I don't know the answer, so I can't tell you.
8. We got lost because we didn't have a map.
9. His friends were so late, so they missed the train.
10. Today isn't Sunday, so the pupils can't go swimming.
11. The heavy rain kept everybody from going out.
12. This chair is too heavy for him to move.
13. He had a flu because he went out in the rain last night.
14. The church bells keep me from sleeping.
15. Morning exercises make me feel better.
16. Stop talking or you won't understand the lesson.
17. The boy is so young that he can't go to school.
18. The fridge keeps the food from spoiling.
19. Why don't you study hard?
20. Why don't you stop smoking?
21. Be careful, or you'll cut yourself with that knife.
22. Be calm, or you'll make a wrong decision.
23. Without the air, we would die.
24. Without a visa, she couldn't have come to that country.
25. Without the sun, man would live in the darkness.
26. Without money, he wouldn't have bought such a big house.
27. Smoking makes him so weak.
28. It was very cold yesterday, so we couldn't go swimming.
29. It is very cold, so we can't go swimming.
30. I didn't watch T.V last night because I was busy.

## B- CLAUSE AFTER WISH, IF ONLY

### (MỆNH ĐỀ SAU WISH VÀ IF ONLY)

Sau **wish** (*ước, ước gì, mong*) và **if only** (*ước gi, giá mà*), người ta thường dùng một mệnh đề chỉ một điều ao ước, một điều không thật. Mệnh đề sau *wish* và *if only* được xem như một mệnh danh từ (noun clause).

Có 3 loại mệnh đề sau *wish* và *if only* được dùng để chỉ sự ao ước ở tương lai, hiện tại và quá khứ.

#### 1. Ao ước ở tương lai (Future wish)

S + wish If only	+ S + would/ could + V(bare-inf.)
---------------------	-----------------------------------

Ex: I wish I would be an astronaut in the future.

Everybody wishes you would go home.

If only I would take the trip with you next Sunday.

If only I could attend your wedding next week.

#### 2. Ao ước ở hiện tại (Present wish)

S + wish If only	+ S + V(Past simple/ Past subjunctive)
---------------------	--

\* Past subjunctive (Quá khứ giả định): hình thức giống thì Past Simple nhưng với động từ *be* phải đổi thành *were* cho tất cả các ngôi (V<sub>2</sub>, be → were)

Ex: I wish I was/ were rich. (But I am poor now.)

I can't swim. I wish I could swim.

If only Ben was/ were here. (Ben isn't here.)

We wish that we didn't have to go to class today. (We have to go to class.)

#### 3. Ao ước ở quá khứ (Past wish)

S + wish If only	+ S +	<table border="0"><tr><td style="padding-right: 10px;">Past Perfect/ Past Perfect Subjunctive</td><td style="border-left: 1px solid black; padding-left: 10px;">could have + V<sub>3</sub></td></tr></table>	Past Perfect/ Past Perfect Subjunctive	could have + V <sub>3</sub>
Past Perfect/ Past Perfect Subjunctive	could have + V <sub>3</sub>			

\* Past Perfect Subjunctive (quá khứ hoàn thành giả định): hình thức như Past Perfect (had + V<sub>3</sub>)

Ex: I wish I hadn't failed my exam last year. (I failed my exam.)

She wishes she had had enough money to buy the house. (She didn't have enough money to buy it.)

If only I had met her yesterday. (I didn't meet her.)

She wishes could have been there. (She couldn't be there.)

## EXERCISES

#### I) Give the correct forms of the verbs in the parentheses.

1. She wishes her father (be) here now to help her.
2. I wish you (not give) them my phone number yesterday.

3. I wish they (visit) us when they were in town.
4. I wish someone (give) me a job next month.
5. If only I (can take) the trip to Hanoi with her next summer.
6. We wish we (understand) all the teacher's explanation yesterday.
7. He missed an exciting football match on TV last night. He wishes he (watch) it.
8. If only I (have) more time to do this job.
9. I wish she (come) to see me yesterday.
10. I wish that someday I (be) able to marry her.

**II) Rewrite the sentences below, using WISH or IF ONLY to express wishes.**

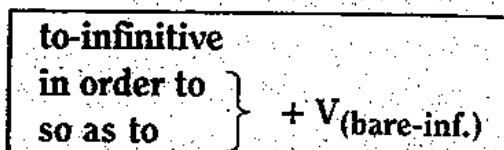
1. My father isn't here now. I want him to be here now.
2. You talk more than you work. The teacher wants you to work more than to talk.
3. John would like to be an astronaut when he grows up.
4. I'm sorry I didn't help you yesterday.
5. I regret that you didn't give me a chance to tell you the truth.
6. Mary is afraid she won't be able to attend your wedding next week.
7. We regret that we didn't have enough money to buy that house.
8. You drive too fast. I'd like you to drive more slowly.
9. You are too lazy. The teacher wants you to be more studious.
10. I'm afraid he won't get over his illness soon.
11. I'm not a doctor.
12. I haven't enough money to buy this book.
13. I live in a big city, but I don't like it.
14. Nam is sorry now that he didn't accept the job.
15. Tomorrow is a workday.
16. We have to work this Saturday.
17. I feel sick because I ate too much ice-cream.
18. It's pity that you were not here last week.
19. I regret speaking to him so impolitely yesterday.
20. Alan regretted asking Arthur to lend him 20\$.
21. I want the baby to stop crying.
22. He is sorry now that he didn't invite Molly to his party.
23. The hotel wasn't good.
24. I didn't understand the lesson.
25. My friend didn't pass his exam.

# C-PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

(CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ MỤC ĐÍCH)

## L Cụm từ chỉ mục đích (Phrases of purpose)

- Để diễn đạt mục đích khẳng định, ta dùng cụm từ bắt đầu bằng *to-infinitive*, *in order/ so as + to-infinitive*.



Ex: I try to study to pass my next exam.

We worked very hard in order to complete the project in time.

He does morning exercises regularly so as to improve his health.

- Để diễn tả mục đích phủ định ta dùng một cụm từ bắt đầu bằng *so as not to* hoặc *in order not to*.

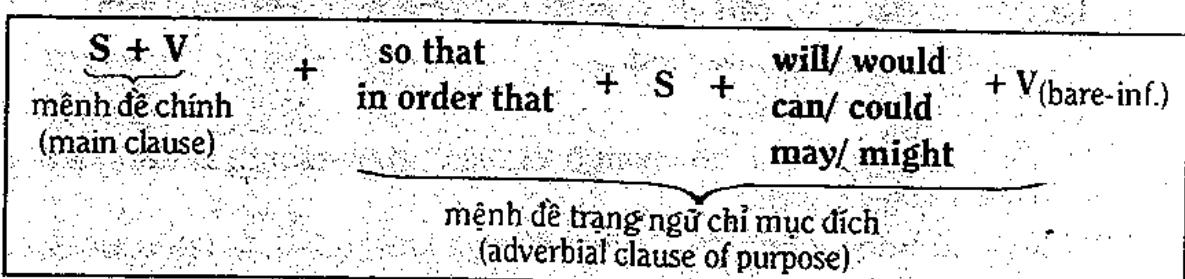
Ex: She got up early so as not to miss the bus.

He studies hard so as not to fail in the exam.

## II. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích (Adverbial clauses of purpose)

Mệnh đề chỉ mục đích thường được bắt đầu bằng *so that*, *in order that*.

Mệnh đề chỉ mục đích có cấu trúc sau:



Ex: I try all my best to study English in order that I can find a better job.

He hurried so that he wouldn't miss the train.

**Lưu ý:** Nếu chủ ngữ của mệnh đề chính và mệnh đề chỉ mục đích khác nhau ta không được dùng cụm từ chỉ mục đích (*phrase of purpose*).

## III. Các dạng bài tập.

- Dạng bài tập 1:** Nối 2 câu có cùng chủ ngữ thành 1 câu có cụm từ chỉ mục đích hoặc mệnh đề chỉ mục đích.

Ex: Mary gets up early every morning. She wants to learn her lessons.

→ Mary gets up early every morning to learn her lessons.

→ Mary gets up early every morning so that she can learn her lessons.

We learn English. We want to have better communication with other people.

→ We learn English to have better communication with other people.

→ We learn English so that we will have better communication with other people.

He was in a hurry. He wanted to catch the bus.

→ He was in a hurry to catch the bus.

→ He was in a hurry in order that he would catch the bus.

**2. Dạng bài tập 2:** Nối 2 câu có cùng chủ ngữ nhưng sau *want* có tân ngữ hoặc túc từ (object)

Ex: He gave me his address. He wanted me to visit him.

→ He gave me his address so that I would visit him.

They whispered. They didn't want anyone to hear their conversation.

→ They whispered in order that no one could hear their conversation.

\* Nếu muốn dùng cụm từ chỉ mục đích (phrase of purpose) ở dạng này, ta phải theo công thức: *in order for + O + to-infinitive*

Ex: He gave me his address in order for me to visit him.

They whispered in order for no one to hear their conversation.

**3. Dạng bài tập 3:** Đổi từ cụm từ sang mệnh đề hoặc ngược lại.

Ex: We hurried to school so as not to be late.

→ We hurried to school so that we wouldn't be late.

Mary locked the door so that she wouldn't be disturbed.

→ Mary locked the door so as not to be disturbed.

He studies hard in order to pass his exam.

→ He studies hard so that he can pass his exam.

**4. Dạng bài tập 4:** Hoàn tất câu với cụm từ hoặc mệnh đề chỉ mục đích.

Ex: She studies English so that...

He stood up in order...

**Lưu ý:** - Khi động từ trong mệnh đề chính ở thời hiện tại (present), ta dùng *will/ can* ở mệnh đề chỉ mục đích.  
- Khi động từ trong mệnh đề chính ở thời quá khứ (past), ta dùng *would/ could* ở mệnh đề chỉ mục đích.

## EXERCISES

I) Use a phrase or clause of purpose to combine each pair of sentences below.

1. The boy stood on the benches. They wanted to get a better view.
2. We lower the volume of the radio. We don't want to bother our neighbours.
3. I'll write to you. I want you to know my decision soon.
4. These men were talking in whispers. They didn't want anyone to hear their conversation.
5. The boy feigned to be sick. He hoped we didn't make him work.
6. The man spoke loudly. He wanted everybody to hear him clearly.
7. Doris often goes home as soon as the class is over. She doesn't want her mother to wait for her.
8. John gets up early. He doesn't want to be late for class.
9. Mary hid the novel under her pillow. She didn't want her father to see it.
10. Alice prepares her lesson carefully. She wants to get high marks in class.

11. The robber changed his address all the time. He didn't want the police to find him.
12. They did their jobs well. They hoped the boss would increase their salary.
13. You should walk slowly. Your sister can follow you.
14. I'm studying hard. I want to keep pace with my classmates.
15. We turned out the lights. We didn't want to waste electricity.
16. This pupil read only for short periods each day. He didn't want to train his eyes.
17. I whispered. I didn't want to disturb anyone.
18. The clown took off his mask. He didn't want to frighten the children.
19. My father drove carefully. He didn't want to cause accidents.
20. Sue dutifully followed her parents' advice. She didn't want to cause trouble for her parents.
21. Mr Thompson is learning Vietnamese.  
He wishes to read Kim Van Kieu.
22. Please shut the door. I don't want the dog to go out of the house.
23. The farmer built a high wall around his garden. The fruits wouldn't be stolen.
24. The police stopped the traffic every few minutes. The pedestrians might cross the road.
25. The notices are written in several languages. Everyone may understand them.
26. I wish to have enough money. I want to buy a new house.
27. Dick is practising the guitar. He can play for the dance.
28. She needs a job. She wants to support her old parents.
29. He moved to the front row. He could hear the speaker better.
30. She put the meat into the oven. She wanted it to be ready for dinner.

**II) Rewrite the following sentences, using phrases of purpose.**

1. Leave early so that you may get home before dark.
2. This man changed his address constantly so that he could avoid the police.
3. I shouted in order that I could warn everyone of danger.
4. Banks are developed so that they can keep people's money safe.
5. Mary went to the library in order that she could borrow some books.
6. Yesterday father went to the bank so that he would open a checking account.
7. I went to see him so that I could find out what had happened.
8. Tom is saving up so that he can buy a new bicycle.
9. He hurried so that he could catch the train.
10. She is learning French so that she will be able to speak it when she comes to Paris.

**III) Change phrases of purpose to clauses of purpose or vice versa.**

1. We hurried to school so as not to be late.
2. He climbed the tree in order to get a better view.
3. You should get up early so that you will have time to review your lesson.
4. Some young people like to earn their own living in order that they will be independent of their parents.
5. We should do morning exercises regularly so as to improve our health.

6. We should take advantage of the scientific achievements of the world so that we can develop our national economy.
7. Every people in the world must unite their efforts to maintain and protect peace.
8. She put on warm clothes so that she wouldn't catch cold.
9. He hurried to the station so as not to miss the train.
10. She locked the door so as not to be disturbed.

#### IV) Complete the following sentences.

1. Tom hurried so that...
2. Mary asked her parents for permission in order...
3. They're studying English so that...
4. He stood up to...
5. I gave her my telephone number in order that...
6. I'll come there early in order...
7. The teacher explained the lesson again so that...
8. The firemen rushed into the burning house to...
9. He is saving money so that...
10. They are in a hurry so as not...
11. We study hard in order...
12. Mary has made a big cake so that...
13. They went to Paris to...
14. He tries to go to work in time so as not...
15. The workers went on strike so that...

## D- PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF RESULT

(CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ KẾT QUẢ)

### I. Cụm từ chỉ kết quả (phrases of result)

Cụm từ chỉ kết quả thường có TOO (quá) hoặc ENOUGH (dù).

#### 1. TOO (quá ... không thể)

S + be (look, seem, become, get...) + too + adj (+ for + O) + to-infinitive  
 S + V(thường) + too + adv (+ for + O) + to-infinitive.

Ex: He is too short to play basketball.

Tom ran too slowly to become the winner of the race.

This book is too dull for you to read.

Lưu ý: Too thường được dùng trong câu có nghĩa phủ định (quá ... không thể).

#### 2. ENOUGH (dù ... để có thể)

S + be + adj + enough (+ for + O) + to-infinitive  
 S + V(thường) + adv + enough (+ for + O) + to-infinitive

Ex: Mary isn't old enough to drive a car.

She speaks Spanish well enough to be an interpreter.

It is cold enough to wear a heavy jacket.

## II. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ kết quả (Adverbial clauses of result)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ kết quả là mệnh đề phụ được dùng để chỉ kết quả do hành động của mệnh đề chính gây ra.

### 1. SO ... THAT (quá ... đến nỗi)

$\underbrace{S + be + so + adj}_{\text{main clause}}$	+	$\underbrace{\text{that} + S + V}_{\text{adverbial clause of result}}$
$S + V(\text{thường}) + so + adv$	+	$\underbrace{\text{that} + S + V}_{}$

Ex: It was so dark that I couldn't see anything.

The student had behaved so badly that he was dismissed from the class.

Lưu ý: Nếu động từ trong mệnh đề chính là các động từ chỉ tri giác như *look, appear, seem, feel, taste, smell, sound, ...*, ta dùng cùng công thức với động từ *to be*.

Ex: The little girl looks so unhappy that we all feel sorry for her.

The soup tastes so good that everyone will ask for more.

Nếu sau *so* có *many, much, few, little* thì ta có cấu trúc:

$S + V + so + \text{many/few} + \text{plural countable noun} + \text{that} + S + V$
(danh từ đếm được số nhiều)

Ex: The Smiths had so many children that they formed their own baseball team.

I had so few job offers that it wasn't difficult to select one.

There are so many people in the room that I feel tired.

$S + V + so + \text{much/little} + \text{uncountable noun} + \text{that} + S + V$
(danh từ không đếm được)

Ex: He has invested so much money in the project that he can't abandon it now.

The grass received so little water that it turned brown in the heat.

\* Một cấu trúc khác của SO ... THAT

$S + V + so + adj + a + \text{singular countable noun} + \text{that} \dots$
(danh từ đếm được số ít)

Ex: It was so hot a day that we decided to stay indoors.

It was so interesting a book that he couldn't put it down.

### 2. SUCH ... THAT (quá ... đến nỗi)

$S + V + \text{such} + (\text{a/an}) + \text{adj} + \text{N} + \text{that} + S + V$
---

Ex: It was such a hot day that we decided to stay at home.

She has such exceptional abilities that everyone is jealous of her.

There are such beautiful pictures that everybody will want one.

It is such an intelligent boy that we all admire him.

This is such difficult homework that I will never finish it.

## EXERCISES

### I) Use SO or SUCH.

1. The sun shone \_\_\_\_\_ brightly that Maria had to put on her sunglasses.
2. Dean was \_\_\_\_\_ a powerful swimmer that he always won the races.
3. There were \_\_\_\_\_ few students registered that the class was cancelled.
4. We had \_\_\_\_\_ wonderful memories of that place that we decided to return.
5. We had \_\_\_\_\_ good a time at the party that we hated to leave.
6. The benefit was \_\_\_\_\_ great a success that the promoters decided to repeat it.
7. It was \_\_\_\_\_ a nice day that we decided to go to the beach.
8. Jane looked \_\_\_\_\_ sick that the nurse told her to go home.
9. Those were \_\_\_\_\_ difficult assignments that we spent two weeks finishing them.
10. Ray called at \_\_\_\_\_ an early hour that we weren't awake yet.
11. The book looked \_\_\_\_\_ interesting that he decided to read it.
12. He worked \_\_\_\_\_ carefully that it took him a long time to complete the project.
13. We stayed in the sun for \_\_\_\_\_ a long time that we became sunburned.
14. There were \_\_\_\_\_ many people on the bus that we decided to walk.
15. The program was \_\_\_\_\_ entertaining that nobody wanted to miss it.

### II) Make sentences with SO ... THAT.

1. The lesson is very difficult. Nobody can understand it.
2. The work is very hard. I can't finish it on time.
3. This novel was very interesting. I couldn't put it down.
4. This song is very simple. All of us can sing it.
5. My brothers and sisters were very excited about the trip. They couldn't sleep.

### III) Make sentences with SUCH ... THAT.

1. The house is very expensive. Nobody can buy it.
2. The boy is very nice. We all like him.
3. The weather was very cold. We couldn't go out.
4. The room was very dark. I couldn't see anything.
5. The day was nice. We decided to go to the beach.

### IV) Combine two sentences, using SO ... THAT or SUCH ... THAT.

1. The sun shone brightly. Maria had to put on her sunglasses.
2. Dean was a powerful swimmer. He always won the races.
3. There were few students registered. The class was cancelled.

4. The house was beautiful. I took a picture of it.
5. This coffee is strong. I can't drink it.
6. This is a good film. I want to see it again and again.
7. There was a lot of food. Everyone ate too much.
8. There were a lot of guests. There wasn't enough food.
9. I ate a lot of sandwiches. I felt uneasy.
10. David has a lot of work to do. He can't come tonight.
11. He was very sick. He was sent to the hospital.
12. It was very dark. He couldn't see anything.
13. He has very wide knowledge. We can't help admiring him.
14. His conduct is very good. All his teachers love him.
15. Mary has a beautiful voice. We all like to hear her sing.
16. John is still very weak. He can't walk without a stick.
17. My father has a very good health. He seldom takes any medicines.
18. There is too much noise. We can't learn our lessons.
19. My friend is very strong. He can lift up the table by himself.
20. Bill is an intelligent boy. He is always at the top of his class.

**V) Use SUCH instead of SO to rewrite the sentences below.**

1. He is so clever that he can answer all my questions.
2. Mr. Keller is so rich that he can give the charitable society one million dollars.
3. This city is so large that I've got lost.
4. That day was so nice that all of us went out for a walk.
5. This shop is so small that we don't take notice of it.
6. That fish was so big that it could weigh fifty kilos.
7. The test we did yesterday was so difficult that we couldn't finish it an hour.
8. The play we saw yesterday was so bad that we went out by halves.
9. The story he told us was so funny that I couldn't help laughing.
10. Jane's conduct is so good that everybody likes her.
11. Mary's voice is so beautiful that we all like to hear her sing.
12. Miss Snow's ring is so valuable that she keeps it very carefully.
13. Your dog is so fierce that nobody dares to approach it.
14. His house is so beautiful that he doesn't want to sell it.
15. Our car is so old that we must repair it three times a month.

**VI) Complete the following sentences.**

1. That lesson was so difficult that...
2. The goods were so good that...
3. We enjoyed the music so much that...
4. He is such a busy man that...
5. They are such big shoes that...
6. He spoke so fast that...

7. He worked so hard that...
8. Distances are so great that...
9. The mountains are so high that...
10. I have so many things to do that...
11. This is such a heavy package that...
12. It is such a warm day that...
13. That was such a good movie that...
14. We had such a good time that...
15. This is such a difficult lesson that...
16. There is so much noise here that...
17. That book is so interesting that...
18. They are such high mountains that...
19. She speaks with such speed that...
20. She is such a busy person that...

**VII) Use the construction TOO... + to-infinitive to rewrite the sentences below.**

1. It was so cold that we didn't want to go out.
2. Mr. Pike is so weak that he can't walk without a stick.
3. The ground is so hard that we can't dig it.
4. The elephant is so big that it can't run fast.
5. Your handwriting is so bad that I can't read it.
6. This man is so old that he can't work.
7. These shoes are so big that I can wear them.
8. These goods are so expensive that they can't be sold quickly.
9. She walked so fast that her younger sister couldn't follow her.
10. I got up so late that I didn't have time to eat breakfast.

**VIII) Rewrite the sentences below, using ENOUGH instead of TOO**

1. He is too old to wear this coloured shirt.
2. She is too weak to carry this bag.
3. This pen is too expensive for me to buy.
4. Bill is too foolish to understand what I say.
5. This bag is too heavy for her to carry.
6. The test was too difficult for them to do.
7. That sentence was too long for me to memorize.
8. The land is too poor to grow crops.
9. The room is too noisy for us to study.
10. This book is too dull to read.
11. We were too late to get good seats.
12. Jack is too lazy to make progress in his study.
13. I'm too poor to help you with the money.

14. These oranges are too sour for us to eat.
15. The shelf is too high for the boy to reach.
16. This road is too dangerous for her to go at night.
17. The water in this pool is too dirty to drink.
18. Martha is too ugly to have a boyfriend.
19. This room is too dark for us to study.
20. He studied too badly to pass his exam.

#### **IX) Fill in the blanks with SO MUCH or SO MANY.**

1. We have \_\_\_\_\_ problems that we can't go to bed early.
2. Why have you got \_\_\_\_\_ furniture?
3. There was \_\_\_\_\_ food that everyone ate too much.
4. There were \_\_\_\_\_ guests that there wasn't enough food.
5. Why did you buy \_\_\_\_\_ beer?
6. Doctor Simmon has \_\_\_\_\_ patients that he's always busy.
7. I ate \_\_\_\_\_ sandwiches that I felt ill.
8. My father has \_\_\_\_\_ work to do that he can't come back home tonight.
9. Why did he drink \_\_\_\_\_ wine?
10. They drank \_\_\_\_\_ wine that they couldn't walk.
11. His mother asks him to take \_\_\_\_\_ things that he can't put all of them into his suitcase.
12. There are \_\_\_\_\_ places of interest in London that Jane can't decide where to go first.
13. It took Jane \_\_\_\_\_ time to listen to her roommate.
14. There was \_\_\_\_\_ noise in the room that I couldn't work.
15. There are \_\_\_\_\_ planets in the universe that we can't count them.

### **E-PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF REASON** (CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ LÝ DO)

#### **I. Cụm từ chỉ lý do (Phrases of reason)**

Cụm từ chỉ lý do thường được bắt đầu bằng các giới từ ***because of, due to*** hoặc ***owing to***.

**because of/ due to/ owing to + noun/ pronoun/ gerund phrase**

Ex: The students arrived late because of/ due to the traffic jam.

We were there because of him.

She stayed at home because of feeling unwell.

#### **II. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lý do (Adverbial clauses of reason)**

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lý do là một mệnh đề phụ chỉ lý do hoặc nguyên nhân của hành động được nêu trong mệnh đề chính. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lý do thường được nối với mệnh đề chính bằng các liên từ ***because, since, as*** (lưu ý *since* và *as* thường đặt ở đầu câu).

## **Because/ Since/ As + S + V**

**Ex:** He came ten minutes late because he missed the first bus.

Since/ As he missed the first bus, he came ten minutes late.

She was worried because it started to rain.

They didn't take part in the trip because the weather was bad.

\* Khi đổi từ mệnh đề sang cụm từ, nếu 2 chủ ngữ giống nhau ta có thể dùng Gerund phrase.

**Ex:** She stayed at home because she was sick.

→ She stayed at home because of being sick.

## **EXERCISES**

### **I) Supply either BECAUSE or BECAUSE OF as appropriate.**

1. It was difficult to deliver the letter \_\_\_\_\_ the sender had written the wrong address on the envelope.
2. We decided to leave early \_\_\_\_\_ the party was boring.
3. Rescue attempts were temporarily halted \_\_\_\_\_ the bad weather.
4. Paul may not go to the football game \_\_\_\_\_ his grades.
5. They visited their friends often \_\_\_\_\_ they enjoyed their company.

### **II) Combine each pair of sentences, using BECAUSE, SINCE, AS.**

1. She saw the wanted man in a small coffee shop. She phoned the police.
2. The teacher is sick. We'll have no class tomorrow.
3. She walked slowly. Her leg was injured.
4. Mary looks happy. She has just got good marks.
5. He came to the office 10 minutes late. He missed the first bus.
6. She coughed and sneezed. The doctor said she had to stay out of crowd.
7. It got dark. I couldn't read the letter.
8. I didn't come in time. There was a traffic jam.
9. He stayed at home yesterday. His mother was sick.
10. We didn't want to go out. It rained heavily.

### **III) Make questions with WHY.**

1. I left school because of my hard life at that time.
2. The train was late because the fog was thick.
3. They'll leave early because the distance is very long.
4. She likes him because he is kind.
5. The pupil understood that mathematical problem very well because he explained it clearly.

### **IV) Rewrite these sentences, using BECAUSE.**

1. It's raining, so we stay at home.
2. Most people hear jogging is a good exercise, so they begin to jog.
3. The climate in the country is healthy, so people like to live there.

- A computer can be used for various purposes, so it becomes very popular nowadays.
- Tomorrow is a public holiday, so all the shops will be shut.

#### V) Change clauses of reason to phrases.

- Mary didn't go to school yesterday because she was sick.
- She went to bed early because she felt tired.
- Ann didn't go to the circus with Betty because she had a bad cold.
- John succeeded in his exam because he worked hard and methodically.
- Margaret stayed home because her mother was sick.
- I like him because his father is kind to me.
- I can't eat these fruits because they are green.
- I couldn't do the test because it was difficult.
- I couldn't read the letter because it was dark.
- He came late because it rained heavily.
- I can't study because it is noisy.
- The train came late because it was foggy.
- All the teachers love him because his conduct is good.
- The train was late because the fog was thick.
- We stopped our car because the traffic lights turned red.
- The plane couldn't take off because the weather was bad.
- Rice plants grow well because the climate is warm and damp.
- He couldn't drive fast because the street was crowded and narrow.
- I can't sleep because the weather is hot.
- He left school because his life was hard.

## F- PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF CONCESSION

(CỤM TỪ VÀ MỆNH ĐỀ CHỈ SỰ NHƯỢNG BỘ)

### I. Cụm từ chỉ sự nhượng bộ (Phrases of concession)

Cụm từ chỉ sự nhượng bộ thường được bắt đầu bằng giới từ *In spite of* hoặc *Despite* (mặc dù, cho dù).

<i>in spite of</i>	+ noun/ noun phrase/ gerund phrase
<i>despite</i>	

Ex: Despite his physical handicap, he has become a successful businessman.

In spite of having a headache I enjoyed the film.

We understood him in spite of his accent.

\* Cụm từ chỉ sự nhượng bộ có thể được đặt ở trước hoặc sau mệnh đề chính.

### II. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự nhượng bộ (Adverbial clauses of Concession)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự nhượng bộ là mệnh đề phụ chỉ sự tương phản của hai hành động trong câu. Mệnh đề này thường được bắt đầu với *although, though, even though, no matter, whatever* (dù, cho dù).

## **although/ though/ even though + S + V**

Ex: Although the weather was very bad, we had a picnic.  
 We took many pictures though the sky was cloudy.  
Even though I didn't know anybody at the party, I had a nice time.

## **No matter + who/ what/ when/ where/ why/ how (adj, adv) + S + V Whatever (+ N) + S + V**

Ex: No matter who you are, I still love you.  
No matter what she says, I don't believe her.  
Whatever others may say, you are certainly right.

## **EXERCISES**

### **I) Combine each pair of sentences below, using the conjunction given in parentheses.**

1. He is very rich. He isn't happy. (although)
2. He is very rich. He isn't happy. (no matter)
3. She can't answer my question. She is very intelligent. (although)
4. She can't answer my question. She is very intelligent. (no matter)
5. He does anything. He is always careful. (whatever)
6. He does anything. He always tries his best. (no matter)
7. She says anything. I don't believe her. (whatever)
8. She says anything. I don't believe her. (no matter)
9. He tried. He was not successful. (no matter)
10. He tried. He was not successful. (although)
11. His life is hard. He is determined to study well. (although)
12. His life is hard. He is determined to study well. (no matter)
13. He was wise and experienced. He was taken in. (though)
14. He got good jobs. He was not satisfied. (no matter)
15. He got good jobs. He was not satisfied. (even though)
16. You do any job. You should do it devotedly. (whatever)
17. He lived anywhere. He always thought of his homeland. (no matter)
18. It was cold. He didn't wear warm clothes. (no matter)
19. He often tells lies. Many people believe him. (although)
20. You return at any time. She waits for you. (no matter)

### **II) Make clauses of concession with WHATEVER.**

1. No matter what happens, don't forget to write to me.
2. She will refuse to consider our proposal even if we made any kinds of effort to persuade her.
3. No matter what kinds of exercises he had taken, he was still putting on weight.
4. No matter what sorts of difficulties you may encounter, you should keep your promise.
5. No matter what he says, nobody believes him.

6. You should review all your lessons before taking your exam although you have any kinds of difficulties.
7. Although he had taken any kinds of exercises, he got fatter and fatter.
8. You should always study hard although you encounter difficulties.
9. Although others may say anything, she is certainly right.
10. Although he chose any job, his parents were pleased with him.

### **III) Change clauses of concession to phrases.**

1. She didn't eat much though she was hungry.
2. He couldn't solve the problem though he is good at maths.
3. Mr. Pike doesn't wear glasses though he is over sixty.
4. Although he had much experience in machinery, he didn't succeed in repairing this machine.
5. Although it got dark, they continued to work.
6. Although it was noise, I kept on studying.
7. Although it rained heavily, I went to school on time.
8. The flight was not delayed though it was foggy.
9. He ate all the fruits though they were green.
10. We did the test well though it was difficult.
11. Although he is strong, I'm not afraid of him.
12. Everybody has great regard for him though he is poor.
13. The plane took off though the weather was bad.
14. He didn't stop his car though the traffic lights turned red.
15. He studied very well though his life was hard at that time.
16. Although the streets are narrow, many people drive cars in this city.
17. Although his English was good, he wasn't chosen.
18. Although he's got an English name, he is in fact German.
19. He always studies hard though he encounters difficulties.
20. Although the weather is bad, we are going to have a picnic.
21. Although he had not finished the paper, he went to sleep.
22. She attended the class although she didn't feel alert.
23. The child ate the cookies even though his mother had told him not to.
24. She drank coffee to keep herself warm although she disliked it.
25. Mary will take a plane even though she dislikes flying.
26. Although Mary was sad, she managed to smile.
27. The old woman told interesting stories to the children although her memory was poor.
28. Though he had been absent frequently, he was managed to pass the test.
29. He ate the chocolate cake even though he was on diet.
30. Although the prices are high, my daughters insist on going to the movie.

# G- CLAUSES AFTER AS IF, AS THOUGH, IT'S HIGH TIME, IT'S TIME, WOULD RATHER

## 1. Mệnh đề sau AS IF, AS THOUGH (Clauses after AS IF, AS THOUGH)

*as if, as though* (như thể, dường như) đứng trước một mệnh đề chỉ một điều không có thật hoặc trái với thực tế.

S + V<sub>(present)</sub> + as if  
as though + S + V<sub>(Past simple/ Past Subjunctive)</sub>

Ex: The old lady dresses as if it was/ were winter even in the summer.  
(But it is not winter.)

He behaves as though he owned the place. (But he doesn't own it.)

He acts as though he was/ were rich. (But he is not rich.)

S + V<sub>(past)</sub> + as if  
as though + S + V<sub>(past perfect)</sub>  
(Chỉ một hành động xảy ra  
trước hành động ở mệnh đề chính)

Ex: Tom looked tired as if he had worked very hard. (But he didn't work hard.)

The child ate as though he had been hungry for a long time.

He looked as if he hadn't taken a bath for months.

## 2. Mệnh đề sau IT'S TIME, IT'S HIGH TIME (Clauses after IT'S TIME, IT'S HIGH TIME)

*It's time/ It's high time* (đã tới lúc) diễn tả thời gian mà một việc nên được làm ngay. *It's time/ It's high time* thường được sau bằng các mệnh đề có cấu trúc như sau:

It's time  
It's high time + S + V<sub>(past simple)</sub>

Ex: It's time you started to work.

It's high time we set out.

It's time the boy was in bed.

It's time  
It's high time + (for + O) + to-infinitive

Ex: It's time for her to go to bed.

It's time to buy a car.

## 3. Mệnh đề sau WOULD RATHER (Clauses after WOULD RATHER)

*Would rather* (mong muốn rằng) được dùng để diễn đạt nghĩa một người muốn người khác làm điều gì đó.

a. Mong muốn ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai

S + would rather (that) + S + V<sub>(past simple/ past subjunctive)</sub>

Ex: I would rather you went home now.

(NOT I would rather you go home now.)

Tomorrow's difficult. I'd rather you came next week.

"Shall I open a window?" "I'd rather you didn't."

b. Mong muốn ở quá khứ

**S + would rather (that) + S + V<sub>past perfect</sub>**

Ex: Roberto would rather we hadn't left yesterday. (We left yesterday.)

John would rather that Mary had gone to school yesterday. (Mary didn't go to school)

\* **Would rather** còn được dùng trong các cấu trúc sau:

• **S + would rather (not) + V(bare-inf.)... (than)...**

*(Tương lai / Hiện tại)*

Ex: I would rather stay at home tonight.

John would rather go to class tomorrow than today.

• **S + would rather (not) + have + V<sub>3</sub>... (than)...**

*(Quá khứ)*

Ex: John would rather have gone to class yesterday than today.

Mary would rather not have gone to class yesterday.

## EXERCISES

### I) Supply the correct verb forms.

1. We would rather (stay) home tonight.
2. Mr Jones would rather (stay) home last night.
3. We would rather (drink) coffee than tea.
4. The photographer would rather that we (stand) closer together than we are standing.
5. Carmen would rather (cook) for the entire family.
6. She would rather you (not arrive) last night.
7. John would rather you (sleep) than worked last night.
8. George would rather Jane (be) here tomorrow.
9. I would rather my sister (not, fail) the driving test yesterday.
10. I would rather that they (invite) her to their party last Sunday.
11. Henry talks to his dog as if it (understand) him.
12. It's time we all (go) now.
13. I'd rather you (go) now.
14. It's high time you (get) the tea ready.
15. He acts as if he (know) English perfectly.
16. I'd rather you (pay) me now.
17. It's high time you (have) a haircut.
18. He was wet as if he (swim) for hours.
19. She acted as if she (meet) him before.
20. Jack spent his money as if he (win) a lottery.

## II) Rewrite the sentences, beginning with the words given.

1. My head seems to be on fire now. → I feel as if...
2. I had a feeling that I was walking in the air. → I felt as though...
3. Bill doesn't work hard. I'd like him to work hard. → I'd rather...
4. He did not want to pay his debts. → I'd rather...
5. He drives too fast. I want him not to drive too fast. → I'd rather...
6. He spent his money like a prince. → He spent his money as if...
7. You speak like a prophet. → You speak as though...
8. We must set out, it is a little late. → It's high time...
9. You should review your lessons for the exams. → It's time...
10. He smokes a great deal. I'd like him to give up smoking. → I'd rather...
11. She pretended not to know me. → She looked as if she...
12. He should call me on the phone. → It's time...
13. We must start working now. → It's high time...
14. She made up like an actress. → She made up as if...
15. She cried like a baby. → She cried as though...
16. They talk like kings. → They talk as if...
17. We should solve this problem. → It's time...
18. Mary dresses up like a queen. → Mary dresses up as if...
19. I'd prefer my wife not to talk too much. → I'd rather...
20. I want him to come to my house tonight. → I'd rather...

## H- NOUN CLAUSES

### (MỆNH DỀ DANH TỪ)

Mệnh đề danh từ (noun clause) là một mệnh đề phụ có chức năng của một danh từ. Mệnh đề danh từ được nối với mệnh đề chính bằng THAT hoặc các từ WHO, WHAT, WHICH, WHERE, WHEN, HOW, WHETHER.

Khi dùng các từ nối trên, động từ trong mệnh đề danh từ (noun clause) chia ở thể xác định, không chia ở thể nghi vấn.

#### 1. Mệnh đề danh từ làm chủ ngữ trong câu (Subject of a sentence)

Ex: What he said was not true.

Whether the weather will change or not is difficult to tell.

What you think is not my problem.

#### 2. Mệnh đề danh từ làm tân ngữ trong câu (Object of a sentence)

Ex: I'll tell you where she is.

I didn't believe what he said.

He said that he had seen me before.

### 3. Mệnh đề danh từ làm bổ ngữ (Complement)

Ex: I consider him what a man should be.  
Money is what she needs.

### 4. Mệnh đề danh từ làm túc từ cho giới từ (Object of a preposition)

Ex: It all depends on when you come.  
You are responsible for what you have done.

## EXERCISES

### I) Fill in the blanks with appropriate words.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ you pass your exam or not depends largely on yourself.
2. I can't guess \_\_\_\_\_ she'll agree or not.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ his wife died is still a secret.
4. The boy wonders \_\_\_\_\_ ice floats on water.
5. He said \_\_\_\_\_ he had made a mistake.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ I went last night does not concern you.
7. The teacher asked me \_\_\_\_\_ I had been absent from class the day before.
8. I wonder \_\_\_\_\_ I can repair this machine.
9. The boy wonders \_\_\_\_\_ stars there are in the sky.
10. I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ she is living now.
11. He wants to know \_\_\_\_\_ his wife talked to yesterday.
12. I hope \_\_\_\_\_ he'll pass his exam.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ he'll return is not sure.
14. He refused to do \_\_\_\_\_ I asked him.
15. \_\_\_\_\_ career you choose is an important problem.
16. He wants to know \_\_\_\_\_ I moved to this city.
17. He wants to know \_\_\_\_\_ I have lived here.
18. The clerk asked me \_\_\_\_\_ tie I wanted to buy.
19. I'm afraid \_\_\_\_\_ you didn't understand me.
20. Do you understand \_\_\_\_\_ I've said?
21. I asked the fruit seller \_\_\_\_\_ the orange is.
22. I didn't understand \_\_\_\_\_ you did such a silly thing.
23. I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ rang me last night.
24. I'm sure \_\_\_\_\_ he will come.
25. It seems \_\_\_\_\_ we have taken the wrong day.
26. The police ask me \_\_\_\_\_ I came back home last night.
27. She asks the clerk \_\_\_\_\_ this hat costs.
28. I wonder \_\_\_\_\_ this tree is.
29. I ask the girl \_\_\_\_\_ she is.
30. I'm confident \_\_\_\_\_ he will succeed.

## **II) Complete the following sentences, using Noun clauses.**

1. Mary wonders why...
2. I don't know why...
3. He told me that...
4. She asked me how...
5. Tom said that...
6. She asked him where...
7. I believe that...
8. They have thought that...
9. People say that...
10. He knows that...

## **III) Rewrite the sentences, beginning with the words given.**

1. "How old are you?" → I want to know...
2. "What did you do yesterday?" → I want to know...
3. "How did you come here?" → I want to know...
4. "Where are you going to spend your holiday next summer?"  
→ I want to know...
5. "What do you want?" → I want to know...
6. "Can you help me?" → I want to know whether...

# **I- RELATIVE CLAUSES**

## **(MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ)**

Mệnh đề quan hệ (relative clause) còn được gọi là mệnh đề tính ngữ (adjective clause) vì nó là một mệnh đề phụ được dùng để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ đứng trước nó (tiền ngữ). Mệnh đề quan hệ được nối với mệnh đề chính bởi các đại từ quan hệ (relative pronouns) WHO, WHOM, WHICH, WHOSE, THAT hoặc các trạng từ quan hệ (relative adverbs) WHEN, WHERE, WHY.

Mệnh đề quan hệ đứng ngay sau danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa.

### **I. Cách dùng đại từ quan hệ và trạng từ quan hệ trong mệnh đề quan hệ.**

1. **WHO:** *Who* là đại từ quan hệ chỉ người, đứng sau danh từ chỉ người để làm chủ ngữ (subject) hoặc tên ngữ (object) cho động từ đứng sau nó.

Ex: The man who is standing overthere is Mr. Pike.  
That is the girl who I told you about.

2. **WHOM:** *Whom* là đại từ quan hệ chỉ người, đứng sau danh từ chỉ người để làm tên ngữ (object) cho động từ đứng sau nó.

Ex: The woman whom/ who you saw yesterday is my aunt.  
The boy whom/ who we are looking for is Tom.

*Who/ Whom* làm tân ngữ có thể lược bỏ trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định (defining relative clause).

Ex: The woman you saw yesterday is my aunt.

The boy we are looking for is Tom.

**3. WHICH:** *Which* là đại từ quan hệ chỉ vật, đứng sau danh từ chỉ vật để làm chủ ngữ (subject) hoặc tân ngữ (object) cho động từ đứng sau nó.

Ex: This is the book which I like best.

The hat which is red is mine.

*Which* làm tân ngữ có thể lược bỏ trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định (defining relative clause)..

Ex: This is the book I like best.

The dress I bought yesterday is very beautiful.

**4. THAT:** *That* là đại từ quan hệ chỉ cả người lẫn vật. *That* có thể được dùng thay cho *who, whom, which* trong mệnh đề quan hệ xác định (defining relative clause).

Ex: That is the book that/ which I like best.

That is the bicycle that/ which belongs to Tom.

My father is the person that/ who(m) I admire most.

The woman that/ who lived here before us is a novelist.

*That* luôn được dùng sau các tiền tố hồn hợp (gồm cả người lẫn vật), sau các đại từ *everything, something, anything, all, little, much, none* và sau dạng so sánh nhất (superlatives).

Ex: I can see a girl and her dog that are running in the park.

She is the nicest woman that I've ever met.

**5. WHOSE:** *Whose* là đại từ quan hệ chỉ sự sở hữu. *Whose* đứng sau danh từ chỉ người hoặc vật và thay cho tính từ sở hữu trước danh từ.

*Whose* luôn đi kèm với một danh từ.

Ex: The boy whose bicycle you borrowed yesterday is Tom.

John found a cat whose leg was broken.

**6. WHEN:** *When* là trạng từ quan hệ chỉ thời gian, đứng sau danh từ chỉ thời gian.

*When* được dùng thay cho *at/ on/ in which, then*.

Ex: May Day is the day when (on which) people hold a meeting.

That was the time when (at which) he managed the company.

**7. WHERE:** *Where* là trạng từ quan hệ chỉ nơi chốn, đứng sau danh từ chỉ nơi chốn.

*Where* được dùng thay cho *at/ in/ to which, there*.

Ex: Do you know the country where (in which) I was born?

Hanoi is the place where I like to come.

**8. WHY:** *Why* là trạng từ quan hệ chỉ lý do, đứng sau *the reason*.

*Why* được dùng thay cho *for which*.

Ex: Please tell me the reason why (for which) you are so sad.

He told me the reason why he had been absent from class the day before.

## II. Phân loại mệnh đề quan hệ.

Có 2 loại mệnh đề quan hệ: mệnh đề quan hệ xác định (defining/ restrictive relative clause) và mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định (non-defining/ non-restrictive relative clause).

### 1. Defining relative clauses (mệnh đề quan hệ xác định)

Đây là loại mệnh đề cần thiết vì tiền ngữ chưa xác định, không có nó câu sẽ không đủ nghĩa.

Ex: The man who keeps the school library is Mr Green.  
That is the book that I like best.

### 2. Non-defining relative clauses (mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định)

Đây là loại mệnh đề không cần thiết vì tiền ngữ đã được xác định, không có nó câu vẫn đủ nghĩa.

Mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định được ngăn với mệnh đề chính bằng các dấu phẩy. Trước danh từ thường có: *this, that, these, those, my, his...* hoặc tên riêng.

Ex: That man, whom you saw yesterday, is Mr Pike.

This is Mrs Jones, who helped me last week.

Mary, whose sister I know, has won an Oscar.

Harry told me about his new job, which he's enjoying very much.

Lưu ý: Không được dùng THAT trong mệnh đề quan hệ không xác định (non-defining relative clause).

## III. Giới từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ.

- Trong trường hợp động từ của mệnh đề quan hệ có giới từ, ta đem giới từ đặt ra trước mệnh đề quan hệ (trước whom, which).

Ex: The man to whom Mary is talking is Mr Pike.

The shop from which I got my stereo has lots of bargains.

- Ta cũng có thể bỏ whom, which và đặt giới từ ra sau động từ của mệnh đề quan hệ xác định (defining relative clause).

Ex: The man Mary is talking to is Mr Pike.

The shop I got my stereo from has lots of bargains.

- Khi dùng that hoặc who, ta không đưa giới từ ra trước.

Ex: The man that/ who Mary is talking to is Mr Pike. (NOT The man to that/ who Mary is talking is Mr Pike.)

- Khi giới từ đứng cuối mệnh đề quan hệ là thành phần của cụm động từ (phrasal verbs) thì ta không đem giới từ ra trước whom, which.

Ex: This is the book which I'm looking for.

That is the child whom you have to look after.

- Khi dùng whom, which các giới từ cũng có thể đứng sau động từ (ngoại trừ without).

Ex: The man whom Mary is talking to is Mr Pike.

That is the man without whom we'll get lost. (NOT ...the man whom we'll get lost without.)

#### IV. Dạng rút gọn của mệnh đề quan hệ

##### 1. Mệnh đề quan hệ có thể được rút gọn bằng cách dùng cụm phân từ (participle phrases). Có 2 loại cụm phân từ:

- Cụm phân từ hiện tại (present participle phrase) là cụm từ bắt đầu bằng hiện tại phân từ (present participle: V-ing).
- Cụm phân từ quá khứ (past participle phrase) là cụm từ bắt đầu bằng quá khứ phân từ (past participle: V<sub>s</sub>).

##### \* Cách rút gọn mệnh đề quan hệ bằng cụm phân từ (participle phrases):

- Nếu động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở thể chủ động (active), ta dùng cụm phân từ hiện tại (present participle phrase) thay cho mệnh đề đó (bỏ đại từ quan hệ và trợ động từ, đưa động từ chính về nguyên mẫu rồi thêm -ing).

Ex: The man who is sitting next to you is my uncle.

→ The man sitting next to you is my uncle.

Do you know the boy who broke the windows last night?

→ Do you know the boy breaking the windows last night?

- Nếu động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở thể bị động (passive), ta dùng cụm phân từ quá khứ (past participial phrase) thay cho mệnh đề đó (bỏ đại từ quan hệ và trợ động từ, bắt đầu cụm từ bằng V<sub>s</sub>).

Ex: The books which were written by To Hoai are interesting.

→ The books written by To Hoai are interesting.

A bridge which was built only two years ago has been declared unsafe.

→ A bridge built only two years ago has been declared unsafe.

##### 2. Mệnh đề quan hệ có thể được rút gọn bằng cách dùng động từ nguyên mẫu có to (to-infinitive) hoặc cụm động từ nguyên mẫu (infinitive phrase: for + O + to-inf)

Ex: English is an important language which we have to master.

→ English is an important language to master.

There is a good restaurant where we can eat seafood.

→ There is a good restaurant to eat seafood.

That is the hotel where we can stay.

→ That is the hotel to stay.

There's a lot of work which has to be done.

→ There's a lot of work to be done.

Here is a form that you must fill in.

→ Here is a form for you to fill in.

I don't like him playing in the streets; I wish we had a garden that he could play in.

→ I don't like him playing in the streets; I wish we had a garden for him to play in.

# EXERCISES

## I) Fill in the blanks with Relative pronoun or Relative adverbs. Put commas when they are needed.

1. Alexander Flemming \_\_\_\_\_ discovered penicillin received the Nobel Prize in 1945.
2. The book \_\_\_\_\_ I need can't be found in the library.
3. Here is the beach \_\_\_\_\_ is the safest for swimmers.
4. Do you know the American woman \_\_\_\_\_ name is Margaret Mitchell?
5. Jim \_\_\_\_\_ I have known for ten years is one of my closest friends.
6. John found a cat \_\_\_\_\_ leg was broken.
7. Don't sit on the chair the leg \_\_\_\_\_ is broken.
8. This tree \_\_\_\_\_ branches are dry should be cut down.
9. The child smiled at the woman \_\_\_\_\_ he didn't know.
10. That woman \_\_\_\_\_ name I don't remember is a doctor.
11. Children enjoy reading the books \_\_\_\_\_ have coloured pictures.
12. I met someone \_\_\_\_\_ said he knew you.
13. The noise \_\_\_\_\_ he made woke everybody up.
14. The film is about a spy \_\_\_\_\_ wife betrays him.
15. Those girls \_\_\_\_\_ serve in the restaurant are the owner's daughters.
16. The house \_\_\_\_\_ walls and roof are made of glass is a green house.
17. Rod Lee \_\_\_\_\_ sister I know is a film actor.
18. Mr Baker will buy the house \_\_\_\_\_ is opposite to my house.
19. You have to take care of the books \_\_\_\_\_ you borrowed from the library.
20. Karl Marx \_\_\_\_\_ theories have changed the world's history is the German Philosopher.
21. Let me see all the letters \_\_\_\_\_ you have written.
22. Is there anyone \_\_\_\_\_ can help me do this?
23. Mr Brown \_\_\_\_\_ is only 34 is the director of this company.
24. The chief of Police, \_\_\_\_\_ work is very important, takes care of the public safety.
25. I know a place \_\_\_\_\_ roses grow in abundance.
26. The teacher with \_\_\_\_\_ we studied last year no longer teaches in our school.
27. They showed me the hospital \_\_\_\_\_ buildings had been destroyed by bombings.
28. We saw many soldiers and tanks \_\_\_\_\_ were moving to the front.
29. We must find a time \_\_\_\_\_ we can meet and a place \_\_\_\_\_ we can talk.
30. The decision was postponed, \_\_\_\_\_ was exactly what he wanted.

## II) Use a Relative pronoun to combine each pair of the sentences below.

1. You sent me a present. Thank you very much for it.
2. Romeo and Juliet were lovers. Their parents hated each other.
3. This is Mrs Jones. Her son won the championship last year.
4. I was sitting in a chair. It suddenly collapsed.
5. This is the story of a man. His wife suddenly loses her memory.
6. Charlie Chaplin died in 1977. His films amused millions of people in the world.

7. Please post these letters. I wrote them this morning.
8. The building is the church. Its tower can be seen from afar.
9. Mary and Margaret are twins. You meet them yesterday.
10. I'll introduce you to the man. His support is necessary for your project.
11. The students will surely be successful in their exams. The students study seriously and methodically.
12. Mary has won an Oscar. I know her sister.
13. Is this the style of hair? Your wife wanted to have it.
14. Shakespeare was born at Stratford on Avon, a small town in England. He is the world's greatest dramatist and poet.
15. His girl friend turned out to be an enemy spy. He trusted her absolutely.
16. A man brought in a small girl. Her hand had been cut.
17. The Smiths were given room in the hotel. Their house had been destroyed in the explosion.
18. He introduced me to his students. Most of them were from abroad.
19. They gave me four very bad tyres. One of them burst before I had driven four miles.
20. A man answered the phone. He said Tom was out.

**III) Use a Relative pronoun preceded by a preposition to combine each pair of the sentences below.**

1. The teacher is Mr Pike. We studied with him last year.
2. The problem has been discussed in class. We are very interested in it.
3. Many diseases are no longer dangerous. People died of them years ago.
4. Do you see my pen? I have just written the lesson with it.
5. I like standing at the window. I can see the park from this window.
6. We are crossing the meadow. We flew kites over it in our childhood.
7. They are repairing the tubes. Water is brought into our house through the tubes.
8. In the middle of the village there is a well. The villagers take water from this well to drink.
9. The middle-aged man is the director. My father is talking to him.
10. This is a rare opportunity. You should take advantage of it to get a better job.
11. The boy is my cousin. You made fun of him.
12. This matter is of great importance. You should pay attention to it.
13. The woman lives next door to me. You gave place to her on the bus.
14. This snake is venomless. You are afraid of it.
15. The examination lasted two days. I was successful in this examination.
16. These children are orphans. She is taking care of these children.
17. The two young men are not good persons. You are acquainted with them.
18. This is the result of our work. I'm pleased with it.
19. There is a "No Parking" sign. I do not take notice of it.
20. Mr Brown is the man. I'm responsible to him for my work.

**IV) Use a Relative Adverb to combine each pair of the sentences below.**

1. This is the house. We often stay in this house in the summer.
2. That was the time. He managed the enterprise at that time.

3. I'll show you the second-hand bookshop. You can find valuable books in this shop.
4. I never forget the park. We met each other for the first time at this park.
5. The police want to know the hotel. Mr Bush stayed at this hotel two weeks ago.
6. The reasons are basic grammatical ones. I'm scolded by the teacher for these reasons.
7. She doesn't want to speak to the cause. She divorced her husband for this cause.
8. The road is shaded with trees. I go to school on this road every day.
9. I have not decided the day. I'll go to London on that day.
10. He doesn't want to sell the house. He was born in this house.
11. The airport is the most modern one. We are going to arrive at this airport.
12. He was born on the day. His father was away on that day.
13. The days were the saddest ones. I lived far from home on those days.
14. I do not know the reason. She left school for it.
15. The bed has no mattress. I sleep on this bed.
16. Our school has a good laboratory. The students practise chemistry in the laboratory.
17. You didn't tell us the reason. We had to cut down our daily expenses for that reason.
18. The book is a telephone directory. We can look up telephone numbers in this book.
19. Mrs Brown rang Dr Brown. He was going to carry out an urgent operation at that moment.
20. This is the house. We have lived there for 5 years.

**V) Use a Relative pronoun or Relative adverb to combine each pair of sentences below.**

1. The student is from China. He sits next to me.
2. I thanked the woman. This woman had helped me.
3. The professor is excellent. I'm taking his course.
4. Jim passed the exam. This surprised everybody.
5. Mr Smith said he was too busy to speak to me. I had come to see him.
6. The man is my father. I respect this man most.
7. The man is my father. I respect his opinions most.
8. I saw a lot of people and horses. They went to market.
9. Tom has three sisters. All of them are married.
10. I recently went back to Paris. It is still as beautiful as a pearl.
11. I recently went back to Paris. I was born in Paris nearly 50 years ago.
12. She is the most intelligent woman. I've ever met this woman.
13. This doctor is famous. You visited him yesterday.
14. Do you know the music? It is being played on the radio.
15. The police want to know the hotel. Mr Foster stayed there two weeks ago.
16. You didn't tell us the reason. We have to cut down our daily expenses for that reason.
17. The day was rainy. She left on that day.
18. The reason hasn't been told yet. The president will come to that city for this reason.
19. Phuong Thao is a singer. You like her music best.
20. She couldn't come to the party. This is a pity.
21. I've sent him two letters. He has received neither of them.

22. That man is an artist. I don't remember the man's name.
23. The reason is not valid. You gave it yesterday.
24. We enjoyed the city. We spent our vacation in this city.
25. One of the elephants had only one tusk. We saw these elephants at the zoo.
26. I looked at the moon. It was very bright that evening.
27. My father goes swimming everyday. You met him this morning.
28. That car belongs to Dr Clark. Its engine is very good.
29. In the class there are 48 students. The teacher knows only a few of them.
30. The pupils haven't done their homework. It is too bad.
31. We first met in 1945. The revolution took place then.
32. The girl is happy. She won the race.
33. The taxi driver is friendly. He took me to the airport.
34. I liked the composition. You wrote it.
35. The people were very nice. We visited them yesterday.
36. The meeting was interesting. I went to it.
37. The picture was beautiful. She was looking at it.
38. I apologized the woman. I spilled her coffee.
39. The professor is excellent. I'm taking her course.
40. The man called the police. His wallet was stolen.
41. I have to call the man. I accidentally picked up his umbrella.
42. The city was beautiful. We spent our vacation there.
43. That is the restaurant. I'll meet you there.
44. The town is small. I grew up there.
45. I'll never forget the day. I first met you then.
46. May is the month. The weather is usually the hottest then.
47. 7:30 is the time. My plane will arrive then.
48. Do you remember the year? The First World War ended in that year.
49. The man is a biologist. His father is a botanist.
50. I love my parents' house. I was born in that house.

**VI) Rewrite each of the following sentences in such a way that it means exactly the same as the one printed before it.**

1. The man that we are talking about is a famous scientist.  
→ The man about...
2. The tree that we picked these fruits from is in front of the house.  
→ The tree from...
3. The city that we were born in is very large.  
→ The city in...
4. Do you remember the day? We first met on that day.  
→ Do you remember the day on...
5. The manager has just announced his retirement. We have all depended on him so much.  
→ The manager on...

6. The officer wasn't very friendly. I spoke to him yesterday.  
→ The officer to...
7. The dog was very frightened. The boys threw stones at it.  
→ The dog at...
8. The road was built in 1980. We are driving on it.  
→ The road on...
9. Did you see the letter? It came yesterday morning.  
→ Did you...
10. This is Rex Hotel, and it is the biggest hotel in the city.  
→ This is Rex Hotel, which...

**VII) Complete the following sentences, using Relative clauses.**

1. I don't know the reason...
2. They have found the handbag...
3. He doesn't like people...
4. The police arrested the man...
5. Do you know the country...
6. I don't like the women...
7. The woman ..... is my mother.
8. The man ..... is my father.
9. She has lost the bicycle...
10. This is the house...
11. The book is about the girl...
12. George works for a company...
13. What was the name of the horse...
14. The police have caught the men...
15. Mary has lost a purse...
16. Is there anyone here...
17. A market is a place...
18. It's one of the few houses...
19. The story is about a girl...
20. Please tell me the reason...

**VIII) Reduce relative clauses to phrases.**

1. The man who is standing there is a clown.
2. The envelop which lies on the table has no stamp on it.
3. Benzene, which was discovered by Faraday, became the starting point in the manufacture of many dyes, perfumes and explosives.
4. My grandmother, who is old and sick, never goes out of the house.
5. The students don't know how to do the exercises which were given by the teacher yesterday.
6. The diagrams which were made by young Faraday were sent to Sir Humphry Davy at the end of the year 1812.

7. The gentleman who lives next door to me is a well-known orator.
8. All the astronauts who are orbiting the earth in space capsules are weightless.
9. All students who don't hand in their papers will fail in the exam.
10. I saw many houses that were destroyed by the storm.
11. The street which leads to the school is very wide.
12. The system which is used here is very successful.
13. Mr Jackson, who teaches my son, is my neighbour.
14. Trains which leave from this station take an hour to get to London.
15. The candidates who are sitting for the exam are all from Vietnam.
16. We are driving on the road which was built in 1980.
17. Customers who complain about the service should see the manager.
18. The city which was destroyed during the war has now been rebuilt.
19. My brother, who met you yesterday, works for a big firm.
20. The vegetables which are sold in this shop are grown without chemicals.

**IX) Replace the Relative clause by an infinitive or infinitive phrase.**

1. We had a river in which we could swim.
2. The child would be happier if he had someone that he could play with.
3. I have some letters that I must write.
4. If she had a family that she had to cook for, she would be more interested.
5. I haven't anyone that I can go with.
6. We had to eat standing up because we hadn't anything that we could sit on.
7. I wish I had a box that I could keep my letters in.
8. She hadn't anyone to whom she could send cards.
9. Have you got a key that can unlock this door?
10. There are six letters which have to be written today.
11. There is a bench that your children can sit on.
12. We have some picture books that children can read.
13. He was the second man who was killed in this way.
14. Here is the novel that she should read.
15. The man who was interviewed was entirely unsuitable.

**X) Replace the To-infinitive phrases by Relative clauses.**

1. Lady Astor was the first woman to take her seat in Parliament.
2. The last student to be interviewed was John.
3. I was the only person to see the difficulty.
4. The last person to leave the room must turn out the lights.
5. The air-hostess was the only person to survive the crash.
6. Jim was the first boy to reach the top.
7. He was the first man to leave the burning building.
8. We had a lake to swim in.
9. Here is an application form for you to fill in.
10. I have some letters to type right now.

# **EXPRESSION OF QUANTITY**

(SỰ DIỄN TẢ VỀ SỐ LƯỢNG)

## **L. Some/ Any (một ít, một vài)**

1. SOME: *Some* được đặt trước danh từ đếm được số nhiều (plural countable noun) hoặc danh từ không đếm được (uncountable noun) trong câu xác định.

Ex: I want some milk.

He saw some strangers in his house yesterday.

My mother needs some eggs.

Đôi khi *some* được dùng trong câu hỏi (mời ai dùng thêm gì hoặc một đề nghị lịch sự)

Ex: Would you like some more coffee?

May I go out for some drink?

2. ANY: *Any* thường được đặt trước danh từ đếm được hoặc danh từ không đếm được trong câu phủ định hoặc nghi vấn.

Ex: Do you want any sugar?

She didn't see any boys in her class.

Does your sister need any eggs?

**Lưu ý:** Các đại từ phiếm chỉ (*something, anything, someone, anyone, somebody, ...*) cũng theo cách dùng trên.

Ex: I don't see anything on the table.

Is there anybody in your house now?

I want to do something to help her.

## **II. Most/ Most of (phần lớn, đa số)**

1. MOST: *Most* dùng trước danh từ đếm được số nhiều hoặc danh từ không đếm được.

*Most* là từ hạn định trong cấu trúc:

**MOST + NOUN**

**MOST + ADJECTIVE + NOUN**

Ex: Most children are fond of sweets.

Most beautiful material is expensive.

Most beer has been drunk.

Most students in my class like watching football.

2. MOST OF: *Most of* dùng trước cụm danh từ số ít hoặc số nhiều.

**MOST OF + DETERMINER/ PRONOUN + NOUN**

Ex: Most of these students are intelligent.

Most of her friends have well-paid jobs.

We spend most of our leisure time watching TV.

He has finished most of the exercises in this book.

\* Các cụm danh từ đứng sau *most of* thường xác định (phải có *the, this, these, those, ...* hoặc các tính từ sở hữu *my, his, her, ...*)

Ex: Most boys and girls have given thought to their future job.

Most of the boys and girls in my class want to choose well-paid jobs.

### III. Much, Many, A great deal of, A large number of, A lot of, Lot of... (nhiều).

#### With countable nouns

(Với các danh từ đếm được)

many

a large number of

a great number of

plenty of

a lot of

lots of

#### With uncountable nouns

(Với các danh từ không đếm được)

much

(thường dùng trong câu phủ định  
hoặc nghi vấn)

a great deal of

(thường dùng trong câu xác định)

a large amount of

plenty of

a lot of

lots of

Ex: I don't have much time for night clubs.

There are so many people here that I feel tired.

A large amount of air pollution comes from industry.

She has got a great deal of homework today.

Did you spend much money on the beautiful cars? ~Yes, I spent a lot of money on them. I want to have a lot of cars.

There's plenty of milk in the fridge.

There are plenty of eggs in the fridge.

I saw lots of flowers in the garden yesterday.

A large number of students in this school are good.

Lưu ý: Khi trong câu xác định có các từ *very, too, so, as* thì phải dùng *much/ many*.

Ex: There was so much traffic that it took me an hour to get home.

There are too many mistakes in your writing.

### IV. Few, A Few, Little, A Little (ít, một ít, một vài)

1. Few/ A Few: dùng trước các danh từ đếm được số nhiều (plural countable nouns).

Few: *rất ít, hầu như không có* (*ít hơn những gì bạn muốn hoặc mong đợi*)

Ex: I don't want to take the trip to Hue because I have few friends there.

They hardly find a job because there are few jobs.

A few: *một vài* (gần nghĩa với *some*)

Ex: You can see a few houses on the hill.

A few people left early.

There are a few empty seats here.

I recognized a few of the other guests.

2. Little/ A Little: dùng trước các danh từ không đếm được (uncountable nouns).

Little: *rất ít (ít hơn những gì bạn muốn hoặc mong đợi)*

Ex: There was little doubt in my mind.  
I have very little time for reading.  
I understood little of what he said.

**A little:** *một ít, một chút* (gần nghĩa với *some*).

Ex: I need a little help to move these books.

It caused a little confusion.

Would you like a little salt on your vegetables?

## EXERCISES

### I) Choose the correct words in the following sentences.

1. He doesn't have (many/ much) money.
2. I would like (a few/ a little) salt on my vegetables.
3. She bought (many/ much) cards last night.
4. There are (less/ fewer) boys in this class than in the next class.
5. There is (too many/ too much) information to learn.
6. Would you like (less/ fewer) coffee than this?
7. This jacket costs (too much/ too many).
8. I don't want (some/ any) eggs but I want (any/ some) cheese.
9. Is there (some/ any) water in the glass?
10. (How much/ How many) pounds of butter does she want?
11. (How much/ How many) butter does she want?
12. Is there (some/ any) tea in the cup?
13. Peter doesn't want (something/ anything) to do.
14. I can speak (a few/ a little) English.
15. They don't need (some/ any) coffee.
16. I can't buy that house because I have (few/ little) money.
17. They have given (a large number of/ a great deal of) time on training.
18. The teacher found (a large number of/ a great deal of) mistakes in his writing.
19. I can drink (a few/ a little) wine.
20. Give me (a few/ a little) examples.

### II) Fill in each of the blanks with MOST or MOST OF.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ adolescents can hardly find a suitable job.
2. There are 50 students in my class. \_\_\_\_\_ them can hardly find a suitable job.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ the time he spent on learning was fairly reasonable.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ men and women apply for that job, but \_\_\_\_\_ them aren't often qualified.
5. She gave \_\_\_\_\_ her energy to science.

### III) Fill in each of the blanks with A GREAT DEAL OF/ A LARGE NUMBER OF/ MUCH (OF)/ MANY (OF)

1. \_\_\_\_\_ learner's attention should be paid to the use of the English tenses.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ today's scientific work is involved in the use of computers.

3. Are \_\_\_\_\_ your photos in colour or in black and white?
4. She put too \_\_\_\_\_ sugar in the coffee. It became so sweet that I couldn't drink it.
5. Thank you very \_\_\_\_\_ for your valuable help.
6. He wrote play, but \_\_\_\_\_ his plays couldn't be staged.
7. Do you have enough exercises to do now? Oh, too \_\_\_\_\_.
8. How \_\_\_\_\_ time do you spend on learning English every day?
9. How \_\_\_\_\_ these children are qualified for the job?
10. She doesn't know \_\_\_\_\_ about what to do in response to his kind-heartedness.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ people know him as a devoted doctor.
12. He loved so \_\_\_\_\_ fun that \_\_\_\_\_ his lessons were never well-prepared.
13. She is very rich. She has \_\_\_\_\_ money in the bank.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ goods were sent to the exhibition.
15. They have found \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes in the accounts.
16. Mrs Green has spent \_\_\_\_\_ time in Ho Chi Minh City.
17. I have got \_\_\_\_\_ homework to do today.
18. \_\_\_\_\_ trees are cut to make paper every year.
19. Please buy \_\_\_\_\_ soap.
20. How \_\_\_\_\_ money have you got?

**IV) Insert SOME, ANY, SOMEONE, ANYONE, SOMEWHERE, ANYWHERE where required.**

1. Will you have \_\_\_\_\_ tea?
2. You're expecting \_\_\_\_\_ to call, aren't you?
3. Haven't I given you \_\_\_\_\_ money this week? I must have forgotten you.
4. If you haven't \_\_\_\_\_ money, you can get \_\_\_\_\_ from the bank.
5. Are you expecting \_\_\_\_\_ else? If not, we'll go \_\_\_\_\_ for drink.
6. Please buy \_\_\_\_\_ butter for mother.
7. I have \_\_\_\_\_ new dresses.
8. She doesn't want \_\_\_\_\_ ice-cream.
9. I have bought \_\_\_\_\_ furniture.
10. Why don't you ask the bank for \_\_\_\_\_ money?

**V) Fill in each blank with LITTLE/ FEW or A LITTLE/ A FEW (OF).**

1. She gave \_\_\_\_\_ thought to her future.
2. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ coffee? Yes, please. But put \_\_\_\_\_ sugar in it.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ your friends will have to repeat the course owing to their weakness.
4. Can you speak French? Just \_\_\_\_\_.
5. If you have \_\_\_\_\_ knowledge of English grammar, you can't make correct sentences.
6. I had \_\_\_\_\_ time to look after my children.
7. She just spends \_\_\_\_\_ her money on clothes.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ these children will go to work at a garage.

3. She usually brushes her hair before going out.  
→ She usually gives her hair a ...
4. She complained about his rudeness.  
→ She had a number of ...
5. Because of engine trouble, the plane had to land on the fields.  
→ Because of engine trouble, the plane had to make a ...
6. Just look at this picture.  
→ Take a ...
7. I love her very much.  
→ I'm very much in ...
8. We must start early.  
→ We must make an ...
9. He received her letter of the 10th.  
→ He was in ...
10. After lunch time she usually rests.  
→ After lunch time she usually takes a ...

### **III) Rewrite the sentences, beginning with the suggested words.**

1. There is a tendency to minimize problem.  
→ They ...
2. They show a strong desire to put aside the status of the school child.  
→ They strongly ...
3. They thought much about their work.  
→ They gave a ...
4. They had little knowledge of the job of their choice.  
→ They ...
5. There is a determination to overcome problems.  
→ They are ...
6. He visit us whenever he's in town.  
→ He pays ...
7. There has been a tendency to choose well-paid jobs.  
→ They have ...
8. Some children give a great deal of thought to their future work.  
→ Their future work ...
9. It's better for you not to have contact with her.  
→ You'd better ...
10. I slept well last night.  
→ I had ...
11. Carol Stuart cooks and swims very well.  
→ Carol Stuart is ...

12. She has a strong desire for a scholarship.  
→ She strongly ...
13. The villagers gave us a cordial welcome.  
→ The villagers ...
14. He has no intention of leaving the city.  
→ He doesn't ...
15. She teaches English well.  
→ She is ...
16. This man lives by begging for money, food, etc.  
→ This man is ...
17. She types with care.  
→ She is ...
18. No sooner had we begun our walk than it rained.  
→ Hardly ...
19. This woman has very little sleep.  
→ This woman ...
20. My grandfather is a lover of music.  
→ My grandfather ...
21. He is a careful driver.  
→ He drives ...
22. She sings well.  
→ She is ...
23. Mary cooks well.  
→ Mary is ...
24. He is the best football player in his team.  
→ No one ...
25. She plays tennis well.  
→ She is ...
26. People speak English in Australia.  
→ English ...
27. They are building a school for the poor.  
→ A ...
28. No one has seen her since 1980.  
→ She ...
29. He visited his parents last week.  
→ His ...
30. She can speak English fluently.  
→ English ...
31. They open the shop at six o'clock.  
→ The ...

32. They spend millions of dollars on advertising every year.

→ Millions ...

33. The teacher is going to tell us a story.

→ We ...

34. This house was built 100 years ago.

→ We ...

35. All the arrangements have been made.

→ They ...

36. Evening dress ought to be worn.

→ She ...

37. Our salary was going to be increased.

→ They ...

38. This job has to be done at once.

→ They ...

39. They couldn't be found anywhere.

→ We ...

40. No one believes his story.

→ His ...

## EMPHASIS

(DẶNG NHẤN MẠNH)

Khi muốn câu có ý thuyết phục hơn và nghĩa mạnh hơn người ta dùng hình thức nhấn mạnh (emphasis).

### 1. Nhấn mạnh trong phát âm (Emphasis in pronunciation)

Khi muốn nhấn mạnh một từ, ta đọc từ đó mạnh hơn, lớn hơn hoặc với ngữ điệu cao hơn. Ta cũng có thể kéo dài nguyên âm hoặc ngưng lại trước từ được nhấn mạnh.

### 2. Nhấn mạnh trong cách viết (Emphasis in writing)

a. Động từ (verbs)

**DO/ DOES/ DID + V(bare-inf.)**

Ex: John visited her yesterday. → John did visit her yesterday.  
I like coffee. → I do like coffee.

b. Tính từ (adjectives)

**It is/ was + adj. + to-infinitive**

Ex: Travelling by air is fast. → It is fast to travel by air.  
Learning a foreign language is necessary.  
→ It is necessary to learn a foreign language.  
We found that getting a visa was impossible.  
→ We found that it was impossible to get a visa.

c. Danh từ, đại từ hoặc trạng từ (nouns, pronouns or adverbs)

- Để nhấn mạnh danh từ hoặc đại từ ta có thể dùng các đại từ nhấn mạnh (emphatic pronouns) *myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, themselves*. Đại từ nhấn mạnh thường đứng ngay sau từ được nhấn mạnh hoặc đứng cuối câu.

Ex: Ted himself broke the news to me.

I myself am wrong.

- Để nhấn mạnh trạng từ ta đưa trạng từ ra đầu câu và đảo ngữ.

Ex: Rarely has a new film produced such positive reviews.

- Để nhấn mạnh danh từ, đại từ hoặc trạng từ ta cũng có thể dùng cấu trúc

**It is/ was + ... + that/ who ...**

Ex: England won the World-Cup in 1966.

→ It was England that won the World-Cup in 1966.

I love you. → It is you that/ who I love.

The accident happened last night.

→ It was last night that the accident happened

Lưu ý dạng câu có 2 mệnh đề như sau:

Ex: I need water. I don't need milk. → It is water, not milk that I need.

I saw Hoa. I didn't see Lan. → It was Hoa, not Lan that I saw.

d. Commands (Câu mệnh lệnh)

- Câu mệnh lệnh khẳng định (Affirmative commands)

**DO + V(bare-inf.)**

Ex: Listen to me, please. → Do listen to me, please.

Visit us some time. → Do visit us some time.

- Câu đề nghị phủ định (Negative commands)

**DON'T YOU + V(bare-inf.)**

Ex: Don't talk in class. → Don't you talk in class.

Don't make too much noise. → Don't you make too much noise.

## EXERCISES

I) Rewrite the sentences with an emphasis on the underlined words.

1. Ted broke the news to me.
2. Knowing your limitations is important.
3. They want money. They don't want affection.
4. He misunderstood my intentions.
5. I remembered her name after she had gone.
6. I did my English test very well.
7. Does Mary wash up everyday?
8. She first heard the news from Francis.
9. I get along with him perhaps because he's a misfit.

9. The windows are so small that the room gets \_\_\_\_\_ air.  
10. He is not popular. He has \_\_\_\_\_ friends.

**VI) Fill in each blank with a proper expression of quantity.**

1. I feel lonely and don't enjoy my life here because I have \_\_\_\_\_ friends in this city.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ tourists have not visited this part of the town yet.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ the people at the party were very friendly.
4. Are those people English? \_\_\_\_\_ them.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ schools open in September.
6. Let's go and have a drink. We've got \_\_\_\_\_ time before the train leaves.
7. I need some money. Have you got any? Yes, but not \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The race gave everyone \_\_\_\_\_ pleasure.
9. Hurry or we'll be late. We have very \_\_\_\_\_ time.
10. I have done \_\_\_\_\_ exercises of grammar in this book.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ the people in Canada speak English.
12. The Smiths spent \_\_\_\_\_ money on their last trip.
13. I do not know \_\_\_\_\_ about biology. I have \_\_\_\_\_ knowledge about genetics.
14. The librarian says that you may borrow as \_\_\_\_\_ books as you want to.
15. The boys are making too \_\_\_\_\_ noise.
16. We spend \_\_\_\_\_ our time on English grammar.
17. I'm very poor. I have \_\_\_\_\_ money. But my brother is richer than I.  
He has \_\_\_\_\_ money in the bank.
18. \_\_\_\_\_ English learners have real chance to use it every day.
19. There is \_\_\_\_\_ sugar in the jar.
20. Did \_\_\_\_\_ children know anything about their future job? No, just \_\_\_\_\_.
21. You talk too \_\_\_\_\_ and you often do too \_\_\_\_\_ tricks in class.
22. \_\_\_\_\_ people are afraid of snakes.
23. \_\_\_\_\_ Vietnamese people make their living by farming.
24. How \_\_\_\_\_ languages can you speak? And how \_\_\_\_\_ time do you spend on learning English?
25. How \_\_\_\_\_ do you know about biology and genetics?
26. \_\_\_\_\_ machinery was sent to the exhibition.
27. \_\_\_\_\_ furniture in her room is new.
28. \_\_\_\_\_ us feel the same about the war.
29. \_\_\_\_\_ reporters were at the meeting yesterday.
30. \_\_\_\_\_ meat is expensive.

**VII) Choose the right forms of quantifiers in brackets.**

How (many/ much)<sup>1</sup> lists is your name on? There must be (plenty/ plenty of)<sup>2</sup> lists of names in every part of the world and they must be used to send information to (millions/ millions of)<sup>3</sup> people. The (number/ amount)<sup>4</sup> of letters ordinary people receive these days has greatly increased. (A lot/ A lot of)<sup>5</sup> the people I know object to receiving

unwanted letters. (Much/ Many)<sup>6</sup> of the mail we receive goes straight into the waste-paper basket. That's why (most/ the most)<sup>7</sup> people refer to it as junk mail. It would be better for all of us if we received (much/ many)<sup>8</sup> less junk mail and, as a result, saved (many/ much)<sup>9</sup> more trees from destruction.

## STYLES

### (VĂN PHONG)

Văn phong (styles) là những kiểu hành văn để diễn đạt một câu nói theo nhiều cách khác nhau. Những cách diễn đạt một câu văn có thể là:

- Dùng tính từ thay cho danh từ (hoặc ngược lại).

Ex: There is a determination to overcome problems.

N

→ Children are determined to overcome problems.

Adj

They show no interest in the picture.

N

→ They aren't interested in the picture.

Adj

- Dùng động từ thay cho danh từ (hoặc ngược lại).

Ex: We had a look at the picture. → We looked at the picture.

N

V

He had an intention of making a journey with her.

N

→ He intended to make a journey with her.

V

- Dùng thể bị động của động từ thay cho thể chủ động (hoặc ngược lại).

Ex: Mary has finished her homework.

→ Mary's homework has been finished.

We should keep dangerous chemicals in safe places.

→ Dangerous chemicals should be kept in safe places.

- Dùng trạng từ thay cho tính từ (hoặc ngược lại).

Ex: He is a careful driver. → He drives carefully.

Adj

Adv

Tom is a good student.

→ Tom studies well.

Adj

Adv

Mary can type well.

→ Mary is a good typist.

V Adv

Adj N

Lưu ý: Khi đổi cách hành văn, ta cần lưu ý sự thay đổi của giới từ, tính từ hoặc phó từ trong câu.

Adj + N  $\begin{array}{l} \xrightarrow{\hspace{1cm}} \\ \xrightarrow{\hspace{1cm}} \end{array}$  Adv + V  
V + O + Adv

Ex: He has a strong desire to become a doctor.

Adj + N

→ He strongly desires to become a doctor.

Adv + V

They gave some careful thought to the problem.

Adj + N

→ They thought about the problem carefully.

V + O + Adv

\* Một số từ được sử dụng dưới dạng động từ (verb), và danh từ (noun).

1. to look at: to have a look at (*nhin vào*)
2. to think about/ of: to give thought to (*nghĩ*)
3. to be determined to; to have a determination to (*quyết tâm*)
4. to know (about): to have knowledge of (*biết*)
5. to tend to: to have a tendency to (*có khuynh hướng*)
6. to intend to + inf: to have intention of (*dự định*) + V-ing
7. to desire: to have a desire (*ao ước*)
8. to wish: to have/ express a wish (*ao ước*)
9. to visit sb: to pay a visit to sb/ to pay sb a visit (*thăm viếng*)
10. to discuss sth: to have a discussion about (*thảo luận*)
11. to decide to: to make a decision to (*quyết định*)
12. to talk to: to have a talk with (*nói chuyện*)
13. to explain sth: to give an explanation for (*giải thích*)
14. to call sb: to give sb a call (*gọi điện cho...*)
15. to be interested in: to have interest in (*thích*)
16. to drink: to have a drink (*uống*)
17. to photograph: to have a photograph of (*chụp hình*)
18. to cry: to give a cry (*khóc, kêu*)
19. to laugh at: to give a laugh at (*cuối nhạo*)
20. to welcome sb: to give sb a welcome (*chào đón*)
21. to kiss sb: to give sb a kiss (*hôn*)
22. to ring sb: to give sb a ring (*gọi điện*)
23. to warn: to give warning (*báo động, cảnh cáo*)
24. to try to (+ inf): to make an effort to/ to make an attempt to (*cố gắng*)
25. to meet sb: to have a meeting with sb (*gặp ai...*)
26. to succeed: to make a success (*thành công*)
27. to be used: to be in use (*được sử dụng*)
28. to rest: to have a rest (*nghỉ ngơi*)
29. to sleep: to have a sleep (*ngủ*)
30. to bathe: to have/ take a bath (*tắm*)
31. to examine: to have an examination (*khám, kiểm tra, xem xét*)
32. to agree: to be in agreement (*đồng ý*)

33. to disagree: to be in disagreement (*không đồng ý*)
34. to contract sb: to have contact with sb (*liên lạc, quan hệ*)
35. to exchange: to have an exchange of (*trao đổi*)
36. to argue with sb: to have an argument with sb (*tranh cãi với ai*)
37. to complain about: to have a complaint about (*phàn nàn về...*)
38. to land: to make a landing (*hạ cánh*)
39. to receive sth: to be in receipt of sth (*nhận...*)
40. to need: to have a need of (*cần*)
41. to love sb: to fall in love with sb (*yêu ai*)
42. to brush sth: to give sth a brush (*chải*)
43. to arrange with sb: to have an arrangement with sb (*sắp xếp*)

## **EXERCISES**

**I) Rewrite these sentences by using the underlined nouns as main verbs.**

1. He had no intention of making a long journey with her.
2. Has the city government made a decision to build a hospital for the poor?
3. She shows no interest in what she is doing for the company.
4. Do most school-leavers have a strong desire to work at a tourist office?
5. I don't think they are in disagreement with what we shall do.
6. The plan didn't make a success just because most members showed no determination of doing it well.
7. During the lesson, she always takes a careful look at all the sentences and examples the teacher is giving.
8. My friend expressed a wish to become a pilot.
9. You have no need of answering all the questions in their order.
10. Please give me a call when you arrive, and we'll have a meeting at a certain restaurant.
11. She has no knowledge of what will be for she never gives thought to it.
12. She said she would pay me a visit someday.
13. He made a decision to leave home.
14. I had no intention of staying here.
15. She has a great interest in music.
16. There was an exchange of English lessons between the two schoolgirls.
17. He takes a bath every morning.
18. I had an arrangement with the neighbours about feeding the cats.
19. There was no explanation for her plan.
20. She had a medical examination by a doctor.

**II) Rewrite these sentences, using the Nouns corresponding to the Verbs.**

1. I argued with the referee about his decision.  
→ I had an ...
2. Do you agree with John about this?  
→ Are you in ...

- adverb + verb: outbreak
- gerund + noun: walking stick

## **II. Chức năng của danh từ trong câu (The functions of nouns in the sentences)**

Danh từ có thể có những chức năng khác nhau trong câu. Một danh từ có thể được sử dụng như:

### **1. Chủ ngữ (subjects)**

Ex: The children have gone to bed. (Bọn trẻ đã đi ngủ cả rồi.)

### **2. Tân ngữ trực tiếp, tân ngữ gián tiếp, tân ngữ của giới từ (direct object, indirect object, prepositional object)**

Ex: You did such splendid work.

The mother gave her son a cake.

He won't listen to any advice.

### **3. Bổ ngữ (complement)**

Ex: He is my closest friend.

### **4. Bổ ngữ của tân ngữ (objective complement)**

Ex: They elected him president of the club.

### **5. Một phần của ngữ giới từ (part of prepositional phrases)**

Ex: He spoke in a different tone.

### **6. Đồng cách với một danh từ khác (appositive phrases)**

Ex: He told us about his father, a teacher, who died in the war.

## **III. Số của danh từ (the number of nouns) là hình thức biến dạng của danh từ cho ta biết đang nói về một cái hay nhiều cái.**

Ex: The girl is singing. (singular)

The girls are singing. (plural)

### \* **Cách thành lập số nhiều (Formation of the plural)**

#### **1. Hầu hết các danh từ số nhiều thường thêm s ở cuối.**

Ex: boy → boys, hat → hats

Các chữ cái, chữ số, các dấu hiệu và những từ loại khác không phải là danh từ mà được dùng như danh từ thường thêm 's vào cuối.

Ex: There are two 9's in 99.

Dot your i's.

#### **2. Các danh từ chấm dứt bằng s, sh, ch, x, z, thêm es vào cuối.**

Ex: dish → dishes, church → churches, box → boxes

### \* **Cách phát âm đuôi s, es.**

s, es ở cuối các từ được phát âm là /s/, /z/, /ɪz/

/s/ danh từ tận cùng bằng các phụ âm k, p, t, f và âm /θ/

Ex: cups, cats, books, cloths ...

/z/ danh từ tận cùng bằng các phụ âm n, d, v, y, m, l, r, g, b và các nguyên âm

Ex: toys, answers, lessons, trees...

/iz/ danh từ tận cùng bằng *s, x, ch, sh, z*

Ex: watches, boxes, bridges, ...

3. Các danh từ chấm dứt bằng *y* sau một phụ âm khi ở số nhiều bỏ *y* và thêm *ies*. Các danh từ chấm dứt bằng *y* sau một nguyên âm chỉ cần thêm *s*.

Ex: lady → ladies, story → stories, key → keys, ...

Danh từ riêng (proper nouns) chấm dứt bằng *y* chỉ cần thêm *s*.

Ex: Mary → Marys, Murphy → Murphys.

4. Một số danh từ chấm dứt bằng *f* hoặc *fe* (*calf, half, knife, leaf, life, loaf, self, chef, thief, wife, wolf, sheaf*) về số nhiều sẽ thành *ves*.

Ex: wife → wives, calf → calves, thief → thieves

Danh từ kết thúc bằng *f, fe* khác về số nhiều chỉ thêm *s*.

Ex: roof → roofs, cliff → cliffs

Một số danh từ chấm dứt bằng *f* về số nhiều có thể có 2 hình thức.

Ex: scarf → scarfs, scarves dwarf → dwarfs, dwarves

5. Các danh từ chấm dứt bằng *o* sau một phụ âm về số nhiều thêm *es*.

Ex: tomato → tomatoes, potato → potatoes, hero → heroes

Các danh từ chấm dứt bằng *o* sau một nguyên âm, hoặc các từ mượn của nước ngoài về số nhiều chỉ cần thêm *s*.

Ex: radio → radios, piano → pianos

6. Số nhiều bất quy tắc (Irregular plurals)

- Một số danh từ khi ở số nhiều đổi nguyên âm:

man	→ men	mouse	→ mice	woman	→ women
louse	→ lice	tooth	→ teeth	goose	→ geese
foot	→ feet				

- Một số danh từ khi ở số nhiều thêm *en*:

child	→ children	ox	→ oxen
-------	------------	----	--------

- Một số danh từ khi ở số nhiều vẫn không thay đổi hình thức:

a sheep	→ sheep	a deer	→ deer	a fish	→ fish
a swine	→ swine	a craft	→ craft		

- Một số danh từ tận cùng bằng *s* khi ở số nhiều vẫn không đổi hình thức:

means, works, series, species, barracks

7. Số nhiều của các danh từ mượn từ nước ngoài (Foreign plurals).

- Các danh từ tận cùng bằng *a* khi ở số nhiều *a* đổi thành *ae*.

Ex: formula → formulae alumna → alumnae

- Các danh từ tận cùng bằng *us* khi ở số nhiều *us* đổi thành *i*.

Ex: focus → foci alumnus → alumni

- Các danh từ tận cùng bằng *um* khi ở số nhiều *um* đổi thành *a*.

Ex: bacterium → bacteria curriculum → curricula dictum → dicta

- Các danh từ tận cùng bằng *on* khi ở số nhiều *on* đổi thành *a*.

Ex: criterion → criteria phenomenon → phenomena

10. We need pilots, not ground staff.
11. Prices will go up. This is certain.
12. To be early is better.
13. Peter lent us money. Paul didn't.
14. We found that getting a visa was impossible.
15. He's going today.
16. We ordered wine. We didn't order beer.
17. Bad roads don't cause accidents. Speed does.
18. Teasing animals is cruel.
19. Mastering a second language takes time and practice.
20. I loved you.
21. I love you.
22. I love you.
23. It happened in 1966, not in 1967.
24. England won the World Cup in 1966.
25. We enjoyed ourselves.
26. Does Mr. Smith want to visit us?
27. Income tax will be reduced. This is unlikely.
28. The countryside is most beautiful in autumn.
29. The teacher wishes you worked more than you talked.
30. Napoleon was finally defeated in Waterloo.
31. I am wrong.
32. I saw Ann. I didn't see Mary.
33. John took your book. He told me so.
34. Remember to lock the door before you leave.
35. We reached Istanbul by train.
36. Being a hostess is fun.
37. I think that taking up yoga is not a good idea.
38. Be careful.
39. He was kind to help me.
40. Mrs. Jones spends too much time making up.
41. You're mistaken.
42. Visit us again some time.
43. Don't make too much noise.
44. I did my English test very well.
45. You can succeed only by hard work.
46. The smoke from factory chimneys polluted the air.
47. My mother made this cake.
48. I enjoy traveling.
49. David teaches in a Technical College.
50. Help me solve this problem.

# THE PARTS OF SPEECH

(TỪ LOẠI)

## I. DANH TỪ (NOUNS)

Danh từ là những từ dùng để chỉ sự vật, sự việc hoặc con người.

### L. Phân loại danh từ (Classification of nouns)

#### A. Danh từ có thể được chia làm 2 loại chính:

1. **Danh từ cụ thể (concrete nouns)** chỉ những gì hữu hình; thấy được, sờ được như: house (*nơi ở*), man (*người*), cloud (*mây*), ...

- Danh từ chung (common nouns) được dùng làm tên chung cho một loại.

Ex: man, country, city, ...

- Danh từ riêng (proper nouns) được dùng làm tên riêng cho một cái trong một loại.

Ex: John, England, Paris, ...

2. **Danh từ trừu tượng (abstract nouns)** chỉ những gì vô hình như trạng thái, tính chất, quan niệm, ...

Ex: health, beauty, democracy, ...

#### B. Về tính cách văn phạm, danh từ còn có thể là:

1. **Danh từ tập hợp (collective nouns)** chỉ một nhóm cá thể như một toàn khối.

Ex: crowd (*dám đông*), army (*quân đội*), class (*giai cấp*), ...

2. **Danh từ đếm được (countable nouns).**

Ex: book, student, idea, ...

3. **Danh từ không đếm được (uncountable nouns)**

Ex: water, grass, information, ...

+ Tất cả các danh từ đếm được (countable nouns) đều có thể dùng ở số nhiều, và khi ở số ít thường có mạo từ *a* hoặc *an* đứng trước.

+ Các danh từ riêng (proper nouns) thường dùng ở số ít nhưng đôi khi cũng có thể dùng ở số nhiều.

Ex: The Smiths (*gia đình Smith*)

There are three Davids in my class.

C. Về hình thức, một danh từ có thể là danh từ đơn (simple nouns) hay danh từ kép (compound nouns).

- Danh từ đơn (simple nouns): war, peace, train, ...

- Danh từ kép (compound nouns): world peace, non-stop train, war criminal, ...

Các thành phần của danh từ kép (compound nouns) có thể là:

- noun + noun: toothpick, schoolboy

- adjective + noun: quick silver

- adjective + verb: whitewash

- verb + noun: pickpocket

- adverb + pronoun: overall

- Các danh từ chấm dứt bằng **ma** khi ở số nhiều **ma** đổi thành **mata**.  
Ex: dogma → dogmata      stigma → stigmata
- Các danh từ tận cùng bằng **ex, ix, yx, is, sis** khi ở số nhiều các đuôi này đổi thành **es**.  
Ex: basis → bases      crisis → crises

## 8. Hai hình thức số nhiều với hai nghĩa khác nhau.

- Ex: brother → brothers (*anh em ruột thịt*); brethren (*đồng đội, đồng nghiệp*)  
cloth → cloths (*vải vóc*); clothes (*quần áo*)  
penny → pennies (*các đồng xu*); pence (*số tiền xu*)  
staff → staffs (*nhân viên*); staves (*khuôn nhạc*)

## 9. Số nhiều của các danh từ kép.

- Các danh từ kép viết dính thành một chữ hoặc viết rời thành hai chữ có gạch nối được coi là danh từ đơn và nếu phần cuối là danh từ thì số nhiều cũng đổi như từ đơn.

Ex: toothbrush → toothbrushes      horseman → horsemen

- Các danh từ kép mà phần đầu là một danh từ theo sau có sở hữu cách, nhóm giới từ, trạng từ hay tính từ thì danh từ ấy đổi sang số nhiều.

Ex: brother-in-law → brothers-in-law  
passer-by → passers-by

## 10. Mâu thuẫn giữa hình thức số và ý nghĩa.

- Hình thức số ít nhưng ngữ ý số nhiều.

Ex: army, police, cattle, people, government, team, family, ...

- Hình thức số nhiều nhưng ngữ ý số ít.

Ex: means, measles, news, the United States, mathematics, physics, ...

## IV. Sự tương hợp giữa chủ ngữ và động từ (Subject and Verb Agreement)

### 1. Động từ số ít (singular Verb)

\* Noun + Noun (The same idea, person, thing)

Ex: My best friend and adviser, Tom, is coming tonight.

\* Each

Every    singular noun

Either    +

Neither    of + plural noun

Ex: Every article in this newspaper is very interesting

Ex: Each of the children has a toy.

\* Each/ Every + singular noun and each/ every + singular noun

Ex: Each boy and each girl has a book.

\* Every

Any

+ (body, thing, one)

No

Some

Ex: Everything looks bright and clean.

- \* The forms of some plural nouns: *news, physics, economics, politics, linguistics, genetics, athletes, measles, mumps, the Philippines, the United States, Wales...*  
Ex: Physics is more difficult than chemistry.
- \* Uncountable nouns: *furniture, water, traffic, progress, knowledge, homework...*  
Ex: The furniture was more expensive than we thought.
- \* Distance, time and money  
Ex: Four weeks is a long time to wait to hear from him.
- \* A title of the book, an article, a story...  
Ex: "Tom and Jerry" is very well known all over the world.
- \* Subject is used as a clause, gerund, ...  
Ex: That you get very high grades in school is necessary.

## 2. Động từ số nhiều (plural verb)

- \* Noun + Noun (different thing, person)  
Ex: Water and oil do not mix.
- \* The + Adjective (used as a noun)  
Ex: The rich are not always happy.
- \* People, police, poultry, cattle  
Ex: The police have arrested the thieves.
- \* Some, a few, both... + plural noun  
Ex: Some books I read yesterday are famous.

## 3. Động từ số ít hoặc số nhiều (singular or plural verb)

- \* Either                              or  
Neither + Noun<sub>1</sub> + nor + Noun<sub>2</sub> + verb (noun<sub>2</sub>)  
 Not only                              but also          ↑  
Ex: Not only my brother but also my sister is here.
- \* The number of + plural noun → singular verb  
 A number of + plural noun → plural verb  
Ex: The number of students in this class is small.  
A number of problems have arisen.
- \* Noun<sub>1</sub> + preposition + Noun<sub>2</sub> + verb (noun<sub>1</sub>)  
Ex: A box of cigarettes contains 20 pipes.
- \* All, Some, None,     singular noun → singular Verb  
 Plenty,     + OF +  
 Half, Most, The rest,     plural noun → plural verb  
 A lot/ Lots

Ex: None of the boys are good at English.

A lot of coffee has been hot.

- \* No + singular noun → singular verb

No + plural noun → plural verb

Ex: No example is relevant to this case.

No two days are the same.

- \* There + (be) + noun

Ex: There is a fly in this room.

There are two people waiting outside.

## V. Cách của danh từ (The case of nouns)

Cách (case) là hình thức của danh từ cho biết sự liên hệ giữa danh từ với các từ khác trong câu.

Ở đây, chúng ta chỉ đề cập đến phần sở hữu cách (possessive case).

- Với danh từ số ít, thêm 's'.

Ex: The boy's book = The book of the boy

Tom's house = The house of Tom

- Với danh từ số nhiều tận cùng bằng s, chỉ cần thêm dấu '.

Ex: The boys' house = The house of the boys

- Với các danh từ số nhiều không tận cùng bằng s, thêm 's'.

Ex: The men's room = The room of the men

The children's voices = The voices of the children

- Có thể dùng dạng 's mà không có danh từ theo sau.

Ex: This isn't my book. It's my brother's. (my brother's book.)

- Để chỉ sự vật, ý tưởng, ta dùng *of*.

Ex: The roof of the garage. (không dùng the garage's roof)

- Dùng *of* với *the beginning/ end/ top/ bottom/ front/ back/ middle/ side...*

Ex: The back of the car.

The beginning of the month.

- Có thể dùng 's hoặc *of* với danh từ chỉ một tổ chức.

Ex: The government's decision hoặc The decision of the government.

The company's success hoặc The success of the company.

- Có thể dùng 's để chỉ nơi chốn.

Ex: The city's new theatre.

Italy's largest city.

- Có thể dùng 's sau một nhóm có hai danh từ trở lên.

Ex: Jace and Jill's wedding.

- Có thể dùng 's với cụm từ chỉ thời gian.

Ex: Have you still got yesterday's newspaper?

- Có thể dùng 's hoặc ' với các khoảng thời gian.

Ex: I've got a week's holiday.

I live near the station. It's only about ten minutes' walk.

- Đôi khi chúng ta có thể gặp cả 's lẫn *of* trong cùng một câu.

Ex: We saw a play of Shaw's. (We saw one of Shaw's plays.)

## EXERCISES

### I) Read the passage then classify the nouns into: proper nouns, common nouns, concrete nouns, abstract nouns, countable nouns, uncountable nouns.

"It was a great treat to be away from the city and to breathe the clean air of the countryside. The rain had ceased and the sun was shining again as I drove up to the door. My friends came out to welcome me "you're brought the sun", they said.

We went into the house, chattering and laughing, while the dogs crowded round us, brushing up against us in welcome. "We're all going into the forest this evening", my friend said - "We want to show you the young deer - We haven't been able to go out for some days. It's been too wet".

### II) Read the passage and then identify the functions of the nouns.

He soon grew accustomed to all our ways. He insisted, for example, on having his meals with us, and these had to be exactly the same as ours. He ate on the window ledge out of the saucer. For breakfast, he would have porridge or corn-flakes, with warm milk and sugar, while at lunch he had green vegetables and potatoes and a spoonful of sweet pudding. At tea-time he had to be kept off the table, or he would dive into the jam-pot with cries of delight. We had to learn to be careful not to close doors without looking up first, in case he was crouching on top. His moods were like those of a child. When he was feeling affectionate, he would come along with a loving expression on his face, climb on your shoulder and give your ear a playful bite.

### III) Write plural forms of the nouns below and then group them according to the pronunciation of -s, -es.

Bed, church, roof, taxi, dish, map, cat, book, dog, room, boy, size, house, force, change, place, pencil, guest, listener, thing, pedestrian, sentence.

### IV) Find the Vietnamese equivalents for singular and plural forms of the following nouns.

Air, fruit, damage, pain, paper, work, salt

### V) Choose the correct verb forms.

1. The picture of the soldiers (bring/ brings) back many memories.
2. Anything (is/ are) better than going to the play tonight.
3. A number of reporters (was/ were) at the conference yesterday.
4. There (was/ were) some people at the meeting last night.
5. Each student (has/ have) answered the first three questions.
6. Either John or his wife (make/ makes) breakfast each morning.
7. The army (has/ have) eliminated this section of the training test.

8. The number of students who have withdrawn from class this quarter (is/ are) appalling.
9. These pictures as well as photograph (brighten/ brightens) the room.
10. Gymnastics (is/ are) my favourite sport.
11. The trousers you bought for me (doesn't/ don't) fit me.
12. Where (do/ does) your family live?
13. Three days (isn't/ aren't) long enough for a good holiday.
14. What he told you (seem/ seems) to be of no importance.
15. Measles (is/ are) cured without much difficulty nowadays.
16. Neither the moon nor stars (is/ are) visible in this dark night.
17. Wheat (is/ are) used to make flour.
18. The staff (was/ were) opposed to any change.
19. Fortunately the news (wasn't/ weren't) as bad as we expected.
20. I don't like very hot weather. Thirty degree (is/ are) too warm for me.

**VI) Join the two or three nouns, using 's or of.**

1. The mother/ Ann
2. The top/ the page
3. The newspaper/ yesterday
4. The name/ this street
5. The garden/ our neighbours
6. The children/ Don and Mary
7. The wedding/ the friend/ Helen
8. The ground floor/ the building
9. The car/ the parents/ Mike
10. The economic policy/ the government

**VII) Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first one.**

1. Peter's photograph in the exhibition was much praised.  
A photographic portrait ...
2. Wedding presents received by John were magnificent.  
John's ...
3. If I leave my house at 9 o'clock and drive to London, I arrive at about 12.  
It's about ...
4. The storm last week caused a lot of damage.  
Last ...
5. The meeting tomorrow has been cancelled.  
Tomorrow's ...

## 2. PRONOUNS (ĐẠI TỪ)

**Đại từ (pronouns) là từ dùng để thay thế cho danh từ. Đại từ có thể được chia thành những loại sau đây:**

### L. **Đại từ nhân xưng (personal pronouns) được chia làm 2 loại:**

#### 1. **Đại từ làm chủ ngữ (subjective pronouns)**

		Singular	Plural
Ngôi thứ I	1st person	I	We
Ngôi thứ II	2nd person	You	You
Ngôi thứ III	3rd person	He/ She/ It	They

Ex: I am going to the store.

We would like to leave now.

It was she who called you.

#### 2. **Đại từ làm tân ngữ (objective pronouns)**

I → me	He → him	We → us
You → you	She → her	It → it

They → them

Ex: They called us on the telephone.

The teacher gave her a bad grade.

The policeman was looking for him.

#### \* **Cách dùng của it (The use of it)**

- Đại từ **it** được dùng cho những sự vật cụ thể, ý niệm trừu tượng hoặc dùng cho con vật.

Ex: I tried the door. It was locked.

He promised his help if I needed it.

- Đại từ **it** dùng để nhận danh một người còn chưa biết là ai. Và khi nhận ra rồi, thì **he** hay **she** được sử dụng tùy theo đó là nam hay nữ.

Ex: There was a knock at the door. I thought it was the postman. He usually comes at that time.

- Đại từ **it** được dùng để nói về một ý tưởng được nói đến trong một nhóm từ, một mệnh đề, một câu ở trước.

Ex: He tried to break the clock. It was not easy either.

The music had stopped. He didn't notice it.

- Đại từ **it** được dùng như một chủ ngữ giả (formal subject) khi nói về điều kiện thời tiết, thời gian, khoảng cách, do lường.

Ex: It is raining heavily.

It is half past three now.

It is six miles to the nearest hospital from here.

It is five feet deep.

- **It** như một chủ ngữ giả (formal subject) còn được tìm thấy trong những câu mà một từ được bổ nghĩa bởi một cụm từ hoặc một mệnh đề sau nó.

Ex: It is stupid to fall asleep like that.  
It is no use hoping he'll ever change his mind.  
It was a surprise that he had come back so soon.

- Đại từ it còn được sử dụng như một tân ngữ giả (formal object), theo sau nó là một tính từ hoặc danh từ được bổ nghĩa bởi cụm từ hay mệnh đề.

Ex: I found it difficult to explain this to him.  
He thought it no use going over the subject again.  
She thought it odd that they had left him no message.

- Đại từ it được sử dụng để nhấn mạnh cho một từ hoặc cụm từ trong câu.

Ex: It was my question that made him angry.

- Đại từ it đôi khi được sử dụng trong các đặc ngữ có tính chất thân mật.

Ex: Hang it all, we can't wait all day for him.  
(Rõ bức, ta không thể suốt ngày đợi nó được.)  
When I see him, I'll have it out with him.  
(Gặp nó, tôi sẽ nói cho nó vỡ lẽ ra mới được.)  
If the teacher sees you doing that, you'll catch it.  
(Thầy mà thấy mày làm vậy, mày liệu hồn.)

## II. Đại từ sở hữu (possessive pronouns) là hình thức sở hữu của đại từ nhân xưng. Đại từ sở hữu không đứng trước danh từ, nó thay thế cho tính từ sở hữu + danh từ (đã được nói đến).

I → mine : <i>cái của tôi</i>	You → yours : <i>cái của anh/các anh</i>
He → his : <i>cái của anh ấy</i>	She → her : <i>cái của cô ấy</i>
We → ours : <i>cái của chúng tôi</i>	It → its : <i>cái của nó</i>
They → theirs : <i>cái của họ</i>	

Ex: She put her arm through mine. (= my arm)

They are not my gloves; I thought they were yours. (= your gloves)

Đôi khi ta có thể thấy đại từ sở hữu đứng sau giới từ *of*. Sự kết hợp này được gọi là sở hữu kép.

Ex: He is a friend of mine.

It happened through no fault of his.

## III. Đại từ phản thân (reflexive pronouns) được sử dụng khi chủ ngữ vừa cho vừa nhận hành động. Hay nói cách khác chủ ngữ và tân ngữ của câu chỉ cùng một người.

I → myself	You → yourself
He → himself	She → herself
It → itself	We → ourselves
You → yourselves	They → themselves

\* Quan sát 2 ví dụ sau:

Ex: John bought him a new car. (him = another person)

John bought himself a new car. (himself = John)

- Đại từ phản thân có chức năng như một tân ngữ trong câu.

Ex: She served herself in the cafeteria.

I'm sure you both remember the day when you talked about yourself and the past.

He sent himself the letter.

- Đại từ phản thân còn có thể được sử dụng để nhấn mạnh. Điều này có nghĩa là chính chủ ngữ thực hiện hành động. Trong trường hợp này nó thường đứng ngay sau chủ ngữ.

Ex: You yourself told them the story.

The students themselves decorated the room.

By + đại từ phản thân = alone (một mình)

Ex: John washed the dishes by himself = John washed the dishes alone.

#### IV. Đại từ chỉ định (demonstrative pronouns) gồm có:

this (người này, cái này) → these (các người này, các cái này)

that (người kia, cái kia) → those (các người kia, các cái kia)

such (như thế này, như thế kia)

same (như nhau)

- Đại từ this/ these để chỉ những gì ở gần về không gian, thời gian hoặc khái niệm; that/ those để chỉ những gì ở xa hơn.

Ex: Do you know these people? This is Harry and this is Jake.

"Look at this," he said and showed me his tie.

Do you see those houses in the distance? That's where we are going.

- Trong một số trường hợp, this/ these nói đến những gì đi theo sau; that/ those nói về những gì đã nói ở trước.

Ex: After I've listened to you very attentively. I'll tell you this - I don't think you should trust the man.

I'm glad to know that you have an interest in sport. That means we have two things in common.

- Đại từ this/ these và that/ those thường được dùng với danh từ chỉ thời gian.

Ex: Father had to go to Chicago this morning.

I remember that he woke up early that morning.

- Đại từ that/ those có thể được sử dụng thay cho một danh từ đã được nói đến.

Ex: He hung his daughter's portrait beside that of his wife's.

These poems are not so good as those written by you last year.

- Đại từ those được theo sau bởi một mệnh đề quan hệ hoặc một cụm phân từ để nói về người.

Ex: Those (= people) injured in the accident were taken to hospital.

Even those who do not like his pictures are not indifferent to him.

- Đại từ chỉ định such có nghĩa "như thế này, như thế kia".

Ex: If I were you, I would not say such a thing about him.

He was a silent, ambitious man. Such men usually succeed.

Số (number)	Chất lượng (quality)	Kích thước (size)	Tuổi tác (age)	Màu sắc (colour)	Xuất xứ hoặc quốc gia (origin or country)	Chất liệu (material)	Danh từ (noun)
----------------	-------------------------	----------------------	-------------------	---------------------	--	-------------------------	-------------------

Ex: a small black plastic bag.

an old Russian song.

- Tính từ chỉ kích thước và chiều dài (big, tall, long,...) thường đi trước tính từ chỉ hình dáng và chiều rộng (round, fat, wide,...).

Ex: a tall thin girl.

a long narrow street.

- Khi có hai hoặc hơn hai tính từ chỉ màu sắc, ta dùng liên từ *and*.

Ex: a black and white dress.

a red, white and green flag.

## EXERCISES

### I) Complete the sentences for each situation. Use the word in brackets + *-ing* or *-ed*.

- The film wasn't as good as we had expected. (disappoint)
  - The film was \_\_\_\_\_.
  - We were \_\_\_\_\_ with the film.
- Diana teaches young children. It's a very hard job but she enjoys it. (exhaust)
  - She enjoys her job but it is often \_\_\_\_\_.
  - At the end of a day's work, she is often \_\_\_\_\_.
- It's been raining all day. I hate this weather. (despress)
  - This weather is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - This weather make me \_\_\_\_\_.
  - It's silly to get \_\_\_\_\_ because of the weather.
- Clare is going to the United States next month. She has never been there before. (excite)
  - It will be an \_\_\_\_\_ experience for her.
  - Going to new places is always \_\_\_\_\_.
  - She is really \_\_\_\_\_ about going to the United States.

### II) Choose the correct word.

- Are you (interesting/ interested) in football?
- The football match was quite (exciting/ excited). I enjoyed it.
- It's sometimes (embarrassing/ embarrassed) when you have to ask people for money.
- Do you usually get (embarrassing/ embarrassed)?
- I had never expected to get the job. I was really (amazing/ amazed) when I was offered it.
- She has really learnt very fast. She has made (astonishing/ astonished) progress.
- I didn't find the situation funny. I was not (amusing/ amused).
- It was a really (terrifying/ terrified) experience. Afterwards everybody was very (shocking/ shocked).

9. Why do you always look so (boring/ bored)? Is your life really so (boring/ bored)?
10. He's one of the most (boring/ bored) people I've ever met. He never stops talking and he never says anything (interesting/ interested).

**III) Complete each sentence using a word from the list.**

bored/ boring	interested/ interesting	amused/ amusing
exhausted/ exhausting	confused/ confusing	excited/ exciting
surprised/ surprising		

1. He works very hard. It's not \_\_\_\_\_ that he's always tired.
2. The teacher's explanation was \_\_\_\_\_. Most of the students didn't understand it.
3. I seldom visit art galleries. I'm not particularly \_\_\_\_\_ in art.
4. The lecture was \_\_\_\_\_. I fell asleep.
5. I asked Emily if she wanted to come out with us but she wasn't \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I've been working very hard all day and now I'm \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I'm starting a new job next week. I'm quite \_\_\_\_\_ about it.
8. Tom is very good at telling funny stories. He can be very \_\_\_\_\_.
9. I've got nothing to do. I'm \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Liz is a very \_\_\_\_\_ person. She knows a lot, she's traveled a lot and she's done lots of different things.

**IV) Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct position.**

1. a new pullover (nice)
2. a new pullover (green)
3. a (an) old house (beautiful)
4. black gloves (leather)
5. an American film (old)
6. a long face (thin)
7. big clouds (black)
8. a sunny day (lovely)
9. a wide avenue (long)
10. a metal box (black/ small)
11. a big cat (fat/ black)
12. a little village (old/ lovely)
13. long hair (black/ beautiful)
14. an old painting (interesting/ French)
15. an enormous umbrella (red/ yellow)

**V) Complete each sentence with a verb (in the correct form) and an adjective from the list.**

Verbs : feel look smell sound taste

Adjectives : awful fine interesting nice wet

1. I can't eat this. I've just tried it and it \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I wasn't very well yesterday but I \_\_\_\_\_ today.

3. What beautiful flowers! They \_\_\_\_\_ too.
4. You \_\_\_\_\_. Have you been out in the rain?
5. Jim was telling me about his new job. It \_\_\_\_\_ quite \_\_\_\_\_ much better than his old job.

**VI) Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first, using the structure noun + noun.**

1. Her call to California lasted ten minutes.  
She made a \_\_\_\_\_ to California.
2. Sam's new apartment is in a building which has twelve storeys.  
Sam's new apartment is in a \_\_\_\_\_ building.
3. We teach languages.  
We are \_\_\_\_\_ teachers.
4. My parents saw a play in three acts last night.  
My parents saw a \_\_\_\_\_ play last night.
5. The manager said that the sale would last for two days.  
The manager said that it would be a \_\_\_\_\_ sale.
6. Mark bought a tool set containing 79 pieces.  
Mark bought a \_\_\_\_\_ tool set.
7. I need two cans for tomatoes that weigh 16 ounces each.  
I need two \_\_\_\_\_ cans of tomatoes.
8. I'm looking for a pressure cookers that holds six quarts.  
I'm looking for a \_\_\_\_\_ pressure cooker.
9. He is a specialist at building houses made of bricks.  
He is a specialist at building \_\_\_\_\_ houses.
10. Mrs Brown just bought her daughter a bicycle with ten speeds.  
Mrs Brown just bought her daughter a \_\_\_\_\_ bicycles.

**VII) Change *much* to *many* or *a lot (of)* where necessary. Write ✓ if the sentence is correct.**

1. We didn't spend much money.
2. Sue drinks much tea.
3. Jim always puts much salt on his food.
4. We'll have to hurry. We haven't got much time.
5. Did it cost much to repair the car?
6. It costs much to repair the car.
7. I don't know much people in this town.
8. I use the phone much at work.
9. They've got so much money that they don't know what to do with it.
10. I don't go out much.

**VIII) Fill in each blank with *much*, *many*, *few*, *a few*, *little*, *a little*.**

1. Ann is very busy these days. She has \_\_\_\_\_ free time.
2. Did you take \_\_\_\_\_ photographs when you were on holiday?
3. I'm not very busy today. I haven't got \_\_\_\_\_ to do.

4. The museum was very crowded. There were too \_\_\_\_\_ people.
5. Most of the town is modern. There are \_\_\_\_\_ old buildings.
6. The weather has been very dry recently. We've had \_\_\_\_\_ rain.
7. Listen carefully. I'm going to give you \_\_\_\_\_ advice.
8. Do you mind if I ask you \_\_\_\_\_ questions?
9. This town is not a very interesting place to visit, so \_\_\_\_\_ tourists come here.
10. I don't think Jill would be a good teacher. She's got \_\_\_\_\_ patience.
11. We must be quick. We have \_\_\_\_\_ time.
12. "Would you like milk in your coffee?" "Yes, please. \_\_\_\_\_."
13. This is a very boring place to live. There's \_\_\_\_\_ to do.
14. "Have you ever been to Paris?" "Yes, I've been there \_\_\_\_\_ times."
15. She's lucky. She has \_\_\_\_\_ problems.
16. I need some money. Have you got any? - Yes, but not \_\_\_\_\_.
17. You made so \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes in your writing.
18. I do not know \_\_\_\_\_ about biology. I have \_\_\_\_\_ knowledge about genetics.
19. The boys are making too \_\_\_\_\_ noise.
20. How \_\_\_\_\_ languages can you speak? And how \_\_\_\_\_ time do you spend on learning English?

## 4. ADVERBS (TRẠNG TỪ)

Trạng từ là từ dùng để diễn tả tính cách, đặc tính, mức độ, ... và được dùng để bổ nghĩa cho động từ, tính từ, trạng từ khác hoặc cho cả câu.

### L. Hình thức của trạng từ (Forms of adverbs)

Trạng từ có thể là:

1. từ đơn: very (*rất, lắm*), too (*quá*), then (*lúc đó*), ...
2. tính từ + ly: slowly (*một cách chậm chạp*), clearly (*một cách rõ ràng*), ...
3. từ kép: everywhere (*khắp nơi*), sometimes (*dôi khi*), ...
4. cụm từ: at the side (*ở bên*), at first (*thoát tiên, trước hết*), the day after tomorrow (*ngày kia*), ...

### II. Phân loại trạng từ (Classification of adverbs)

Trạng từ được phân loại dựa vào nghĩa của nó.

#### 1. Trạng từ chỉ tính cách (adverbs of manner): cho biết hành động diễn ra cách nào, ra sao.

Ex: He works carefully.

She sings beautifully.

- Trạng từ chỉ tính cách thường được thành lập bằng **tính từ + ly**.

Ex: badly, quickly, deeply, ...

- Một số trạng từ có cùng hình thức với tính từ.

Ex: hard (*chăm chỉ, siêng năng*), fast (*nhanh*), early (*sớm*), late (*trễ*)

**VII) Complete the sentences, using the words in brackets. Insert *the*, *of the* where necessary.**

1. I wasn't well yesterday. I spent \_\_\_\_\_ in bed. (most/ day)
2. \_\_\_\_\_ drive too fast. (many/ people)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ you took on holiday were very good. (some / photographs)
4. \_\_\_\_\_ learn more quickly than others. (some/ people)
5. We've eaten \_\_\_\_\_ we bought. There's very little left. (most/ food)
6. Have you spent \_\_\_\_\_ you borrowed? (all/ money)
7. Peter can't stop talking. He talks \_\_\_\_\_. (all/ time)
8. We had a lazy holiday. We spent \_\_\_\_\_ on the beach. (most/ time)
9. George is easy to get on with \_\_\_\_\_. like him. (most/ people)
10. The exam was difficult. I could only answer \_\_\_\_\_. (half/ questions)

**VIII) Complete the sentences with *neither*, *either*, *none*, *any*.**

1. We tried a lot of hotels but \_\_\_\_\_ of them had any rooms.
2. I took two books with me on holiday but I didn't read \_\_\_\_\_ of them.
3. I took five books with me on holiday but I didn't read \_\_\_\_\_ of them.
4. There are a few shops at the end of the street but \_\_\_\_\_ of them sell newspapers.
5. You can phone me at \_\_\_\_\_ time during the evening. I'm always at home.
6. I can meet you as the 6th or 7th. Would \_\_\_\_\_ of those days be convenient for you?
7. John and I couldn't get into the house because \_\_\_\_\_ of us had a key.
8. There were a few letters this morning but \_\_\_\_\_ of them were for me.
9. I was invited to two parties last week but I didn't go to \_\_\_\_\_. of them.
10. Sarah and I play tennis together regularly but \_\_\_\_\_ of us can play very well.

### **3. ADJECTIVES (TÍNH TỪ)**

Tính từ (adjectives) là từ dùng để miêu tả hoặc cho biết thêm chi tiết về một danh từ đồng thời giới hạn sự áp dụng của danh từ ấy.

#### **I. Phân loại tính từ (Classification of adjectives)**

Tính từ có thể được phân làm 2 loại: tính từ mô tả và tính từ giới hạn.

1. **Tính từ mô tả (descriptive adjectives)** là những tính từ mô tả về màu sắc, kích thước, phẩm chất, ... của người, vật hoặc sự việc.

- Ex: good, bright, tall, ...

2. **Tính từ giới hạn (limiting adjectives)** là những tính từ đặt giới hạn cho những từ mà nó bao nghĩa.

a. **Tính từ sở hữu (possessive adjectives)**

my	: <i>của tôi</i>	your	: <i>của bạn, các bạn</i>
his	: <i>của anh ấy</i>	her	: <i>của cô ấy</i>
its	: <i>của nó</i>	our	: <i>của chúng tôi</i>
their	: <i>của bọn họ, chúng nó</i>		

- Tính từ sở hữu luôn luôn có danh từ theo sau.

Ex: This is my hand.

Her father is a teacher.

b. Tính từ chỉ định (demonstrative adjectives): *this, these, that, those*

Ex: I don't like those people.

I want this car, not that car.

c. Từ xác định (determiners) có chức năng làm tính từ. Từ xác định có thể đứng trước danh từ số ít hoặc số nhiều, đếm được hoặc không đếm được. Động từ theo sau có thể ở hình thức số ít hoặc số nhiều, tùy loại.

Some (*vài*), a few (*một vài*, *một ít*), several (*vài*), many (*nhiều*), both (*cả hai*), each (*mỗi*), every (*mỗi*), either (*một trong hai*), neither (*không có ai/gì trong hai*), all (*tất cả*), much (*nhiều*), little (*ít*).

• *Much, little* được dùng với danh từ không đếm được.

Ex: much time, little money

• *Many, few* được dùng với danh từ đếm được số nhiều.

Ex: many friends, few cars

• *A lot of, lots of, plenty of* được dùng với danh từ số nhiều và danh từ không đếm được.

Ex: a lot of luck, a lot of friends; lots of time, lots of people; plenty of money, plenty of ideas

- *Much, many* được dùng chủ yếu trong câu hỏi và câu phủ định (cũng có thể dùng *a lot of*).

Ex: We didn't spend much money.

Do you know many people?

- *A lot of* được dùng trong câu xác định hơn là *much, many*.

Ex: We spent a lot of money.

He goes out a lot.

- *Many, much* được dùng trong câu xác định khi đi với các trạng từ *very, too, so, as*.

Ex: There are too many people here.

I like him so much.

- *Little, few* mang nghĩa phủ định (chỉ số lượng không đáng kể).

Ex: We must be quick. There is little time. (= not much/ not enough time)  
He isn't popular. He has few friends. (= not many)

- *A little, a few* mang nghĩa xác định (chỉ một số lượng nhỏ).

Ex: Let's go and have a drink. We've got a little time before the train leaves. (= some time)

I enjoy my life here. I have a few friends and we meet quite often. (= some friends)

• *Each, every* được dùng với danh từ số ít.

Ex: Every/ Each time I see you, you look different.

There's a telephone in each/ every room of the house.

- Each được dùng khi nói đến những sự vật riêng biệt, hết cái này đến cái khác.

Ex: Study each sentence carefully.

- Every được dùng khi nói đến những sự vật theo nhóm.

Ex: Every sentence must have a verb.

- Each dùng chỉ số lượng nhỏ.

Ex: There were four books on the table. Each book has a different colour.

- Every dùng để chỉ số lượng lớn.

Ex: I'd like to visit every county in the country.

- Each được dùng để chỉ hai sự vật.

Ex: In a football match, each team has 11 players.

- Every được dùng để chỉ sự việc diễn ra thường xuyên thế nào.

Ex: There's a bus every ten minutes.

• The other + danh từ số ít: có nghĩa là cái thứ hai trong hai cái.

Ex: The insurance office was on the other side of the street.

• Another + danh từ số ít: có nghĩa là một cái khác.

Ex: I must find myself another job.

• The other + danh từ số nhiều: có nghĩa là cái còn lại, phần còn lại.

Ex: When I returned home I found my wife talking to our neighbour. The other guests had gone.

• Both, either, neither được dùng để nói đến hai người hoặc hai vật, sự việc.

Ex: Both men were interested in the job.

Neither restaurant is expensive.

We can go to either restaurant. I don't mind.

\* Many = a large number of, a good number of

\* Much = a great deal of, a good deal of, a large quantity of

## II. Phân từ dùng làm tính từ (Participles functioning as adjectives)

Có một số tính từ xuất phát từ động từ + ing/ ed: interesting/ interested (thú vị, hay), boring/ bored (chán), exciting/ excited (háo hức),...

Ex: Somebody is bored if something is boring.

If something is boring, it makes you bored.

- Tính từ tận cùng bằng -ing cho biết tính chất công việc, sự việc.

Ex: Julia thinks politics is very interesting.

It was quite surprising that he passed the examination.

- Tính từ tận cùng bằng -ed cho biết trạng thái, tâm trạng của một người.

Ex: Julia is very interested in politics.

Everybody was surprised that he passed the examination.

## III. Danh từ dùng làm tính từ (Nouns functioning as adjectives)

Trong tiếng Anh, danh từ có thể được dùng như tính từ để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ khác.

Ex: a wool coat, a gold watch, a history teacher.

Danh từ đầu tiên của sự kết hợp này có chức năng như một tính từ. Những danh từ có chức năng như tính từ luôn ở hình thức số ít ngay khi chúng bổ nghĩa cho danh từ số nhiều. Sự kết hợp giữa số + *danh từ* luôn có dấu gạch ngang.

Ex: We took a tour that lasted five weeks.

noun

→ We tooks a five-week tour.

adjective

That student wrote a report that was ten pages long.

→ That student wrote a ten-page report.

#### IV. Chức năng của tính từ (Functions of adjectives)

1. **Bổ nghĩa cho danh từ (modify for a noun):** thường đứng ngay trước danh từ được nó bổ nghĩa.

Ex: He is a nice man.

Do you see the small green boat, which has such an odd shape?

Tính từ có thể đứng sau danh từ được nó bổ nghĩa trong các trường hợp sau:

- Khi tính từ được dùng với các từ *something, someone, anything, everything ...*

Ex: I'll tell you something interesting.

Is there anything new?

- Khi tính từ được tách rời trong câu.

Ex: My father, happy and tired, kissed me good night.

2. **Bổ ngữ của động từ (complement of a verb):** đi sau các động từ liên kết (linking verbs: *be, get, look, become, seem, ...*).

Ex: The weather becomes cold.

He looked mature, sober and calm.

3. **Bổ ngữ của tân ngữ (objective complement)**

Ex: She wore her hair short.

We should keep our room clean and tidy.

4. **Bổ ngữ của chủ ngữ (subjective complement)**

Ex: Her hair was dyed blonde.

The vegetables were served raw, the way he liked.

#### V. Trật tự từ của tính từ (Word orders of adjectives)

Đôi khi chúng ta dùng hai hay nhiều tính từ đi với nhau.

Ex: My brother lives in a nice, new house.

In the kitchen there is a beautiful large round wooden table.

Những tính từ như *new, large, round, wooden* là những tính từ miêu tả. Những tính từ như *nice, beautiful* là những tính từ chỉ cảm nghĩ.

- Tính từ chỉ cảm nghĩ thường dùng trước tính từ miêu tả.

Ex: A nice long summer holiday.

An interesting young man.

- Khi hai hay nhiều tính từ miêu tả được dùng trong một câu. Trật tự của chúng được sắp xếp như sau:

- **Such** thỉnh thoảng có thể được thấy trong một cụm từ.

Ex: They export a lot of fruits, such as oranges, lemons, etc.

- Đại từ chỉ định **same** luôn luôn đứng sau mạo từ xác định.

Ex: I found her just the same as before.

## V. Đại từ bất định (indefinite pronouns) gồm các nhóm chính sau:

### 1. Some → somebody, someone (ai đó), something (cái gì đó)

- Được dùng trong câu khẳng định, và đi với động từ số ít.

Ex: There's somebody at the door.

I've got something to tell you.

- Được dùng trong câu hỏi khi câu trả lời sẽ là "yes".

Ex: What's wrong with you? Have you got something in your eyes? (I see something in your eyes).

- Được dùng trong lời mời hay câu yêu cầu

Ex: Would you like something to drink?

### 2. Any → anybody, anyone (bất cứ ai), anything (bất cứ cái gì)

- Được dùng trong câu phủ định và nghi vấn và đi với động từ số ít.

Ex: Is there anybody in the room?

I'm very tired now. I don't want to eat anything.

- Được dùng trong mệnh đề IF.

Ex: If anyone has any questions, I'll be pleased to answer them.

### 3. No → nobody, no one, nothing (không ai, không cái gì, ...)

- Được dùng với nghĩa phủ định, có thể đứng đầu câu hoặc đứng một mình.

Ex: "What did you say?" "Nothing"

Nobody (No one) came to visit me when I was in hospital.

- Nothing, nobody, ... = not + anything, anybody

Ex: She didn't tell anybody about her plans. (= She told nobody...)

- Được dùng với động từ ở hình thức số ít.

Ex: The house is empty. There's nobody living there.

- Khi dùng *nothing*, *nobody*, ... thì không dùng động từ phủ định.

Ex: He said nothing.

Nobody tells me anything.

- *Nobody*, *no one* được dùng với dạng số nhiều của đại từ và tính từ sở hữu (*they*, *them*, *their*, ...)

Ex: Nobody phoned, did they?

No one in the class did their homework.

The party was a disaster. Nobody enjoyed themselves.

## VI. Đại từ quan hệ (relative pronouns)

Đại từ quan hệ *who*, *whom*, *which*, *whose*, *that*, ... được dùng để nối mệnh đề chính với mệnh đề phụ.

(Xem phần Relative Clause trang 83)

## VII. Từ xác định đứng trước (predeterminers)

Có chức năng làm đại từ (pronouns). Từ xác định có thể dùng trước giới từ *of* và một danh từ số ít hoặc số nhiều, đếm được hoặc không đếm được. Động từ theo sau các từ xác định đứng trước có thể ở hình thức số ít hoặc số nhiều, tùy loại.

All (tất cả), some (vài), a few (một vài), several (vài), both (cả hai), each (mỗi), either (một trong hai), neither (không có ai/ gì trong hai), none (không có ai/ gì trong nhiều), little (ít), much (nhiều), ...

1. ***Some of/ most of/ none of... + the, this, that, these, those, my, his, Ann's...***

→ có thể đi với động từ số ít hoặc số nhiều tùy thuộc vào danh từ sau nó.

Ex: Some of the people I work with are very friendly.

None of this money is mine.

2. Có thể dùng ***some of/ none of... + us/ you/ them.***

Ex: How many of these people do you know? ~None of them/ A few of them

3. Có thể dùng ***some, most, many, little, ...*** không có danh từ theo sau.

Ex: Some cars have four doors and some have two.

4. Khi dùng ***both, neither, either + of*** cần phải thêm ***the/ these/ those/ my/ his/ Tom's...***

Ex: Both of these restaurants are very good.

I haven't been to either of those restaurants.

Không cần dùng *of* sau *both*.

Ex: Both my parents are from London.

5. Có thể dùng ***both of/ neither of/ either of + us, you, them.***

Ex: Both of us were very tired.

6. Sau ***neither of*** động từ có thể ở hình thức số ít hoặc số nhiều.

Ex: Neither of the children wants/ want to go to bed.

7. ***Both, neither, either*** có thể được dùng một mình.

Ex: I couldn't decide which of the two shirts to buy. I like both.

Is your friend British or American? ~ Neither. She's Australian.

Do you want tea or coffee? ~ Either. I don't mind.

8. ***Either, neither, both*** chỉ hai sự việc và ***any, none, all*** chỉ hơn hai sự việc.

Ex: We tried two hotels. Neither of them had any rooms./ Both of them were full.

We tried a lot of hotels. None of them had any rooms./ All of them were full.

9. Không dùng *all* để chỉ ***everybody, everyone.***

Ex: Everybody enjoyed the party. (NOT All enjoyed the party.)

10. ***Everyone, everybody (mọi người), everything (mọi thứ)*** được dùng với động từ ở hình thức số ít.

Ex: Everybody has arrived.

11. ***All*** dùng với cả danh từ số ít hoặc số nhiều. Động từ ở hình thức số ít hoặc số nhiều tùy thuộc vào danh từ trước nó.

**Ex:** All of the women in this factory are working.

All of the money has been spent.

12. **Little, much** chỉ được dùng với danh từ không đếm được (số ít).

**Ex:** Much of the time in my life was in the countryside.

## EXERCISES

### I) Choose the correct words.

1. I go to school with (he/ him) everyday.
2. I see (she/ her/ herself) at the Union every Friday.
3. She speaks to (we/ us/ ourselves) every morning.
4. Isn't (she/ her) a nice person?
5. (He/ Him) is going to New York on vacation.
6. John and (she/ her) gave the money to the boy.
7. Your record is scratched and (mine/ it) is, too.
8. John bought (himself/ herself/ hisself) a new coat.
9. (We/ Us) are going camping over the weekend.
10. Mr Jones cut (him/ himself) shaving.
11. The dog bit (hers/ her) on the leg.
12. John (he/ himself) went to the meeting.
13. Mary and (I/ me/ mine) would rather go to the movies.
14. "Can I take another biscuit?" "Of course. Help (you/ yourself)!"
15. Could you lend me your ruler? (I/ Mine/ Me) has just been broken.
16. This parcel is for George and (I/ me).
17. Is that Mary over there? Yes, that's (her/ she).
18. John, you (yourself, yourselves) have to do it.
19. To (us/ we), it seems like a good bargain.
20. It was (he/ him) who called you.

### II) Fill in each blank with an appropriate reflexive pronoun and then identify its function in the sentence.

1. I'll do the job by \_\_\_\_\_.
2. She stood admiring \_\_\_\_\_ in front of the mirror.
3. Look after \_\_\_\_\_!
4. We gave \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of trouble.
5. It's time you got \_\_\_\_\_ a new coat.
6. We hurt \_\_\_\_\_ playing football.
7. The students \_\_\_\_\_ decorated the room.
8. John \_\_\_\_\_ bought these gifts.
9. You can see the difference for \_\_\_\_\_.
10. I washed \_\_\_\_\_.

### III) Complete the sentences with *somebody*, *something*, *anybody*, *anything*.

1. I was too surprised to say \_\_\_\_\_.
2. There's \_\_\_\_\_ at the door. Can you go and see who it is?
3. Does \_\_\_\_\_ mind if I open the window?
4. I wasn't feeling hungry, so I didn't eat \_\_\_\_\_.
5. You must be hungry. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ to eat?
6. Quick, let's go! There's \_\_\_\_\_ coming and I don't want \_\_\_\_\_ to see us.
7. Sally was upset about \_\_\_\_\_ and refused to talk to \_\_\_\_\_.
8. This machine is very easy to use. \_\_\_\_\_ can learn to use it in a very short time.
9. I'm going out now. If \_\_\_\_\_ phones when I'm out, can you tell them I'll be back at 11:30?
10. \_\_\_\_\_ who saw the accident should contact the police.

### IV) Choose the correct words.

1. She didn't tell (nobody/ anybody) about her plans.
2. The accident looked serious but fortunately (nobody/ anybody) was injured.
3. The situation is uncertain. (Nothing/ Anything) could happen.
4. "What's in that box?" "Nothing/ Anything". It's empty.
5. I don't know (nothing/ anything) about economics.

### V) Rewrite the sentences, using IT.

1. To learn English is very interesting.
2. The journey to Brighton from London takes only one hour by train.
3. Some parts of King Lear are extremely difficult to understand.
4. That he will fail is clear to everyone but himself.
5. Finding our way home won't be easy.
6. My question itself made him angry.
7. Meeting each other on this occasion is a good chance.
8. Do you think that to explain to him what happened is difficult?
9. People think that he is a famous doctor in this city.
10. To fall asleep like that is stupid.

### VI) Put in *of* where necessary.

1. All \_\_\_\_\_ cars have wheels.
2. None \_\_\_\_\_ this money is mine.
3. Some \_\_\_\_\_ people get angry very easily.
4. Some \_\_\_\_\_ the people I met at the party were very interesting.
5. I have lived in London most \_\_\_\_\_ my life.
6. Many \_\_\_\_\_ people watch too much TV.
7. Are any \_\_\_\_\_ those letters for me?
8. Most \_\_\_\_\_ days I get up before 7 o'clock.
9. Jim thinks that all \_\_\_\_\_ museums are boring.
10. Some \_\_\_\_\_ us dislike him.

**Lưu ý:** hardly (adverb): rất ít, hầu như không, khó lòng.

Ex: I'm not surprised he didn't find a job. He hardly tried to find one.

(Tôi không ngạc nhiên khi anh ấy không tìm được việc. Anh ấy hầu như không cố gắng để tìm.)

lately (adverb): gần đây

Ex: He has come to see me lately. (Gần đây anh ấy có đến thăm tôi.)

**2. Trạng từ chỉ thời gian (adverbs of time):** cho biết hành động diễn ra lúc nào.

now (bây giờ), then (lúc ấy), yesterday (hôm qua), tomorrow (ngày mai), soon (chẳng bao lâu), immediately (ngay lập tức), ...

Ex: Can you do it now?

What's going to happen next?

**3. Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn (adverbs of place):** cho biết hành động diễn ra nơi nào.

along (dọc theo), around (quanh), where (ở đâu), somewhere (đâu đó), here (ở đây), there (ở đó), through (xuyên qua), ...

Ex: She came here just a few minutes ago.

Where are you going?

**4. Trạng từ chỉ sự tần suất (adverbs of frequency):** cho biết sự việc xảy ra thường xuyên như thế nào.

always (luôn luôn), usually (thường), often (thường), sometimes (đôi khi, thỉnh thoảng), seldom (hiếm khi), never (không bao giờ), ...

Ex: He always does his work well.

She has never done that before.

Các trạng từ này thường đứng trước động từ thường (go, hear,...), đứng sau động từ đặc biệt (be, can,...), đứng giữa trợ động từ và động từ chính.

Ex: He is constantly in debt.

Mary sometimes goes to the cinema with Tom.

He has ever been there.

**5. Trạng từ chỉ mức độ (adverbs of degree):** diễn tả mức độ (rất, ít, nhiều...) của một tính chất hoặc đặc tính.

too (quá), absolutely (tuyệt đối), extremely (vô cùng), nearly (gần như), very (rất), ...

Ex: I'm very pleased with your success.

I'm terribly sorry I'm late.

**6. Trạng từ nghi vấn (interrogative adverbs) được dùng để đặt câu hỏi.**

where (ở đâu), when (khi nào), how (cách nào), why (tại sao), what (cái gì), ...

Ex: Why did you say that?

How did you come here?

### III. **Chức năng của trạng từ (Functions of adverbs)**

**1. Bổ nghĩa cho động từ.**

Ex: He speaks English fluently.

→ trạng từ "fluently" bổ nghĩa cho động từ "speaks".

## 2. Bổ nghĩa cho tính từ.

Ex: I led a very pleasant life there.

→ trạng từ "very" bổ nghĩa cho tính từ "pleasant".

## 3. Bổ nghĩa cho trạng từ khác.

Ex: She acts too badly.

→ trạng từ "too" bổ nghĩa cho trạng từ "badly".

## 4. Bổ nghĩa cho cả câu.

Ex: Luckily, he passed the final examination.

→ trạng từ "luckily" bổ nghĩa cho cả câu "he passed the final examination".

### \* Một số cách dùng của trạng từ so

- So được dùng để thay thế cho lời phát biểu trước đó.

Ex: "Will he do it?" "I think so."

"Will they ask you to do it?" "I don't think so."

- So được dùng với động từ to do để nói đến động từ ở trước đó.

Ex: I told him to come and see me the next day, and he did so.

If they want me to help you, I will do so.

- So = also (cũng vậy) thường thấy trong cấu trúc: so + auxiliary verb + noun.

Ex: My brother is fond of pop-music and so is his wife.

I like to drink coffee and so does Lan.

## IV. Phép đảo chủ ngữ và động từ sau các trạng từ (inversion of subject and verb after adverbs)

Phép đảo động từ là sự đảo ngược vị trí giữa trợ động từ và chủ ngữ. Nếu là động từ đặc biệt thì đảo động từ ấy ra trước chủ ngữ và nếu là động từ thường thì phải muộn trợ động từ to do.

Hình thức đảo ngữ được dùng sau trạng từ khi:

### 1. Trạng từ hay trạng ngữ được đặt đầu câu với dụng ý nhấn mạnh.

Ex: Never does my father drink coffee in the evening.

(Không bao giờ bố tôi uống cà phê vào buổi tối.)

Twice within in my lifetime have world wars taken.

(Hai lần trong đời tôi đã chứng kiến thế chiến diễn ra.)

### 2. Trạng từ hay trạng ngữ phủ định đứng đầu câu.

Ex: In no circumstances would I agree to such a proposal.

(Không dưới nào tôi lại đồng ý chấp thuận một đề nghị như thế.)

Nowhere else will you find such a kind man.

(Không ở đâu anh có thể tìm thấy một người tử tế như thế.)

### 3. Trạng từ only đứng đầu câu và không ám chỉ chủ ngữ của câu.

Ex: Only with the full agreement of everyone can we hope to succeed.

(Chỉ khi có được sự đồng ý hoàn toàn của mọi người chúng ta mới có thể thành công.)

# EXERCISES

## I) Choose the correct words.

1. Rita plays the violin (good/ well).
2. That is an (intense/ intensely) novel.
3. The sun is shining (bright/ brightly).
4. The boys speak Spanish (fluent/ fluently).
5. The table has a (smooth/ smoothly) surface.
6. We must figure our income tax returns (accurate/ accurately).
7. We don't like to drink (bitter/ bitterly) tea.
8. The plane will arrive (soon/ soonly).
9. He had an accident because he was driving too (fast/ fastly).
10. Your cold sounds (terrible/ terribly).
11. They became (sick/ sickly) after eating the contaminated food.
12. I always feel (happy/ happily) when the sun is shining.
13. You look (terrible/ terribly)! Are you all right?
14. There's no point in doing a job if you don't do it (proper/ properly).
15. Please keep (quiet/ quietly)! I'm learning my lessons.
16. We didn't go out because it was raining (heavy/ heavily).
17. You should make your clothes (clean/ cleanly) when you go out.
18. Rose is (terrible/ terribly) upset about losing her job.
19. Linda likes wearing (colourful/ colourfully) clothes.
20. I think you behaved very (selfish/ selfishly).

## II) Complete each sentence using a word from the list. Sometimes you need the adjective and sometimes the adverb.

careful(ly)    complete(ly)    continuous(ly)    financial(ly)    fluent(ly)  
happy(ly)    nervous(ly)    perfect(ly)    quick(ly)    special(ly)

1. Our holiday was too short. The time passed very \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Tom doesn't take risks when he's driving. He's always \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Sue works \_\_\_\_\_. She never seems to stop.
4. Alice and Stan are very \_\_\_\_\_ married.
5. Monica's English is very \_\_\_\_\_ although she makes quite a lot of mistakes.
6. I cooked this meal \_\_\_\_\_ for you, so I hope you like it.
7. Everything was very quiet. There was \_\_\_\_\_ silence.
8. I tried on the shoes and they fitted me \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Do you usually feel \_\_\_\_\_ before examinations?
10. I'd like to buy a car but it's \_\_\_\_\_ impossible for me at the moment.

## III) Choose two words (one from each group) to complete each sentence.

- + absolutely - seriously - unusually - completely - unnecessarily - reasonably
- + changed - ill - enormous - quiet - long - cheap

Ex: I thought the restaurant would be expensive but it was reasonably cheap.

- George's mother is \_\_\_\_\_ in hospital.
- What a big house! It's \_\_\_\_\_.
- The children are normally very lively. Today they are \_\_\_\_\_.
- When I returned home after 20 years, everything had \_\_\_\_\_.
- The film was \_\_\_\_\_. It could have been much shorter.

**IV) Are the underlined words right or wrong? Correct them where necessary.**

- I tried hard to remember her name but I couldn't.
- This coat is practically unused. I've hardly worn it.
- She's a good tennis player. She hits the ball hardly.
- Don't walk so fast. I can't keep up with you.
- Why are you walking so slow? Are you tired?

**V) Complete the sentences. Use hardly + the following verbs (in the correct form).**

chance - hear - know - say - sleep

- George and Hilda have only met once before. They \_\_\_\_\_ each other.
- I'm very tired this morning. I \_\_\_\_\_ last night.
- You're speaking very quietly. I can \_\_\_\_\_ you.
- You look the same now as you looked 15 years ago.  
You're \_\_\_\_\_.
- Kate was very quiet this evening. She \_\_\_\_\_ a word.

**VI) Rewrite the sentences, beginning with the underlined words. Make any necessary changes.**

- She rarely smiles at me.
- I hadn't known her until he told me.
- You will hardly finish your work before it's dark.
- You can buy this book only in this shop.
- My teacher is no longer teaching in this school.
- She has never seen such a beautiful sight.
- This rich man seldom helps the poor.
- She never in life felt happy.
- People did not discover AIDS until 1981.
- Martin had no sooner sat down than the telephone rang.
- The lost child could be found nowhere.
- I got no help from him.
- He not only refused to help me but he also laughed at me.
- He never smokes in bed.
- She has make good progress only within two months.
- You should not travel alone under any circumstances.
- It is hot enough to sit outside only in summer.
- It is seldom wise to say too much about oneself.
- He found a job nowhere after he had graduated from college.
- I know little about computer.

## 5. DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

### (CÁC MỨC ĐỘ SO SÁNH CỦA TÍNH TỪ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ)

Có 3 cấp độ so sánh tính từ và trạng từ: so sánh bằng, so sánh hơn và so sánh nhất.

#### I. So sánh bằng (Equal comparisons)

**subject + verb + as + adjective/ adverb + as + noun/ pronoun/ clause**

Ex: He is as tall as his father.

Is the film as interesting as you expected?

John sings as well as his sister.

- So có thể được dùng thay as trong câu phủ định.

Ex: His job is not so difficult as mine.

- Đại từ làm chủ ngữ thường được dùng sau as. Đại từ làm tân ngữ cũng có thể được dùng trong lối văn thân mật.

Ex: You are as old as she is. / You are as old as her.

- Ý "bằng nhau, như nhau" cũng có thể được diễn đạt cách khác:

**subject + verb + the same + (noun) + as + noun (pronoun)**

Ex: My house is as high as his. → My house is the same height as his.  
Tom is as old as Mary. → Tom and Mary are the same age.

Chúng ta nói the same as (không dùng the same like)

Ex: What would you like to drink? ~ I'll have the same as you.

Chú ý các tính từ sau và các danh từ tương ứng của chúng.

**Adj**

**N**

heavy, light	→	weight
wide, narrow	→	width
deep, shallow	→	depth
long, short	→	length
big, small	→	size
old	→	age

#### II. So sánh không bằng (Unequal Comparisons)

##### 1. So sánh hơn (Comparatives)

- Thêm -er vào tính từ/ trạng từ có một hoặc hai âm tiết (short adjective/ adverb).

Ex: thick → thicker, cold → colder, quiet → quieter

- Dùng more + tính từ/ trạng từ có ba âm tiết trở lên (long adjective/ adverb).

Ex: more beautiful, more important, more interesting

- Dùng more + tính từ tận cùng bằng các tiếp vĩ ngữ -ed, -ful, -ing, -ish, -ous.

Ex: more hated, more useful, more boring, more continuous

- Gấp đôi phụ âm cuối của tính từ một âm tiết kết thúc bằng một phụ âm đơn (trừ w, x, z) và đứng trước là một nguyên âm đơn.

Ex: big → bigger, hot → hotter

- Khi một tính từ có 2 âm tiết nhưng tận cùng bằng một phụ âm + *y*, đổi *y* thành *i* và thêm *-er*.

Ex: happy → happier, dry → drier

subject + verb +	short adj/adv + er more + long adj/adv + less + adj (adv)	than + noun/pronoun
------------------	---	---------------------

Ex: Today is hotter than yesterday.

This chair is more comfortable than the other.

He speaks Spanish more fluently than I do.

- So sánh không bằng có thể được nhấn mạnh thêm bằng *much* hoặc *far* trước hình thức so sánh.

Ex: Harry's watch is far more expensive than mine.

A watermelon is much sweeter than a lemon.

He speaks English much more rapidly than he does Spanish.

## 2. So sánh kép (Double comparatives)

a. So sánh đồng tiến (càng ... càng)

<b>the + comparative + subject + verb + the + comparative + subject + verb</b>
--

Ex: The hotter it is, the more miserable I feel.

(Trời càng nóng, tôi càng cảm thấy khó chịu.)

The sooner you leave, the earlier you will arrive at your destination.

(Càng đi sớm, bạn càng đến nơi sớm.)

<b>the more + subject + verb + the + comparative + subject + verb</b>
---

Ex: The more you study, the smarter you will become.

(Càng học, bạn càng trở nên thông minh.)

b. So sánh lũy tiến (càng ngày càng)

+ Tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn (short adjective/adverb)

<b>Adj/adv + er and adj/adv + er</b>
--------------------------------------

Ex: Betty is younger and younger. (Betty càng ngày càng trẻ ra.)

The river gets bigger and bigger. (Đường sông càng ngày càng trở nên lớn.)

+ Tính từ/ trạng từ dài (long adjective/adverb)

<b>More and more + adj/adv</b>
--------------------------------

Ex: Her story was more and more attractive.

(Câu chuyện của bà ta càng ngày càng hấp dẫn.)

She becomes more and more beautiful.

(Cô ta trở nên càng ngày càng xinh đẹp.)

## III. So sánh bậc nhất (Superlatives)

subject + verb + the +	short adj/adv + est most + long adj/adv + (noun) + least + long adj/adv	in + singular noun of + plural noun
------------------------	---	--

Các quy tắc khác cũng giống như dạng so sánh hơn: hot → hottest, happy → happiest,

Ex: John is the tallest boy in the family.

Mary is the shortest of the three sisters.

These shoes are the least expensive of all.

\* Các trường hợp ngoại lệ:

1. good/ well	-better	-best	
2. bad/ badly	-worse	-worst	
3. many/ much	-more	-most	
4. little	-less	-least	
5. far	-farther -further	-farthest -furthest	
6. near	-nearer	-nearest	(về khoảng cách)
7. late	-later	-next -latest -last	(về thứ tự) (về thời gian) (về thứ tự)
8. old	-older -elder	-oldest -eldest	(về tuổi tác) (về cấp bậc hơn là tuổi tác)

## EXERCISES

I) Choose the more appropriate words.

1. Of the four dresses, I like the red one (better/ best).
2. Pil is the (happier/ happiest) person we know.
3. Pat's car is (faster/ fastest) than Dan's.
4. This is the (creamier/ creamiest) ice-cream I have had in a long time.
5. This poster is (colourfuler/ more colourful) than the one in the hall.
6. Does Fred feel (weller/ better) today than he did yesterday?
7. This vegetable soup tastes very (good/ best).
8. While trying to balance the baskets on her head, the woman walked (awkwarder/ more awkwardly) than her daughter.
9. Jane is the (less/ least) athletic of all the women.
10. My cat is the (prettier/ prettiest) of the two.
11. This summary is (the better/ the best) of the pair.
12. The colder the weather gets, (sicker/ the sicker) I feel.
13. Jim has as (few/ fewer) opportunities to play tennis as I have.
14. That recipe calls for (many/ much) more sugar than mine does.
15. The museum is the (further/ furthest) away of the three buildings.

II) Complete the sentences using the correct form of the adjectives or adverbs in brackets.

1. Mary is (pretty) as her sister.
2. A new house is (expensive) than an old one.

3. His job is (important) than mine.
4. Of the four ties, I like the red one (well).
5. Nobody is (happy) than Miss Snow.
6. Today English is the (international) of language.
7. John is much (strong) than I thought.
8. Benches are (comfortable) than arm-chairs.
9. Bill is (good) than you thought.
10. Mr Bush is the (delightful) person I have ever known.
11. Dick is the (careful) of the three workers.
12. Sam's conduct is (bad) than Paul's.
13. Thanks to the progress of science, human life is (good) and (good).
14. Bill is (lazy) and (lazy).
15. The teacher speaks English (fluently) than we do.
16. These boys are (ill-prepared) for employment than my children.
17. The competition makes the price of goods (cheap) and (cheap).
18. Charles is (hard-working) than Tom.
19. Is this book (interesting) than the one you read last week?
20. Of the three boy, Harry is the (badly-bred).

### **III) Complete the sentences using a comparative form.**

1. It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere ...?
2. This coffee is very weak. I like it a bit ...
3. The hotel was surprisingly big. I expected it to be ...
4. The weather is too cold in this country. I expected it to be ...
5. My job is a bit boring, sometimes I'd like to do something ...
6. I was surprised how easy it was to use the computer. I thought it would be...
7. Your work isn't very good, I'm sure you can do ...
8. Don't worry. The situation isn't so bad. It could be ...
9. You're talking very loudly. Can you speak a bit ...?
10. You hardly ever phone me. Why don't you phone me ...?

### **IV). Complete each of the sentences with the comparative form of one of the following words. Use *than* where necessary.**

big            crowded            early            high            important  
       easily        peaceful        reliable        serious        thin

1. I was feeling tired last night, so I went to bed ... usual.
2. You look ... Have you lost weight?
3. I want a .... flat. We don't have enough space here.
4. Health and happiness are ... money.
5. There were a lot of people on the bus. It was ... usual.
6. I like living in the countryside. It's ... living in a town.

7. You'll find your way around the town ... if you have a good map.
8. In some parts of the country, prices are ... in others.
9. I'd like to have a ... car. The one I've got keeps breaking down.
10. Unfortunately her illness was ... we thought at first.

#### V) Read the situations and complete the sentences. Use a comparative form.

- ✓ 1. Yesterday the temperature was nine degrees. Today it's only six degrees.  
→ It's ...
- ✓ 2. The journey takes four hours by car and five hours by train.  
→ It takes ...
- ✓ 3. Chris and Joe both did badly in the exam. Chris got 20% but Joe only got 15%.  
→ Joe did ...
- ✓ 4. I expected my friends to arrive at about 4 o'clock. In fact they arrived at 2:30.  
→ My friend ...
- ✓ 5. We were very busy at work today. We are not as busy as that every day.  
→ We ...
- 6. Jane cooks better than her sister.  
→ Jane's sister ...
- ✓ 7. Tom is the best football player in this team.  
→ Nobody in this team ...
- 8. Nothing is faster than the speed of light.  
→ The speed of light ...
- 9. Jack is younger than he looks.  
→ Jack isn't ...
- ✓ 10. I didn't spend as much money as you.  
→ You ...

#### VI) Complete the sentences, using double comparative form.

1. It becomes ... to find a job. (hard)
2. That hole in your pullover is getting ... (big)
3. As I waited for my interview, I became ... (nervous)
4. As the day went on, the weather got .... (bad)
5. As the conversation went on, he became ... (talkative)

#### VII) Complete the sentences with *than* or *as*.

- ✓ 1. I can't reach as high as you. You're taller ...
- ✓ 2. He doesn't know much. I know more ...
- ✓ 3. We were very surprised. Nobody was more ...
- 4. She's not a very good player. I'm a better ...
- 5. They've been very lucky. I wish we were ...

## 6. VERBS (ĐỘNG TỪ)

Động từ (verbs) là từ dùng để chỉ hành động (action) hoặc trạng thái (state).

### L. Phân loại động từ (Classification of verbs)

1. Ngoại động từ (transitive verbs): diễn đạt hành động-tác động trực tiếp lên người hay vật nào đó. Nói cách khác, ngoại động từ phải có tân ngữ trực tiếp (direct object) theo sau.

Ex: The referee blows his whistle.

→ nghĩa động từ "blows" sẽ không đầy đủ nếu không có "his whistle" làm tân ngữ cho nó.

Ngoại động từ có thể có hai tân ngữ: tân ngữ trực tiếp (direct object) và tân ngữ gián tiếp (indirect object).

Ex: My friend, John, has just sent me a postcard.

Or: My friend, John, has just sent a postcard to me.

→ tân ngữ trực tiếp (direct object): a postcard

tân ngữ gián tiếp (indirect object): me

Ngoại động từ có thể dùng với tân ngữ là một đại từ phản thân (reflexive pronoun).

Ex: The girl has hurt herself badly.

Ngoại động từ có thể có từ làm bổ ngữ (complement) cho tân ngữ (object) của nó.

Ex: We all thought him clever.

They elected him president.

2. Nội động từ (intransitive verbs): diễn tả hành động dừng lại ở người nói, hay người thực hiện hành động đó. Nói cách khác, nội động từ là động từ không cần có tân ngữ trực tiếp theo sau.

Ex: We walked across the fields.

Nobody knew where the old man lived.

3. Động từ liên kết (linking verbs) là những động từ không diễn tả được một ý nghĩa rõ rệt và cần phải có những từ khác bổ túc nghĩa cho nó (complements).

Ex: My father is a doctor. → "is" chẳng diễn tả được gì rõ rệt nếu không có "doctor" bổ nghĩa cho nó.

\* Một số động từ liên kết (linking verbs) thường được sử dụng:

to be : *thì, là, ở, ...*

to become : *trở thành*

to turn : *dâng ra, hóa ra*

to seem : *dường như*

to appear : *có vẻ như*

to look : *trông như*

to feel : *cảm thấy*

to sound : *nghe như*

Bổ ngữ (complements) của những động từ này có thể là một danh từ hoặc một tính từ.

Ex: The cold is becoming intense. (adj)

The clouds look black. (adj)

Your argument sounds right. (adj)

She has turned dressmaker. (noun)

## II. Các hình thức của động từ (Forms of verbs)

Có ba hình thức cơ bản của động từ.

1. **Hình thức nguyên thể (the infinitives):** là hình thức cơ bản của động từ. Hình thức nguyên thể có thể có *to* (to-infinitive) hoặc không có *to* (infinitive without to/ bare infinitive).

+ Bare-infinitive được dùng trong những trường hợp sau:

- Sau các động từ khiếm khuyết như *can, may, must, will, shall, should...*

Ex: I can speak English.

You should stay at home.

- Sau các động từ cảm quan như *see, hear, feel, ...* và sau các động từ *make, let.*

Ex: I saw her get off the bus.

The news made him look anxious.

- Nhưng khi các động từ này ở thể bị động (passive voice) thì động từ theo sau phải là nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive).

Ex: She was seen to get off the bus.

- Sau các ngữ động từ như: *had better, would rather, would sooner, ...*

Ex: You had better tell him the truth.

We would rather not go with him.

2. **Danh động từ (the gerunds):** là hình thức động từ tận cùng bằng *-ing* và có tính chất của danh từ.

Ex: Working in these conditions is a pleasure.

She likes dancing.

3. **Phân từ (the participles):** là những hình thức của động từ có tính chất của tính từ.

- Ngoại trừ các động từ khiếm khuyết, động từ nào cũng có hai phân từ (participles): hiện tại phân từ (present participle) và quá khứ phân từ (past participle)

• Present Participles: V-ing

• Past Participles: V-ed/ V<sub>3</sub>

- Hiện tại phân từ (present participles) thường ngữ ý chủ động và quá khứ phân từ (past participle) thường ngữ ý bị động.

Ex: The film is so boring.

I'm bored with that film.

## III. Cách dùng động từ (the uses of verbs)

### 1. Cách dùng động từ nguyên thể (the uses of the infinitive)

a. Chủ ngữ (subjects)

Ex: To visit her was all that I desired.

To act like that is childish.

b. Bổ ngữ (complements)

Ex: His greatest wish was to tell her everything.

What I like is to swim in the sea and then to lie on the warm sand.

c. Tân ngữ của động từ (objects of a verb)

- Hình thức nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive) được dùng làm tân ngữ cho các động từ sau: *agree, arrange, ask, attempt, begin, care, cease, choose, claim, come, continue, decide, deserve, determine, demand, desire, expect, fail, fear, forget, hate, help, hesitate, hope, intend, learn, like, long, love, manage, mean, need, neglect, offer, omit, plan, prefer, pretend, prepare, promise, propose, refuse, start, swear, seem, strive, tend, threaten, try, want, wish, ...*

Ex: I came to know him well towards the end of the war.

He did not want to be left alone.

Do you mean to say he actually approves of it?

- To-infinitive cũng được sử dụng sau các ngữ động từ *to make up one's mind, to take care, to take the trouble, to make sure, ...*

Ex: The next day he made sure to buy a copy of the newspaper.

#### d. Tân ngữ của tính từ (objects of adjectives)

Hình thức nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive) có thể được dùng sau các tính từ: (*un)able, afraid, amused, annoyed, anxious, ashamed, astonished, boring, careful, certain, content, crazy, curious, dangerous, delighted, determined, difficult, distressed, due, eager, easy, hard, fortunate, free, frighten, furious, good, glad, grateful, happy, helpless, horrified, impatient, interested, keen, luckily, moved, pleased, (im)possible, proud, prepared, quick, ready, relieved, reluctant, right, resolved, safe, scared, slow, sorry, sufficient, sure, surprised, thankful, useless, usual, (un)willing, (un)wise, wonderful, worthy, wrong, ...*

Ex: He would be crazy not to do so.

I am curious to know the news.

Dinner was ready to be served.

- Đôi khi một từ hoặc cụm từ bắt đầu với *for* được dùng để chỉ chủ ngữ của to-infinitive.

Ex: He was eager for me to start on my new job.

- To-infinitive có thể được dùng sau những từ *what, who, whom, which, when, where, how, ...*

Ex: I don't know what to say.

He had come away, not knowing where to turn or what to do.

- e. Hình thức nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive) còn có thể đóng vai trò tính từ bổ nghĩa cho danh từ hoặc đại từ bất định.

Ex: The house to be demolished is very old indeed.

Give them something to eat.

- f. Hình thức nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive) còn có thể đóng vai trò trạng từ, phần nhiều ngữ ý mục đích hoặc kết quả.

Ex: I saved money to buy a bicycle.

He was lucky enough to win the prize.

- g. Hình thức nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive) có thể theo sau một danh từ hoặc đại từ để làm bổ ngữ cho danh từ hoặc đại từ ấy. Những động từ thường có một tân ngữ và một to-infinitive theo sau:

*advise, allow, ask, assume, beg, believe, cause, challenge, command, compel, consider, enable, encourage, expect, find, forbid, force, get, guess, hate, imagine, instruct, intend, invite, know, lead, like, love, mean, observe, order, permit, persuade, prefer, suspect, teach, tell, tempt, think, trust, understand, urge, want, warn, wish, ...*

Ex: Why did he advise me to visit Westminster Abbey?

I told him to be patient.

We can't force you to stay here.

h. Hình thức nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive) còn dùng trong các câu trúc gọi là "absolute phrases".

Ex: To tell the truth, I don't know what the answer is. (*Thú thật, tôi chẳng biết giải đáp ra sao.*)

To cut a long story short, he ended his life in prison. (*Tóm lại là nó đã chết trong tù.*)

i. Hình thức nguyên mẫu có *to* (to-infinitive) còn được dùng trong các câu cảm thán hoặc trong những câu ước.

Ex: To think she met with such a death! (*Ai ngờ nàng lại chết như thế!*)

Oh! To be young again. (*Ôi! Ước gì được trẻ lại.*)

## 2. Cách dùng của danh động từ (the uses of the gerund).

### a. Chủ ngữ (subjects)

Ex: The building of the house will take at least six months.

Swimming is my favourite sport.

### b. Bổ ngữ (complements)

Danh động từ làm bổ ngữ thường sử dụng sau các động từ *be, mean, look, ...*

Ex: My hoppy is rearing chickens.

I can't ask him for help. That would mean telling him everything about you and myself.

### c. Tân ngữ (objects)

- Danh động từ được sử dụng như một tân ngữ trực tiếp sau các động từ: *admit, avoid, appreciate, begin, consider, continue, delay, deny, enjoy, escape, finish, keep, mention, mind, postpone, prefer, miss, practise, quit, recall, report, resent, resist, recollect, resume, risk, suggest, ...*

Ex: We enjoy playing football.

Michael was considering buying a new car until the prices went up.

Have you finished writing your book?

- Danh động từ được sử dụng sau động từ + giới từ: *approve of, apologise for, believe in, count on, care for, complain of, confess to, consist of, depend on, dream of, end in, give up, forget about, get to, go back to, hesitate about, insist on, keep on, lead to, long for, mean by, persist in, plan on, put off, rely on, return to, result in, safe from, succeed in, think about, think of, take to, talk of, threaten with, worry about, look forward to, object to, ...*

Ex: John gave up smoking because of his doctor's advice.

I am not looking forward to meeting him.

Henry is thinking of going to France in August.

- Danh động từ được sử dụng sau tính từ + giới từ: *absorbed in, accustomed to, afraid of, amused at, angry with, annoy at, ashamed of, aware of, (in)capable of, careful (about) in, careless of, certain of, clever at, certain of, (un)conscious of, content with, delighted at, different from, embarrassed at, excited about, far from, fond of, fortunate in, frightened of, furious at, given to, good at, grateful for, happy in (at), intent on, interested in, keen on, nice about, proud of, pleased at, responsible for, right in, scared at (of), set on, sick of, skill in (at), slow in, sorry for, successful at (in), sure of, surprised at, thankful for, tired of (from), upset at, worried about, wrong in, ...*

Ex: Alice is fond of dancing

We are accustomed to sleeping late on weekends.

He is interested in seeing this film.

- Danh động từ được sử dụng sau một số thành ngữ như: *can't bear, can't face, can't stand, can't help, feel like, ...*

Ex: He couldn't help asking me: "Isn't anything else you can do for her?"

I didn't feel like talking to him after what had happened.

- Danh động từ được sử dụng như một tân ngữ trực tiếp của một tính từ trong những câu với chủ ngữ giả IT.

Ex: It's no use reading this kind of book.

It's worth remembering that he has once been a boxer.

- Danh động từ được sử dụng sau một số tính từ như: *amusing, comfortable, difficult, easy, great, hopeless, lovely, nice, off, pleasant, strange, useless, wonderful, ...*

Ex: It was difficult getting him to do it.

It was useless arguing with Jane.

Trường hợp này thường được dùng trong văn nói hơn là văn viết.

- Danh động từ được sử dụng sau danh từ + giới từ: *choice of, excuse for, possibility of, intention of, reason for, method for, ...*

Ex: There is no reason for leaving this early.

George has no excuse for dropping out of school.

#### d. Bố ngữ của tân ngữ (objective complements)

Danh động từ được sử dụng sau một số động từ: *call, catch, discover, feel, find, hear, get, imagine, keep, leave, notice, see, send, set, stop, watch, ...*

Ex: I felt him looking at me now and again.

Ellen had noticed me talking with the landlady.

#### e. Danh động từ được sử dụng như một ngữ trạng từ: đi sau các liên từ *while, when, if, after, before, ...*

Ex: He continued to speak while walking down the path.

#### \* Một số động từ có thể được theo sau bởi cả *to-infinitive* lẫn gerund.

- *Remember, forget, regret + to-infinitive:* chỉ hành động ở tương lai.  
*Remember, forget, regret + gerund:* chỉ hành động đã qua.

Ex: Please remember to return the book tomorrow.

I remember putting my hat somewhere in this room.

I'm afraid he will forget to write to me.

I'll never forget seeing him the first time.

- Stop + to-infinitive ngữ ý "ngừng để làm việc khác".

Stop + gerund ngữ ý "ngừng làm việc gì".

Ex: He stopped to eat.

I'm too tired. I stop working for a moment.

- Try + to-infinitive ngữ ý "cố gắng"

Try + gerund ngữ ý "thử xem" hoặc "thí nghiệm".

Ex: I will try to help you.

He tried gardening, keeping pigs but didn't succeed in any of them.

- Hear, see, feel, notice, watch, ... + to-infinitive: chú ý vào sự hoàn tất của hành động

Hear, see, feel, notice, watch, ... + gerund: chú ý đến sự tiếp diễn của hành động.

Ex: I hear him come in.

I see the dog running across the street.

- Allow, permit, recommend, advise, encourage... + object + to-infinitive

Allow, permit, recommend, advise, encourage... + V-ing

Ex: The teacher permitted them to turn the assignments in late.

The teacher permitted going out.

### 3. Cách dùng của phân từ (the uses of the participles)

a. Hiện tại phân từ (present participles) đi với các hình thức khác nhau của động từ to be để thành lập các thì tiếp diễn. (xem phần Tenses)

Ex: He was telling me about his hardships.

b. Hiện tại phân từ dùng để nối hai câu có cùng chủ ngữ, hoặc diễn tả các hành động kế tiếp nhau.

Ex: Standing on the hill, we could see the river.

Mary is sitting at the desk, looking out of the window, thinking of her future.

- Có những thành ngữ mở đầu bằng hiện tại phân từ mà không có liên hệ đến từ nào trong câu cả.

Ex: Generally speaking, I don't like him at all.

c. Hiện tại phân từ còn được dùng thay cho mệnh đề quan hệ (mang nghĩa chủ động).

Ex: The man talking to you yesterday is my teacher. (= The man who talked...)

Look at the cat lying on the floor. (= ...the cat which is lying ...)

d. Quá khứ phân từ (past participles) đi với các hình thức khác nhau của động từ to be để lập thành thể bị động (passive form). (xem phần Passive Voice).

Ex: I was given a doll on my birthday.

A bicycle has just been bought for me recently.

e. Quá khứ phân từ kết hợp với các hình thức khác nhau của động từ to have để thành lập các thì hoàn thành (perfect tenses).

Ex: That man has stolen my purse.

The train had left before I came to the station.

f. Quá khứ phân từ cũng được dùng để nối hai câu có cùng chủ ngữ (mang nghĩa bị động).

Ex: Punished yesterday, Tom felt very sad. (= Tom was punished ...)

g. Quá khứ phân từ được dùng thay cho mệnh đề quan hệ (mang nghĩa bị động).

Ex: The boy given a present is my son. (= The boy who was given ...)

I like eating the cake made by my mother. (= the cake which is made...)

h. Phân từ còn thường được dùng làm tính từ.

Ex: What an exciting story!

The broken bottles lay scattered on the floor.

## ◆ MỘT SỐ ĐỘNG TỪ ĐÁNG CHÚ Ý

### I. WOULD

Ngoài cách dùng trong câu điều kiện, **would** còn dùng để chỉ một thói quen trong quá khứ.

Ex: When I was a child, I would sing folk songs.

### II. USED TO - BE (GET) USED TO

- Used to (*thường, đã từng*) + infinitive: diễn tả một thói quen ở quá khứ.

Ex: He used to swim when he was six.

- Be/ get used to + V-ing/ noun (*quen với/ trở nên quen với*)

Ex: My mother is used to getting up early every day.

He got used to walking five kilometers a day because he's lost his bicycle.

Tom has got used to the cold weather since he came here.

### III. WOULD RATHER

- **Would rather** cùng nghĩa với **prefer** (thích hơn) nhưng **would rather** chỉ đi với động từ trong khi **prefer** có thể đi với động từ hoặc danh từ.

would rather + bare-infinitive ... + than ...

prefer + V-ing/ noun... + to ...

Ex: I would rather go to the cinema than stay at home.

I prefer going to the cinema to staying at home.

I prefer oranges to apples.

- Thể phủ định của **would rather** = **would rather + not**

Ex: John would rather not go to class tomorrow.

### IV. WOULD LIKE

- **Would like** (*muốn*) thường được dùng để diễn đạt mong muốn hoặc đưa ra lời mời, lời đề nghị một cách lịch sự.

would like ('d like) + to-infinitive

Ex: I'd like to tell you something about myself.

Would you like to have a walk with me?

## V. COULD/ MAY/ MIGHT

**Could, may, might** (có thể): chỉ một khả năng – diễn tả những gì mà người nói cảm thấy chưa chắc chắn lắm.

Ex: It might/ may/ could rain tomorrow. (Ngày mai trời có thể mưa.)

Người ta cũng có thể nói:

It will possibly rain tomorrow.

Maybe it will rain tomorrow.

Possibly, maybe = perhaps: có lẽ, có khả năng (chỉ dự đoán)

Ex: I don't know where Lan is. Maybe she is in her room.

I may go to the beach or stay at home in this summer holidays.

## VI. SHOULD

**Should** được dùng để diễn tả:

– Một lời đề nghị, lời khuyên, một bối phận.

Ex: You should study hard.

He shouldn't do that work. It's too hard.

– Một sự mong đợi

Ex: It should rain tomorrow. (I expect it to rain tomorrow.)

My letter should arrive next week.

## VII. MUST

**Must** được dùng để chỉ:

– Trách nhiệm hoặc bối phận. **Must** có nghĩa mạnh hơn **should**. Với **should** ta có một sự lựa chọn làm hoặc không làm nhưng với **must** sẽ không có sự lựa chọn.

Ex: An automobile must have gasoline to run.

This freezer must be kept at -20°C.

– Một sự suy luận hợp lý

Ex: John's lights are out. He must be asleep.

You must be tired after a long walk.

## VIII. HAVE TO

**Have to** có nghĩa gần như **must**, nhưng không mang tính bắt buộc mà chỉ thấy cần phải làm.

Ex: I need some meat. I have to go to the butcher's.

Does your father have to go at once?

## IX. COULD/ MAY/ MIGHT + PERFECTIVE

Hình thức này được dùng để chỉ một khả năng trong quá khứ.

Ex: It may have rained last night, but I'm not sure.

John might have gone to the movies yesterday.

## X. SHOULD + PERFECTIVE

Hình thức này được dùng để chỉ một bối phận, trách nhiệm được cho là xảy ra ở quá khứ, nhưng vì một lý do nào đó nó đã không xảy ra.

Ex: John should have gone to the post office this morning. (He did not go to the post office.)

Maria shouldn't have called John last night. (She did call him.)

## XI. MUST + PERFECTIVE

Hình thức này chỉ được dùng để chỉ một sự suy luận hợp lý trong quá khứ.

Ex: Jane did very well on the exam. She must have studied hard. (She probably studied hard.)

Mary looks very tired. She must have stayed up late last night. (She probably stayed up late.)

## EXERCISES

### I) Supply the correct verb forms..

1. I was lonely at first, but after a time I got used to (live) alone.
2. She remembers parts of her childhood quite clearly. She remembers (go) to school the first time and (be) frightened and (put) her finger in her mouth. She remembers her teacher (tell) her (take) it out.
3. Did you remember (lock) the car? - No, I didn't. I'd better (go) back and (do) it now.
4. We stopped once (buy) petrol and then we stopped again (ask) someone the way.
5. When I caught them cheating me, I stopped (buy) petrol there and started (deal) with your station instead.
6. I tried (convince) him that I was perfectly capable of (manage) on my own, but he insisted on (help) me.
7. Your hair needs (cut). You'd better (have) it (do) tomorrow.
8. I always try (come) in quietly but they always hear me (go) upstairs. It's impossible (climb) an old wooden stair case at night without (make) noise.
9. They don't allow (smoke) in the auditorium, they don't want (risk) (set) it on fire.
10. Would you like me (turn) down the radio a bit?  
No, It's all right. I'm used to (work) with the radio on.

11. Would your children mind (keep) quiet for a moment? I'm trying (fill) a form.

12. The miser spent all his time (count) his money and (think) up new hiding-place.  
He kept (move) it about because he was terrified of (be) robbed. He used to (get) up at night.

13. I'm delighted (hear) that you can (come) on Saturday. We are all looking forward to (see) you. Remember (bring) your rubber boots.

14. Jack suggested (take) me one flat and (keep) the other for me. But Tom advised me (sell) the whole house.

15. They let us (park) motorcycles here but they don't allow us (park) cars.

16. If you want the milkman (leave) you milk in the morning, don't forget (put) a milk bottle outside.

17. The inspector asked (see) my ticket and when I wasn't able (find) it, he made me (buy) another.
18. My father advised me (read) this novel.
19. Does she want (become) a singer?
20. The teacher recommends (prepare) the lessons well before (come) to class.
21. Can you help me (find) my mistakes?
22. They didn't permit (camp) in this wood.
23. Nothing will make me (change) my mind.
24. Parents often recommend their children (not drink) too much.
25. The lord had the gardener (plant) trees (get) shadow.
26. She was afraid (tell) her parents the truth.
27. This evening I have arranged (go) to theatres.
28. She doesn't like people (shout) at him.
29. Finally he admitted (steal) his wife's jewelries and (spend) all the money in gambling.
30. Does the city government intend (do) anything about pollution?

**II) Choose the correct forms of the verbs in parentheses in the following sentences.**

1. The teacher decided (accepting/ to accept) the paper.
2. They appreciate (to have/ having) this information.
3. His father doesn't approve of his (going/ to go) to Europe.
4. We found it very difficult (reaching/ to reach) a decision.
5. Donna is interested in (to open/ opening) a bar.
6. George has no intention of (to leave/ leaving) the city now.
7. We are eager (to return/ returning) to school in the fall.
8. You would be better off (to buy/ buying) this car.
9. She refused (to accept/ accepting) the gift.
10. Mary regrets (to be/ being) the one to have to tell him.

**III) Choose the correct form of the pronoun in each of the following sentences.**

1. Richard is expecting (us/ our) to go to class tomorrow.
2. You shouldn't rely on (him/ his) calling you in the morning.
3. They don't approve of (us/ our) leaving early.
4. George asked (me/ my) to call him last night.
5. We understand (him/ his) having to leave early.
6. John resented (George/ George's) losing the paper.
7. We object to (the defense attorney/ the defense attorney's) calling the extra witness.
8. We are expecting (Henry/ Henry's) to call us.
9. They are looking forward to (us/ our) visiting them.
10. Susan regrets (John/ John's) being in trouble.

**IV) Use the correct forms of the verbs in parentheses in the following sentences.**

1. I hope (have) a job.
2. Try to avoid (make) him angry.
3. He thinks of (leave) his job.
4. Please let me (know) your decision.
5. It's no use (wait).
6. I have (see) a child (cry).
7. Gravity makes water (run) downhill.
8. Gravity keeps the moon (travel) around the earth instead of (shoot) off into space.
9. It's difficult (get) used to (eat) with chopsticks.
10. Stop (argue) and start (work).
11. I used (smoke) 40 cigarettes a day.
12. I'd like (have) a look at your new car.
13. I'm looking forward to (see) you.
14. He warned her (not touch) the wire.
15. Would you mind (show) me how (work) the lift?
16. If you go on (let) the dog (run) after cars, he'll end by (be) run over.
17. Do stop (talk), I'm trying (finish) a letter.
18. Ask him (come) in. Don't keep him (stand) at the door.
19. There are people who can't help (laugh) when they see someone (slip) on a banana skin.
20. I'm sorry (disappoint) you.
21. He was made (sign) a paper admitting his guilt.
22. He told me (try) (come) early.
23. Could I (see) Mr. Pitt, please?
24. The road (join) the two villages is very narrow.
25. Can you smell something (burn)?
26. (Look) at me and answer my question.
27. Oh! I can feel something (crawl) up my leg. It must be an insect.
28. Is there anything here worth (buy)?
29. You'll be able (do) it yourself when you are older.
30. He is too ill (eat) anything.
31. I prefer (drive) to (ride).
32. I don't enjoy (go) to the dentist.
33. I've never heard Tom (swear).
34. You'll never regret (do) a kind action.
35. I'll remember (send) you a postcard when I reach London.
36. You seem (know) this area very well. Yes, I used (live) here.
37. Do you feel like (go) to a film or would you rather (stay) at home?
38. Why do you keep (look) back? Are you afraid of (be) followed?

39. Sad movies always make me (cry).  
 40. Where did you have your sister (make) your coat?  
 41. The old man (sit) on the park bench looked at the (jog) woman.  
 42. It takes me hours (write) a letter.  
 43. The cowboy began (fire).  
 44. I'd rather (earn) my living by (clean) the floor than (make) money by (blackmail) people.  
 45. He is too busy (take) care of her.  
 46. Best wishes to you in the year (come).  
 47. Don't forget (lock) the door before (go) to bed.  
 48. He gave up (gamble).  
 49. The snow keeps (fall).  
 50. It wouldn't be safe now; we'll have (wait) until the rain stops.

## 7. NUMERALS (SỐ TỬ)

Số tử bao gồm 2 loại: số đếm và số thứ tự.

### I. Số đếm (cardinal numbers)

Số đếm là những chữ số dùng để đếm: *one, two, three, ... seventy five, ninety one, a hundred, one hundred and forty six, a thousand, ...*

Lưu ý: *Hundred, thousand, million, ...* không có hình thức số nhiều khi là số đếm.

Ex: *five thousand books, three hundred cars*

Hundreds of: *hàng trăm*

Thousands of: *hàng ngàn*

### II. Số thứ tự (ordinal numbers)

Số thứ tự dùng để chỉ các thứ tự như: *first, second, third, fourth, fifth, eighteenth, forty fifth, a hundredth, ... thirty-ninth, ...*

Lưu ý:

- **Cách đọc ngày tháng:**

*1st September, 1944: The first of September (September the first), nineteen forty four.*

*5th January, 1807: The fifth of January (January the fifth), eighteen hundred and seven.*

- **Cách đọc phân số:**

- Một phân số gồm có 2 phần: phần trên là tử số, phần dưới là mẫu số.

*3 → tử số (numerator)*

*5 → mẫu số (denominator)*

- Muốn nói một phân số, ta dùng số đếm cho tử số và số thứ tự cho mẫu số.

- Nếu tử số là 1 thì mẫu số ở số ít và nếu tử số lớn hơn 1 thì mẫu số ở số nhiều (thêm s).

$\frac{1}{6}$  : one-sixth

$\frac{2}{5}$  : two-fifths

- Khi tử số có hai chữ số trở lên hoặc khi mẫu số có ba chữ số trở lên thì ta nói như sau:

- Tử số dùng số đếm
- Mẫu số đọc từng chữ số một
- Giữa tử số và mẫu số ta dùng chữ "over"

Ex:  $\frac{13}{47}$  : thirteen over four seven

$\frac{4}{136}$  : four over one three six

- Các trường hợp ngoại lệ:

$\frac{1}{2}$  : one (a) half

$\frac{1}{4}$  : one (a) quarter hoặc one fourth

$\frac{2}{100}$  : two percent

\* Cả số đếm lẫn số thứ tự đều có chức năng như một danh từ hoặc tính từ trong câu.

Ex: "Will you have another cup of tea?" "No, thanks. I've had two."

There were three questions in the test. The second was particularly difficult.

We had three visitors that day. The first visitor to arrive was my aunt Milly.

## EXERCISES

### I) Write these dates in words.

1. 23/7/1919

3. 13/1/1063

5. 5/2/1761

2. 9/11/1803

4. 22/5/1966

### II) Write these fractions in words.

1.  $5\frac{2}{7}$

2.  $\frac{62}{26}$

3.  $\frac{8}{172}$

4.  $\frac{42}{93}$

5.  $\frac{3}{4}$

6.  $\frac{26}{100}$

7.  $8\frac{7}{16}$

8.  $4\frac{1}{2}$

9.  $\frac{2}{3}$

10.  $\frac{5}{12}$

## 8. PREPOSITIONS (GIỚI TỪ)

Giới từ là những từ được dùng với danh từ (hoặc đại từ, danh động từ) để chỉ sự liên hệ giữa các từ ấy với các từ khác trong câu.

Ex: The book is on the table.

→ Giới từ "on" diễn tả sự liên hệ giữa danh từ "book" và danh từ "table".

### I. Hình thức của giới từ (forms of preposition)

1. Giới từ có thể là những từ đơn như: in, on, of, for, before, behind, across, inside, within, ...

Ex: She arrived before lunch.

2. Giới từ có thể là một ngữ (bao gồm 2 từ trở lên) như: because of, thanks to, due to, in front of, owing to, but for, ...

Ex: She was absent yesterday because of her illness.

3. Giới từ có thể là sự kết hợp giữa *giới từ + danh từ + giới từ* như: in addition to, on top of, on account of, in view of, in contrast with, with respect to, ...

Ex: In addition to the news, TV stations broadcast a lot of other interesting programmes.

### II. Phân loại giới từ (kinds of preposition)

Có thể nói phần gây không ít khó khăn cho người học tiếng Anh có lẽ là giới từ bởi giới từ không có một nghĩa nhất định mà ta chỉ biết nghĩa của nó thông qua một tình huống hoặc cấu trúc nào đó, ở đây chúng ta tạm phân loại giới từ như sau:

#### 1. Giới từ chỉ nơi chốn (Prepositions of place)

About (quanh quẩn), above (trên), across (ngang), along (dọc theo), among (trong số), at (tại), by (cạnh), before (trước), behind (sau), below, beneath (dưới), beside (bên cạnh), between (giữa hai), beyond (bên kia), down (dưới), from (từ), in (trong), inside (bên trong), into (vào trong), near (gần), on (trên), past (qua), round (quanh), through (xuyên qua, suốt), to (đến), towards (tiến tới), under (dưới), up (trên, lên), at the back of (ở đằng sau), in the front of (ở đằng trước), at the side of (ở bên), at the top of (ở trên đỉnh), at the bottom of (ở dưới đáy), at the beginning of (ở đầu), at the end of (ở cuối), away from (xa khỏi), far from (cách xa), in front of (trước), in the middle of (ở giữa), out of (ở ngoài), ...

#### 2. Giới từ chỉ thời gian (Prepositions of time)

About (khoảng chừng), after (sau khi), at (vào lúc), by (vào khoảng), before (trước lúc), between (giữa), during (trong suốt), for (trong khoảng), from (từ), in (trong, vào), on (vào), since (từ khi), till (cho đến), throughout (trọn), to (đến), at the time of (vào lúc), ...

- *At, by, on* thường được dùng để chỉ thời điểm

Ex: at six o'clock      by two o'clock on Tuesday      on 20th August

- *After, before, by, in, since, for till/ until* được dùng để chỉ khoảng thời gian

Ex: after the New Year      in the morning      for three months

### 3. Giới từ chỉ mục đích (Prepositions of purpose)

- To, in order to, so as to + bare-infinitive
- For + V-ing

Ex: He stood up to see better.

Money is used for buying and selling goods.

#### Lưu ý:

Chú ý sự khác biệt giữa các giới từ sau:

- + among, between (*giữa*)

*between*: giữa hai vật, hai người hoặc hai sự việc.

*among*: giữa nhiều cái, nhiều người.

Ex: The little child sat between his mum and dad.

Share these sweets among the five children.

- + at, in: dùng để chỉ nơi chốn nhưng *at* thường dùng cho một địa điểm (trong một cuộc hành trình, một thành phố, ...); *in* được dùng cho các quốc gia, thành phố, thị trấn, miền, xứ.

Ex: I'm living at Tan Binh, in Ho Chi Minh City.

He has just arrived at the station.

- + beside (*bên cạnh*), besides (*ngoài ra, vả lại, hơn nữa*)

Ex: He was standing just beside me.

No one besides me could like him.

- Những cụm từ thường dùng với *on*:

on holiday, on business, on a trip, on a tour, on a cruise, ... on television, on the radio, on the phone, on strike, on a diet, on fire, on the whole, on purpose, ...

- Những cụm từ với *in*:

in the rain, in the sun, in the shade, in the dark, in bad weather, in ink, in pencil, in words, in figures, in cash, in love with, in one's opinion, ...

## ■ THE USE OF PREPOSITIONS (CÁCH DÙNG CỦA GIỚI TỪ)

### L. Giới từ chỉ thời gian và nơi chốn (prepositions used for time and for place)

#### 1. AT

##### • For time (chỉ thời gian)

At được dùng trước các cụm từ chỉ thời gian sau:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| - at 4 o'clock, at 5 p.m, at 1 a.m (giờ) | - at night                               |
| - at Christmas, at Easter, at Whitsun    | - at once (ngay lập tức)                 |
| - at last (cuối cùng)                    | - at the moment (bây giờ)                |
| - at present (bây giờ, ở hiện tại)       | - at weekends (vào những ngày cuối tuần) |

##### • For place (chỉ nơi chốn)

- |                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| - at home        | - at the theatre  |
| - at the seaside | - at the grocer's, at the hairdresser's, at the doctor's, |

- at school
- at the corner of the street
- at the top
- at the bottom
- at the foot of the page
- at the beginning, at the end (of the lesson, ...)
- at the shop
- (to arrive) at the airport, railway station, ...

Lưu ý: động từ ***arrive*** đi với giới từ ***at*** thường để chỉ những nơi nhỏ, không được dùng với thành phố lớn hay đất nước.

- ***arrive in + thành phố lớn/ đất nước***

## 2. IN

- **For time:** *In* được dùng trước

- Năm

Ex: *in 1980, in 1870, in 2000*

- Tháng

Ex: *in June, in May, in August*

- Mùa

Ex: *in spring, in summer, in winter, in autumn*

- Buổi (ngoại trừ *at night*)

Ex: *in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening*

- IN TIME: đúng lúc, kịp lúc

Ex: *He came to the party in time.*

- **For place**

- In (*ở trong*)

Ex: *in the dinning-room, in the box, in the desk*

- In: được dùng trước các thành phố, đất nước, miền, phương hướng, ...

Ex: *in London, in Paris, in Hanoi*

*in Vietnam, in England, in French*

*in the east, in the north, ...*

*in the street*

: trên đường

*in my opinion*

: theo ý tôi

*in good weather*

: trong thời tiết tốt

*in (the) newspaper*

: trong báo

*in the (a) middle of (the room)*

: ở giữa (phòng)

*in English, German, ...*

: bằng tiếng Anh, Đức, ...

## 3. ON

- **For time:**

- On được dùng trước thứ (ngày trong tuần).

Ex: *on Sunday, on Monday, on Tuesday, ...*

- On được dùng trước ngày tháng.

Ex: *My birthday is on June 10th.*

*She is going to leave her country on May 16th.*

- ON TIME: đúng giờ (chính xác)

Ex: The film was shown on time.

• For place:

- On (*ở* trên)

Ex: There is a book on the table.

There are two lights on the wall.

The pen is on the floor.

on horseback : trên lưng ngựa

on foot : bằng chân (bằng di bộ)

Ex: I often go to school on foot.

on tv : trên truyền hình

on radio : trên radio

on the beach : trên bãi biển

#### 4. BY

- By (*bởi*) được dùng trong câu bị động chỉ người gây ra hành động trong câu.

Ex: The letter was written by Mary.

The picture is drawn by a famous artist.

The cake was made by my mother.

- By (*bằng*) được dùng để chỉ phương tiện di lại.

Ex: I often go to school by bicycle.

Tom came here by bus.

My uncle came there by air.

- By (*trước lúc, vào lúc*) được dùng để chỉ một thời điểm.

Ex: I have to finish this report by Thursday.

by the time : trước khi

by chance : tình cờ

learn by heart : học thuộc lòng

#### 5. TO

- To thường được dùng sau động từ go (go to: đi đến).

Ex: I'm going to the cinema now.

We went to the zoo yesterday.

Lưu ý: go home (không dùng to)

Ex: I'm going home.

- To thường được dùng để chỉ sự di chuyển (tới).

Ex: My father used to take me to the circus when we lived in London.

Mary invited Daisy to her birthday party last Sunday.

#### 6. INTO

- Into có nghĩa là vào trong, được dùng sau các động từ: go, put, get, fall, jump, come,...

Ex: I'm going into the dining-room.

Tom put the pen into the drawer last night.

I got into the train then.

He fell into the river yesterday.

He jumped into the river and swam.

Come into the house, please.

- Into còn được dùng để chỉ sự thay đổi của điều kiện hoặc kết quả.

Ex: The rain changed into snow.

She burst into tears.

- Into = against

Ex: He crashed his car into the wall.

- Into dùng trong toán học có nghĩa là được chia.

Ex: 5 into 25 equals 5 (= 25 devided by 5 equals 5)

## 7. OUT OF (*ra khỏi*)

Ex: He came out of the house.

He was looking out of the window.

## 8. WITH

- With (*có, mang cùng*) = having, carrying

Ex: A coat with two pockets.

A girl with blue eyes.

- With được dùng để chỉ một công cụ, phương tiện ...

Ex: I often write with a pen.

Carry it with both hands.

- With (*cùng với*) được dùng để chỉ sự liên hệ hoặc đồng hành.

Ex: I'm living with my parents.

Is there anyone with you or are you alone?

She often quarrels with them.

- With (*với*)

Ex: Do you agree with me?

You should sympathize with her.

Be patient with them.

## 9. UNDER

- Under (*ở dưới*): chỉ vị trí phía dưới một vật.

Ex: The cat was under the table.

She hid the novel under the pillow so that her father wouldn't see it.

- Under (*ít hơn, thấp hơn*)

Ex: Children under fourteen years of age shouldn't see such a film.

The incomes under 2000\$ a year made him poor.

- Under: được dùng để chỉ sự việc đang trong một tình trạng nào đó.

Ex: The road is under repair. (= The road is being repaired)

They are under discussion. (= They are being discussed)

The robbery is under investigation. (The robbery is being investigated.)

## II. Giới từ theo sau các tính từ (prepositions following adjectives)

### 1. OF

- ashamed of	: xấu hổ về ...	- afraid of	: sợ, e ngại ...
- ahead of	: trước	- aware of	: nhận thức
- capable of	: có khả năng	- confident of	: tin tưởng
- doubtful of	: nghi ngờ	- fond of	: thích
- full of	: đầy	- hopeful of	: hy vọng
- independent of	: độc lập	- proud of	: tự hào
- jealous of	: ghen tỵ với	- guilty of	: phạm tội (về), có tội
- sick of	: chán nản về	- joyful of	: vui mừng về
- quick of	: mau, nhanh chóng về		

### 2. TO

- acceptable to	: có thể chấp nhận	- accustomed to	: quen với
- agreeable to	: có thể đồng ý	- addicted to	: đam mê
- delightful to sb	: thú vị đối với ai	- familiar to sb	: quen thuộc đối với ai
- clear to	: rõ ràng	- contrary to	: trái lại, đối lập
- equal to	: tương đương với, bằng	- favourable to	: tán thành, ủng hộ
- grateful to sb.	: biết ơn ai	- harmful to sb. (for sth.)	: có hại cho ai (cho cái gì)
- important to	: quan trọng	- likely to	: có thể
- lucky to	: may mắn	- next to	: kế bên
- open to	: mở	- pleasant to	: hài lòng
- preferable to	: đáng thích hơn	- profitable to	: có lợi
- rude to	: thô lỗ, cộc cằn	- similar to	: giống, tương tự
- useful to sb	: có ích cho ai	- necessary to sth/sb	: cần thiết cho việc gì, cho ai
- available to sb	: sẵn cho ai	- responsible to sb	: có trách nhiệm với ai

### 3. FOR

- available for sth	: có sẵn (cái gì...)	- difficult for	: khó...
- late for	: trễ...	- dangerous for	: nguy hiểm...
- famous for	: nổi tiếng...	- greedy for	: tham lam...
- necessary for	: cần thiết	- perfect for	: hoàn hảo
- suitable for	: thích hợp	- sorry for	: xin lỗi
- qualified for	: có phẩm chất	- helpful/ useful for	: có lợi, có ích
- good for	: tốt cho...	- grateful for sth	: biết ơn về việc...
- convenient for	: thuận lợi cho...	- ready for sth	: sẵn sàng cho việc gì...
- responsible for sth	: chịu trách nhiệm về việc gì		

### 4. AT

- good at	: giỏi (về...)	- bad at	: dở (về...)
- clever at	: khéo léo...	- skilful at	: khéo léo, có kỹ năng về...
- quick at	: nhanh...	- amazed at	: vui vẻ...
- excellent at	: xuất sắc về...	- present at	: hiện diện

- surprised at : ngạc nhiên
- angry at sth : giận về điều gì
- clumsy at : vụng về
- annoy at sth : khó chịu về điều gì

## 5. WITH

- delighted with : vui mừng với
- acquainted with : làm quen (với ai)
- crowded with : đông đúc...
- angry with : giận dữ...
- friendly with : thân mật...
- bored with : chán...
- familiar with : quen thuộc...
- busy with : bận...
- fed up with : chán...
- furious with : phẫn nộ...
- pleased with : hài lòng...
- popular with : phổ biến
- satisfied with : thỏa mãn với...
- contrasted with : tương phản với

## 6. ABOUT

- confused about : bối rối (về...)
- excited about : hào hứng...
- happy about : hạnh phúc, vui
- sad about : buồn...
- serious about : nghiêm túc...
- upset about : thất vọng
- worried about : lo lắng
- anxious about : lo lắng
- disappointed about sth : lo lắng về việc gì

## 7. IN

- interested in : thích, quan tâm (về...)
- rich in : giàu (về...)
- successful in : thành công (về...)
- confident in sb : tin cậy vào ai

## 8. FROM

- isolated from : bị cô lập
- absent from : vắng mặt (khỏi...)
- different from : khác
- far from : xa
- safe from : an toàn
- divorced from : ly dị, làm xa rời

## 9. ON

- keen on : hăng hái về...

Lưu ý: sau giới từ ta thường dùng danh động từ (V-ing) hoặc danh từ (Noun).

## 10. Một số trường hợp cần lưu ý

\* be tired of: chán

be tired from: mệt vì

Ex: I'm tired of doing the same work every day.

I'm tired from walking for a long time.

\* be grateful to sb for sth: biết ơn ai về vấn đề gì

Ex: I'm grateful to you for your help.

\* be responsible to sb for sth: chịu trách nhiệm với ai về việc gì

Ex: You have to be responsible to me for your actions.

\* good/ bad for: tốt/ xấu cho...; good/ bad at: giỏi/ dở về...

Ex: Milk is good for health.

He is good at English.

\* be kind/ nice to: tốt với ai

It's kind/ nice of sb: ... thật tốt

Ex: Mary is kind to me.

It's very kind of you to help me.

### III. Giới từ theo sau động từ (prepositions following verbs/ two-word verbs)

Sau đây là một số giới từ theo sau các động từ thường gặp.

- apologize sb for sth	: xin lỗi ai về việc gì
- admire sb of sth	: khâm phục ai về việc gì
- belong to sb	: thuộc về ai...
- accuse sb of sth	: tố cáo ai về việc gì
- blame sb for sth	: đổ lỗi cho ai về một việc gì đó
- congratulate sb on sth	: chúc mừng ai về việc gì
- differ from	: khác với
- introduce to sb	: giới thiệu với ai
- give up	: từ bỏ
- look at	: nhìn vào
- look after	: chăm sóc, trông nom
- look for	: tìm kiếm
- look up	: tra từ (trong tự điển)
- look forward to	: mong đợi
- put on	: mang vào, mặc vào
- put off	: hoãn lại
- stand for	: tượng trưng
- call off	: hủy bỏ, hoãn lại
- object to sb/ V-ing	: phản đối ai/ việc gì...
- infer from	: suy ra từ...
- approve of sth to sb	: đồng ý về việc gì với ai
- participate in	: tham gia
- succeed in	: thành công về
- prevent sb from	: ngăn cản ai
- provide with	: cung cấp
- agree with	: đồng ý với
- beg for sth	: van nài cho, xin
- borrow sth from sb	: mượn cái gì của ai
- depend on/ rely on	: dựa vào/ phụ thuộc vào
- die of (a disease)	: chết vì (một căn bệnh)
- join in	: tham gia vào
- escape from	: thoát khỏi
- insist on	: khăng khăng
- change into, turn into	: hóa ra
- wait for sb	: chờ ai
- arrive at (station, bus stop, airport...)	
in (London, Paris, England, Vietnam, France...) → thành phố, đất nước	

## EXERCISES

### I). Fill in the missing prepositions.

1. I shall meet you at the corner of the street.
2. I always come to school on foot.
3. It never snows here at Christmas.
4. The country looks beautiful in spring.
5. I can see you on Monday.
6. I live in the country, but she lives on the seaside.
7. Have you any money for you?
8. He always comes by bus.
9. I don't like getting up in the morning.
10. He has learned the whole poem by heart.
11. This book is by Dickens.
12. Is Miss Smith at home?
13. I have breakfast at 7:30 every morning.
14. Can you translate that into German.
15. My birthday is on May 5th.
16. My birthday is on the 5th.
17. They come into the room.
18. I like swimming in summer.
19. We get a lot of rain in November.
20. He never comes in time for the class.
21. I'm very busy at present.
22. I have no time at the moment.
23. He was standing in the middle of the room.
24. Please write your name at the top of the page.
25. There is vocabulary at the end of the book.
26. I shall see her at the beginning of the week.
27. What would that be in German?
28. In my opinion, it is a very good book.
29. She is in the garden.
30. We are going to the theatre this evening.
31. The train arrives at Victoria station at 4:30.
32. Please tell me once.
33. I waited for half an hour, and then last she came.
34. The book is on the table.
35. He is sitting in an armchair.
36. The picture is on the wall.
37. I put my hands in my pockets.

38. She is drinking \_\_\_\_\_ a cup.
39. She took ten shillings \_\_\_\_\_ her bag.
40. For the last few days I haven't been able to sleep \_\_\_\_\_ night.
41. She always agrees \_\_\_\_\_ everything he says.
42. Are you acquainted \_\_\_\_\_ the lady?
43. You will soon get accustomed \_\_\_\_\_ English cooking.
44. She is very angry \_\_\_\_\_ me.
45. I apologize \_\_\_\_\_ keeping you waiting.
46. The dog begged \_\_\_\_\_ a piece of cake.
47. Does this belong \_\_\_\_\_ you?
48. She is always borrow money \_\_\_\_\_ me.
49. My cat is very fond \_\_\_\_\_ fish.
50. I'm very grateful \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_ her help.
51. The room was full \_\_\_\_\_ people.
52. I'm quite different \_\_\_\_\_ her.
53. She insists \_\_\_\_\_ coming.
54. He is quite incapable \_\_\_\_\_ such a thing.
55. I should like to be independent \_\_\_\_\_ everyone.
56. May I introduce you \_\_\_\_\_ Miss Brown?
57. I'm afraid \_\_\_\_\_ this dog.
58. Are you interested \_\_\_\_\_ literature?
59. She is very jealous \_\_\_\_\_ her sister.
60. Won't you join \_\_\_\_\_ the game?
61. Clean air provides us \_\_\_\_\_ a healthy supply of oxygen.
62. I'm very sorry \_\_\_\_\_ what I have done.
63. His son succeeded \_\_\_\_\_ the throne.
64. My hat is quite similar \_\_\_\_\_ yours.
65. I'm tired \_\_\_\_\_ waiting for her.
66. I'm so worried \_\_\_\_\_ my sister who is ill.
67. It is very bad \_\_\_\_\_ you to eat so quickly.
68. I'm not good \_\_\_\_\_ tennis.
69. My birthday is \_\_\_\_\_ the first \_\_\_\_\_ the month.
70. This will come in very useful \_\_\_\_\_ her.
71. Out \_\_\_\_\_ sight, out \_\_\_\_\_ mind.
72. The sun rises \_\_\_\_\_ the east, and sets \_\_\_\_\_ the west.
73. Were your friends successful \_\_\_\_\_ getting a loan from the bank.
74. I'm sure the explanation in the book will be quite clear \_\_\_\_\_ you.
75. Miss White was very upset \_\_\_\_\_ the news of her father's death.
76. I'm not familiar \_\_\_\_\_ his name.
77. We were very grateful \_\_\_\_\_ our friends \_\_\_\_\_ all of their assistance.

78. Don't you think you should try to be friendly \_\_\_\_\_ your classmates?
79. Mr Green is responsible \_\_\_\_\_ hiring employees.
80. That type of music is quite popular \_\_\_\_\_ teenage boys and girls.
81. My daily expenses are just about equal \_\_\_\_\_ my income.
82. Fred is capable \_\_\_\_\_ doing better work than he is doing at present.
83. We were very doubtful \_\_\_\_\_ his ability.
84. Ken was proud \_\_\_\_\_ his good marks on English.
85. My plan is similar \_\_\_\_\_ yours, but it is different \_\_\_\_\_ Ken's.
86. Pierre said he had become quite fond \_\_\_\_\_ American hamburgers.
87. We are still hopeful \_\_\_\_\_ hearing from our friends before Saturday.
88. That fashion magazine is full \_\_\_\_\_ advertising for women's clothes.
89. These gloves aren't very suitable \_\_\_\_\_ that kind of work.
90. They were happy \_\_\_\_\_ the results of the election.
91. It was certainly kind \_\_\_\_\_ you to help me.
92. Mrs Brown is often worried \_\_\_\_\_ money.
93. Her parents are very pleased \_\_\_\_\_ her French.
94. I'm not interested \_\_\_\_\_ politics.
95. She was sad because he was rude \_\_\_\_\_ her.
96. She was angry \_\_\_\_\_ Tom.
97. Travelling by air is preferable \_\_\_\_\_ traveling by train.
98. Thank you. You are kind \_\_\_\_\_ me.
99. Everybody was surprised \_\_\_\_\_ the news.
100. I was delighted \_\_\_\_\_ the present you gave me.
101. Are you excited \_\_\_\_\_ going on holiday next week?
102. Tom is excellent \_\_\_\_\_ repairing things.
103. You get bored \_\_\_\_\_ doing the same thing every day.
104. I'm sure you are capable \_\_\_\_\_ tourists.
105. Mary is very fond \_\_\_\_\_ animals.
106. Ann wasn't very keen \_\_\_\_\_ going out in the rain, so we stayed at home.
107. Hurry, or you'll be late \_\_\_\_\_ school.
108. Were they present \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting.
109. Jane was absent \_\_\_\_\_ class yesterday.
110. She was confused \_\_\_\_\_ the dates.
111. The house was crowded \_\_\_\_\_ students.
112. Miss White is very kind \_\_\_\_\_ her colleagues.
113. She is accustomed \_\_\_\_\_ rising early.
114. He was successful \_\_\_\_\_ his job.
115. Tom is very quick \_\_\_\_\_ maths.
116. I'm rather anxious \_\_\_\_\_ her, I haven't received a letter.
117. He was sad \_\_\_\_\_ his failure.

118. This country is rich \_\_\_\_\_ oil.
119. Are you aware \_\_\_\_\_ the time.
120. The museum is now open \_\_\_\_\_ all visitors.
121. Smoking is harmful \_\_\_\_\_ your health.
122. Are you afraid \_\_\_\_\_ snakes?
123. Is she serious \_\_\_\_\_ learning to be a pilot?
124. Is this matter important \_\_\_\_\_ you?
125. I just couldn't believe what he said. It was contrary \_\_\_\_\_ his thought.
126. Don't give up hope yet. Be confident \_\_\_\_\_ the success.
127. Please wait here. I'll have some tickets available \_\_\_\_\_ them.
128. Make yourself useful \_\_\_\_\_ others.
129. It's very kind \_\_\_\_\_ you to help them.
130. Hurry up, or you'll be late \_\_\_\_\_ school.
131. He said he had given \_\_\_\_\_ drinking.
132. Don't put \_\_\_\_\_ until tomorrow what you can do today.
133. What does NATO stand \_\_\_\_\_?
134. This is a different car \_\_\_\_\_ the one I drove yesterday.
135. Everyone is aware \_\_\_\_\_ air pollution.
136. This building belongs \_\_\_\_\_ those who live in it.
137. They are good \_\_\_\_\_ learning English.
138. A man usually takes off his hat when he is introduced \_\_\_\_\_ a woman or a girl  
\_\_\_\_\_ the street.
139. Drinking is harmful \_\_\_\_\_ your health.
140. We are interested \_\_\_\_\_ swimming.
141. He has waited \_\_\_\_\_ her for a long time.
142. I agree \_\_\_\_\_ you completely.
143. His opinion differs \_\_\_\_\_ mine.
144. She said that she had been absent \_\_\_\_\_ school the day before.
145. There were crowds \_\_\_\_\_ people in the park yesterday.
146. The park was crowded \_\_\_\_\_ people.
147. The convict escaped \_\_\_\_\_ prison.
148. I'm fed up \_\_\_\_\_ my job.
149. My parents are pleased \_\_\_\_\_ my result.
150. I think you are qualified \_\_\_\_\_ this job.
151. Mr Smith is very kind \_\_\_\_\_ us.
152. We are pleased \_\_\_\_\_ the result of our work.
153. We are confident \_\_\_\_\_ the success.
154. Most people are afraid \_\_\_\_\_ snakes.
155. Our country is rich \_\_\_\_\_ natural resources.
156. Hue is famous \_\_\_\_\_ its historical vestiges.

157. My mother is always busy \_\_\_\_\_ her housework.
158. Dirty air is harmful \_\_\_\_\_ health.
159. We are proud \_\_\_\_\_ our people's heroic tradition.
160. The teacher's advice is profitable \_\_\_\_\_ the students.
161. The streets are crowded \_\_\_\_\_ vehicles at the rush hour.
162. The climate of our country is favorable \_\_\_\_\_ agriculture.
163. The air at the seaside is good \_\_\_\_\_ health.
164. My friend is good \_\_\_\_\_ maths and physics.
165. John is skillful \_\_\_\_\_ dancing.
166. This opportunity is lucky \_\_\_\_\_ us.
167. I'm not acquainted \_\_\_\_\_ those fellows.
168. Mr Smith is not accustomed \_\_\_\_\_ hot weather.
169. Your words are contrary \_\_\_\_\_ your acts.
170. My home is far \_\_\_\_\_ school.
171. He is sad \_\_\_\_\_ his son's laziness.
172. Many young people want to be independent \_\_\_\_\_ their parents.
173. We are grateful \_\_\_\_\_ our teacher.
174. I'm interested \_\_\_\_\_ current events.
175. Your profession is similar \_\_\_\_\_ mine.
176. This chemical is dangerous \_\_\_\_\_ humans.
177. This work is not suitable \_\_\_\_\_ him.
178. Her voice sounds familiar \_\_\_\_\_ me.
179. My house is next \_\_\_\_\_ the post office.
180. This man is greedy \_\_\_\_\_ fame.
181. I was absent \_\_\_\_\_ class yesterday.
182. Children are fond \_\_\_\_\_ candies.
183. Teachers are responsible \_\_\_\_\_ the principal \_\_\_\_\_ their teaching.
184. The beach is full \_\_\_\_\_ tourists in summer.
185. We are present \_\_\_\_\_ the lecture yesterday.
186. We must hurry, otherwise we should be late \_\_\_\_\_ school.
187. Air is necessary \_\_\_\_\_ life.
188. He is friendly \_\_\_\_\_ everybody.
189. The day seems perfect \_\_\_\_\_ a picnic.
190. That singer has become very popular \_\_\_\_\_ the youth.
191. This sweater will keep you safe \_\_\_\_\_ the cold.
192. She said she came two hours ahead \_\_\_\_\_ the performing time.
193. Everything looks sad \_\_\_\_\_ autumn.
194. Your plan will be acceptable \_\_\_\_\_ some respect.
195. Was she aware \_\_\_\_\_ not doing anything contrary \_\_\_\_\_ her parents' expectations?
196. The lesson was difficult \_\_\_\_\_ us, but the teacher was capable \_\_\_\_\_ making us understand it thoroughly.

197. My brother wasn't confident \_\_\_\_\_ passing the exam.
198. After many months of living in Canada he got accustomed \_\_\_\_\_ the cold.
199. He was absent \_\_\_\_\_ work yesterday because he was ill.
200. We are ashamed \_\_\_\_\_ his behaviour.

**II). Write the correct prepositions in the following passage.**

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ the summer, we went \_\_\_\_\_ (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the beach every day. We stayed \_\_\_\_\_ (3) \_\_\_\_\_ a lovely hotel right \_\_\_\_\_ (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the beach. \_\_\_\_\_ (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the morning we would get up \_\_\_\_\_ (6) \_\_\_\_\_ 9:30, have breakfast, and then spend four hours \_\_\_\_\_ (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the pool \_\_\_\_\_ (8) \_\_\_\_\_ all the other guests. \_\_\_\_\_ (9) \_\_\_\_\_ lunch we would eat something light like sandwiches and fruit. \_\_\_\_\_ (10) \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon we would return to the pool area.

**III) Complete the sentence with *in*, *at* or *on*.**

1. Write your name \_\_\_\_\_ the top of the page.
2. I like that picture hanging \_\_\_\_\_ the wall \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen.
3. There was an accident \_\_\_\_\_ the crossroads this morning.
4. I wasn't sure whether I had come to the right office. There was no name \_\_\_\_\_ the door.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ the end of the street there is a path leading to the river.
6. You'll find the sports results \_\_\_\_\_ the back page of the newspaper.
7. I wouldn't like an office job. I couldn't spend the whole day sitting \_\_\_\_\_ a desk.
8. My brother lives \_\_\_\_\_ a small village \_\_\_\_\_ the south-west of England.
9. The man the police are looking for has a scar \_\_\_\_\_ his right cheek.
10. Nicola was wearing a silver ring \_\_\_\_\_ her little finger.
11. It can be dangerous when children play \_\_\_\_\_ the street.
12. If you walk to the end of the street, you'll see a small shop \_\_\_\_\_ the corner.
13. Is Tom \_\_\_\_\_ this photograph? I can't find him.
14. My office is \_\_\_\_\_ the first floor. It's \_\_\_\_\_ the left as you come out of the lift.
15. We normally use the front entrance but there's another entrance \_\_\_\_\_ the back.
16. Is there anything interesting \_\_\_\_\_ paper today?
17. I love to look up at the stars \_\_\_\_\_ the sky at night.
18. When I'm a passenger in a car, I prefer to sit \_\_\_\_\_ the front.
19. It's a very small village. You probably won't find it \_\_\_\_\_ your map.
20. Paris is \_\_\_\_\_ the river Seine.
21. I didn't see you \_\_\_\_\_ the party \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday. Where were you?
22. It was a very slow train. It stopped \_\_\_\_\_ every station.
23. I don't know where my umbrella is. Perhaps I left it \_\_\_\_\_ the bus.
24. Shall I travel \_\_\_\_\_ your car or mine.
25. We stayed \_\_\_\_\_ a very nice hotel when we were \_\_\_\_\_ Amsterdam.
26. Tom is ill. He wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ work today. He was \_\_\_\_\_ home \_\_\_\_\_ bed.
27. I wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ home/when you phoned. I was \_\_\_\_\_ my sister's house.

28. It's always too hot \_\_\_\_\_ my sister's house. The heating is always on too high.  
 29. I haven't seen Kate for some time. I last saw her \_\_\_\_\_ Dave's wedding.  
 30. Paul lives \_\_\_\_\_ London. He's a student \_\_\_\_\_ London University.

**IV) Put in *to/ at/ in/ into* where necessary. If no preposition is necessary, leave the space empty.**

1. Three people were taken \_\_\_\_\_ hospital after the accident.
2. I met Caroline on my way \_\_\_\_\_ home.
3. We left our luggage \_\_\_\_\_ the station and went to find something to eat.
4. Shall we take a taxi \_\_\_\_\_ the station or shall we walk?
5. I must go \_\_\_\_\_ the bank today to change some money.
6. The river Rhine flows \_\_\_\_\_ the North sea.
7. I'm tired. As soon as I get \_\_\_\_\_ home, I'm going \_\_\_\_\_ bed.
8. "Have you got your camera?" - "No, I left it \_\_\_\_\_ home."
9. Marcel is French. He has just returned \_\_\_\_\_ France after two years \_\_\_\_\_ Brazil.
10. Have you ever been \_\_\_\_\_ China?
11. I had lost my key but I managed to climb \_\_\_\_\_ the house through a window.
12. We got stuck in a traffic jam on our way \_\_\_\_\_ the airport.
13. Welcome \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel. We hope you enjoy your stay here.
14. She got \_\_\_\_\_ the car and drove away.
15. Don't wait outside. Come \_\_\_\_\_ the house.

**V) Fill in the blanks with *by, in, on or with*.**

1. Who is that man standing \_\_\_\_\_ the window?
2. I managed to put the fire out \_\_\_\_\_ a fire extinguisher.
3. These photographs were taken \_\_\_\_\_ a friend of mine.
4. These photographs were taken \_\_\_\_\_ a very good camera.
5. I don't mind going \_\_\_\_\_ car but I don't want to go \_\_\_\_\_ your car.
6. Shall we get a taxi or shall we go \_\_\_\_\_ foot?
7. What's that music? I know it's \_\_\_\_\_ Beethoven but I can't remember what it's called.
8. There was a small table \_\_\_\_\_ the bed \_\_\_\_\_ a lamp and a clock \_\_\_\_\_ it.
9. Our team lost the game only because of a mistake \_\_\_\_\_ one of our players.
10. I didn't feel like walking home, so I came home \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi.

**VI). Fill in each blank with an appropriate preposition.**

1. My house is next \_\_\_\_\_ the post office.
2. He succeeded \_\_\_\_\_ opening the door.
3. An accident has happened \_\_\_\_\_ that family.
4. I thanked everybody \_\_\_\_\_ all the help they had given me.
5. I can't deal \_\_\_\_\_ this problem.
6. Celia often reminds me \_\_\_\_\_ her mother.
7. I congratulate you \_\_\_\_\_ your success.
8. I can't combine oil \_\_\_\_\_ water.

9. Don't tell anyone            me.
10. Please write            English not            Vietnamese.
11. I'd like to book a table            twelve            6:30 this evening.
12. The differences            British English and American English are small.
13. It isn't easy to start looking            a job at her age.
14. We often go to school            the morning.
15. I usually read the newspaper while I'm waiting            the bus.
16. Janet doesn't take good care            himself.
17. Next month I'm going to Scotland            a short holiday.
18. There was panic when people realized the building was            fire.
19. The pupils left their bicycle leaning            the wall.
20. I'm a little short            money. Can you lend me some?

## **9. CONJUNCTIONS (LIÊN TỪ)**

Liên từ (conjunctions) là những từ dùng để nối các từ, cụm từ, mệnh đề hoặc các câu với nhau.

### **I. Hình thức của liên từ (Forms of conjunction)**

1. Liên từ có thể là những từ đơn: and, but, or, because, although, ...

Ex: He came to see me because he felt happy.

You or I must tell him the truth.

2. Liên từ có thể là một ngữ: in order that, as soon as, as if, as though, ...

Ex: We will leave as soon as he comes.

3. Liên từ có thể là từng cặp một: either ... or, neither ... nor, not only ... but also, both ... and

Ex: What he said was neither kind nor true.

He both writes English and speaks it well.

### **II. Phân loại liên từ (Kinds of conjunction)**

Dựa vào vai trò của liên từ trong câu, ta có thể chia liên từ làm 2 loại:

1. **Liên từ kết hợp (Co-ordinate conjunctions):** nối các từ, nhóm từ, mệnh đề hoặc các câu độc lập với nhau. Loại liên từ này được chia làm 4 nhóm:

- a. Nhóm **and (và)** - chỉ sự thêm vào

Ex: On the table for tea there were biscuits and sandwiches.

The fur coat was soft as well as warm.

Nhóm này gồm các liên từ: *and, both ... and, not only ... but also, as well as, furthermore, besides, moreover, in addition, ...*

- b. Nhóm **but (nhưng)** - chỉ sự mâu thuẫn hoặc trái ngược

Ex: The car was quite old but in excellent condition.

Nhóm này gồm các liên từ: *yet, still, however, nevertheless, ...*

- c. Nhóm **or (hay, hoặc là)** - chỉ sự lựa chọn hoặc đoán chừng

Ex: Take this book or that one.

You must work harder or else go into another class.

Nhóm này gồm có các liên từ: *either ... or, otherwise, or else, neither ... nor, ...*

d. Nhóm **so (nên)** - chỉ hậu quả, kết quả

Ex: The rain began to fall, so we went home.

Nhóm này gồm có các liên từ: *therefore, consequently, as a result, ...*

2. **Liên từ phụ thuộc (subordinate conjunctions):** dùng để mở đầu một mệnh đề phụ (mệnh đề danh từ hoặc mệnh đề trạng từ).

Ex: He said that he would help us.

Ask him when he can come.

- Một số liên từ mở đầu cho một mệnh đề danh từ: *that, who, what, when, how, whether, if, ...*

- Một số liên từ mở đầu cho một mệnh đề trạng ngữ: *when, whenever, while, as soon as, since, until, before, after, where, if, though, as if, ...*

## EXERCISES

I) Fill in each blank with an appropriate conjunction.

1. He drinks \_\_\_\_\_ beer \_\_\_\_\_ wine.
2. I'm going out for a short time, \_\_\_\_\_ you can get supper ready.
3. Those who are not prepared to study should \_\_\_\_\_ change their ways \_\_\_\_\_ make room for those who will work.
4. She can't hope to pass the exam in December \_\_\_\_\_ she'll have to wait till June.
5. He is very seriously ill, \_\_\_\_\_ doctors have almost given up hope of his recovery.
6. They go to concerts of modern music \_\_\_\_\_ they really like it.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ I do not like him very much, I can appreciate his qualities.
8. Find out. \_\_\_\_\_ they are going this evening \_\_\_\_\_ ask if we may join them.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ I walked into the room, the phone started ringing.
10. We'll be late \_\_\_\_\_ we hurry.

II) Join each pair of sentences, using a subordinate conjunction.

1. Nam will pass the exam. He studies hard.
2. Mary came to class late. Her motorbike had a puncture.
3. Her mother was very sick. She couldn't come to class.
4. Tom was very lazy. He passed the final examination as well.
5. Daisy is very nice. All her friends love her very much.
6. Daisy is a very intelligent girl. She always gets the scholarships.
7. We will take the trip. It is stormy.
8. I had forgot locking the door. I drove to the office this morning.
9. We study hard. We want to pass the final examination.
10. She earned her living by selling newspapers. She got a B.A degree.

### III) Join each pair of sentences. Use the words in brackets.

- She is in London. She is in Berlin, too. (either ... or)
- He wasn't an idler. He wasn't a gambler. (neither ... nor)
- He isn't likely to be present at the meeting. I'm not either. (neither ... nor)
- The computer can gather facts. It can store them. (not only ... but also)
- This prize will mean an honour for him. It will mean an honour for us. (not only ... but also)

## 10. ARTICLES (MẠO TỪ)

### I. Mạo từ bất định (indefinite articles): A, AN

A, an có thể đứng trước danh từ đếm được số ít (singular countable noun).

- A, an được sử dụng trong lời nói chung chung hoặc để giới thiệu một điều gì chưa được đề cập đến trước đó.

Ex: A ball is round. → nói chung mọi trái bóng đều tròn.

I saw a boy in the street. → chúng ta không biết "boy" nào.

+ An được dùng trước những từ bắt đầu bằng một nguyên âm.

+ A được dùng trước những từ bắt đầu bằng một phu âm.

Ex: a book, a pen

an apple, an ink-pot

\* Một số từ có thể gây ra sự nhầm lẫn vì cách viết và cách đọc khác nhau.

Ex: a house nhưng an hour

a university nhưng an umbrella

- Những từ sau đây luôn được dùng với a:

European                  house                  uniform                  eulogy

home                  university                  euphemism                  heavy

universal                  eucalyptus                  half                  union

- Những từ sau luôn được dùng với an:

hour                  uncle                  heir                  umbrella

herbal                  unnatural                  honor                  understanding

Lưu ý:

an umbrella                  a white umbrella

an hour                  a whole hour

### II. Mạo từ xác định (definite articles): THE

- The được sử dụng để chỉ sự việc mà chúng ta đã biết hoặc là một kiến thức chung, phổ biến.

Ex: The boy in the corner is my friend.

→ cả người nói lẫn người nghe đều biết "boy" nào.

The earth is round.

→ chỉ có duy nhất 1 "earth".

- Với những danh từ không đếm được, mạo từ *the* được sử dụng để nói về một cái gì đấy riêng biệt, nhưng sẽ không dùng mạo từ nếu muốn chỉ cái gì chung chung.

Ex: Sugar is sweet. (Đường thì ngọt.) → nói chung chung

The sugar on the table is from Cuba. (Đường ở trên bàn là đường Cuba.) → riêng biệt

- Thông thường, với những danh từ đếm được số nhiều khi nói đến một loại nào đó thì không có *the* đi trước.

Ex: Oranges are green until they ripen. (all oranges)

Athletes should follow a well-balanced diet. (all athletes)

- Với danh từ riêng, sẽ có mạo từ *the* đứng trước nếu người nói muốn xác định rõ.

Ex: The Susan Parker that I know lives on First Avenue.

- Những từ như *breakfast, lunch, dinner, school, church, home, college, work* không sử dụng bất cứ mạo từ nào nếu không giới hạn nghĩa.

Ex: We ate breakfast at eight o'clock this morning.

We went to school yesterday.

\* Sử dụng sự tổng quát hóa sau đây như một sự chỉ dẫn cho việc sử dụng mạo từ *the*.

#### A. Sử dụng THE với:

1. oceans, rivers, seas, gulfs, plural lakes

Ex: the Red Sea, the Atlantic Ocean, the Persian gulf, the great Lakes

2. mountain ranges

Ex: the Rocky Mountains, the Andes

3. earth, moon

Ex: the earth, the moon

4. schools, colleges, universities when the phrase begins with school, ...

Ex: the University of Florida

the college of Art and Sciences

5. ordinal numbers before nouns

Ex: the First World War, the third chapter

6. wars (except World Wars)

Ex: the Korean war

7. certain countries or groups of countries with more than one word (except Great Britain)

Ex: the United States, the United Kingdom

8. historical documents

Ex: the constitution

9. ethnic groups

Ex: the Indians

## B. Không sử dụng THE với:

### 1. singular lakes

Ex: Lake Geneva, Lake Erie

### 2. mountains

Ex: (Mount) Vesuvius, (Mount) McKinley, (Mount) Everest

### 3. planets

Ex: Venus, Mars, ...

### 4. schools, colleges, universities when the phrase begins with a proper noun.

Ex: Hong Bang college

Hung Vuong University

### 5. cardinal numbers after nouns

Ex: World War I, chapter three

### 6. countries preceded by "New" or an adjective such as a direction

Ex: New Zealand, South Africa

### 7. countries with only one word

Ex: France, Sweden, Vietnam, ...

### 8. continents

Ex: Europe, Africa, ...

### 9. states

Ex: Florida, Ohio, California, ...

### 10. sports

Ex: baseball, basket ball

### 11. abstract nouns

Ex: freedom, happiness

### 12. general areas of subject matter

Ex: Mathematics, sociology

### 13. holidays

Ex: Christmas, Easter

## EXERCISES

Put in *the* or *a*/ *an* where necessary.

1. Jason's father bought him \_\_\_\_\_ bicycle that he had wanted for his birthday.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ Statue of Liberty was a gift of friendship from \_\_\_\_\_ France to \_\_\_\_\_ United States.

3. Rita is studying \_\_\_\_\_ English and \_\_\_\_\_ math this semester.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ judge asked \_\_\_\_\_ witness to tell \_\_\_\_\_ truth.

5. Please give me \_\_\_\_\_ cup of \_\_\_\_\_ coffee with \_\_\_\_\_ cream and \_\_\_\_\_ sugar.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ big books on \_\_\_\_\_ table are for my history class.

7. No one in \_\_\_\_\_ Spanish class knew \_\_\_\_\_ correct answer to \_\_\_\_\_ Mrs Brown's question.
8. My \_\_\_\_\_ car is four years old, and it still runs well.
9. When you go to \_\_\_\_\_ store, please buy \_\_\_\_\_ bottle of \_\_\_\_\_ chocolate milk and \_\_\_\_\_ dozen oranges.
10. There are only \_\_\_\_\_ few seats left for \_\_\_\_\_ tonight's musical show at \_\_\_\_\_ university.
11. John and Mary went to \_\_\_\_\_ school yesterday and then studied in \_\_\_\_\_ library before returning home.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ Lake Erie is one of \_\_\_\_\_ five great Lakes in \_\_\_\_\_ North America.
13. On our trip to \_\_\_\_\_ Spain, we crossed \_\_\_\_\_ Atlantic Ocean.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ Mount Rushmore is the site of \_\_\_\_\_ magnificent tribute to \_\_\_\_\_ four great American presidents.
15. What did you eat for \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast this morning?
16. David played \_\_\_\_\_ basketball and \_\_\_\_\_ baseball at \_\_\_\_\_ Boy's club this year.
17. Rita plays \_\_\_\_\_ violin and her sister plays \_\_\_\_\_ guitar.
18. While we were in \_\_\_\_\_ Alaska, we saw \_\_\_\_\_ Eskimo village.
19. Tom can't go to \_\_\_\_\_ movies tonight because he has to write \_\_\_\_\_ essay.
20. David attended \_\_\_\_\_ Princeton University.
21. Harry has been admitted to \_\_\_\_\_ School of Medicine at \_\_\_\_\_ mid western University.
22. Mel's grandmother is in \_\_\_\_\_ hospital, so we went to visit her \_\_\_\_\_ last night.
23. \_\_\_\_\_ political science class is taking \_\_\_\_\_ trip to \_\_\_\_\_ France in \_\_\_\_\_ spring.
24. \_\_\_\_\_ Queen Elizabeth II is \_\_\_\_\_ monarch of \_\_\_\_\_ Great Britain.
25. Scientists sent \_\_\_\_\_ expedition to \_\_\_\_\_ Mars during \_\_\_\_\_ 1990s.
26. Last night there was \_\_\_\_\_ bird singing outside my house.
27. \_\_\_\_\_ chair that you are sitting in is broken.
28. \_\_\_\_\_ Civil War was fought in \_\_\_\_\_ United States between 1861 and 1865.
29. \_\_\_\_\_ Florida State University is smaller than \_\_\_\_\_ University of Florida.
30. There was \_\_\_\_\_ knock on \_\_\_\_\_ door. I opened it and found \_\_\_\_\_ small dark man in \_\_\_\_\_ blue overcoat and \_\_\_\_\_ woolen cap.
31. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ time?  
Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ clock in \_\_\_\_\_ hall has just struck nine.  
Then it isn't \_\_\_\_\_ time to go yet.
32. \_\_\_\_\_ listening to \_\_\_\_\_ teacher is useful for all of us.
33. Most of \_\_\_\_\_ students working in \_\_\_\_\_ garden are tired.
34. He works as \_\_\_\_\_ assistant in \_\_\_\_\_ same shop as I do.
35. Do you think I should go to \_\_\_\_\_ police?
36. To prevent \_\_\_\_\_ possible repetition of this accident, I lent him \_\_\_\_\_ torch.
37. Most \_\_\_\_\_ farmers working hard on their land almost get nothing for their lifetime.
38. Do you see \_\_\_\_\_ man standing near \_\_\_\_\_ door?
39. I told you about \_\_\_\_\_ burglary that we had at \_\_\_\_\_ shop, didn't I?
40. \_\_\_\_\_ practicing English everyday of all the students in our class is very necessary.

## II. WORD STUDY (TỪ VỰNG HỌC)

### A. WORD FORMATIONS

#### (CÁCH THÀNH LẬP TỪ)

##### L Sư thành lập danh từ (noun formations)

1. Một số danh từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm các hậu tố (suffixes) vào sau động từ.

a. -tion/ -ation

V	N	V	N
<u>Ex:</u> to conserve	→ conversation	to preserve	→ preservation
to prevent	→ prevention	to combine	→ combination

b. -ment

<u>Ex:</u> to develop	→ development	to achieve	→ achievement
to employ	→ employment	to disappoint	→
diasappointment			

c. -er (người/ vật hành động)

<u>Ex:</u> to fertilize	→ fertilizer	to do	→ doer
to teach	→ teacher	to work	→ worker
to sing	→ singer		

d. -or (người)

<u>Ex:</u> to deposit	→ depositor	to act	→ actor
to instruct	→ instructor		

e. -ant (người)

<u>Ex:</u> to assist	→ assistant	to account	→ accountant
to apply	→ applicant	to contest	→ contestant

f. -ing

<u>Ex:</u> to teach	→ teaching	to poison	→ poisoning
to dirty	→ dirtying		

g. -age

<u>Ex:</u> to drain	→ drainage	to use	→ usage
---------------------	------------	--------	---------

2. Một số danh từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm các hậu tố (suffixes) vào sau danh từ.

a. -ship

<u>Ex:</u> friend	→ friendship	scholar	→ scholarship
neighbour	→ neighbourhood		

b. -ism (chủ nghĩa, học thuyết)

<u>Ex:</u> capital	→ capitalism	hero	→ heroism
Critic	→ Criticism	Marx	→ Marxism

3. Một số danh từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm các hậu tố vào sau tính từ.

a. -ity

<u>Ex:</u> possible	→ possibility	able	→ ability
responsible	→ responsibility	special	→ speciality
real	→ reality	national	→ nationality

b. -ism

Ex: racial

social

→ racialism

→ socialism

common

→ communism

feudal

→ feudalism

c. -ness

Ex: rich

sad

→ richness

→ sadness

happy

cold

→ happiness

→ coldness

4. Một số danh từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm các tiền tố (prefixes) vào trước một danh từ khác.

a. super- (cao, giỏi, siêu)

Ex: man

structure

→ superman

market

→ supermarket

→ superstructure

b. under- (ở dưới)

Ex: achievement

clothes

→ underachievement

growth

→ undergrowth

→ underclothes

pass

→ underpass

c. sur- (ở trên, bên ngoài)

Ex: face

plus

→ surface

name

→ surname

→ surplus

d. sub- (dưới, ở dưới)

Ex: way

committee

→ subway

continent

→ subcontinent

→ subcommittee

## II. Sự thành lập tính từ (Adjective formations)

1. Một số tính từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm các hậu tố (suffixes) vào sau danh từ

a. -ful (đầy)

N

Ex: harm

success

help

Adj

→ harmful

N

Adj

→ useful

→ successful

use

→ hopeful

→ helpful

hope

b. -less (không có)

Ex: child

tree

→ childless

odour

→ odourless

→ treeless

home

→ homeless

c. -ly (có vẻ, có tính cách, hàng giờ/ngày/tháng/năm...)

Ex: man

world

year

→ manly

brother

→ brotherly

→ worldly

hour

→ hourly

→ yearly

day

→ daily

d. -like (giống như)

Ex: child

life

→ childlike

god

→ godlike

→ lifelike

statesman

→ statesmanlike

e. -y (nhiều, đầy, có)

Ex: rain

dust

health

→ rainy

snow

→ snowy

→ dusty

sand

→ sandy

→ healthy

fog

→ foggy

f. -ish (có tính chất của; giống như)			
Ex: fool	→ foolish	self	→ selfish
child	→ childish		
g. -al (thuộc về)			
Ex: magic	→ magical	agriculture	→ agricultural
industry	→ industrial	nature	→ natural
h. -ous			
Ex: poison	→ poisonous	nerve	→ nervous
danger	→ dangerous	fame	→ famous

## 2. Một số tính từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm hậu tố vào sau động từ.

### a. -ive (có tính chất)

V	→ Adj	V	→ Adj
Ex: act	→ active	progress	→ progressive
abort	→ abortive	attract	→ attractive
b. -able (có thể)			
Ex: accept	→ acceptable	count	→ countable
achieve	→ achievable	agree	→ agreeable

## 3. Một số tính từ mang nghĩa phủ định được thành lập bằng cách thêm tiền tố phủ định vào trước tính từ.

### a. un- (không)

Ex: happy	→ unhappy	fortunate	→ unfortunate
lucky	→ unlucky	forgettable	→ unforgettable
b. in-			

Ex: direct	→ indirect	convenient	→ inconvenient
dependent	→ independent	formal	→ informal

### c. im- (trước những từ bắt đầu bằng m hoặc p)

Ex: patient	→ impatient	possible	→ impossible
mature	→ immature	perfect	→ imperfect

### d. ir- (trước những từ bắt đầu bằng r)

Ex: regular	→ irregular	religious	→ irreligious
removable	→ irremoval	rational	→ irrational

### e. il- (trước những từ bắt đầu bằng l)

Ex: legal	→ illegal	logical	→ illogical
literate	→ illiterate		

## 4. Một số tính từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm tiền tố vào trước tính từ.

### a. super- (quá, siêu)

Ex: human	→ superhuman	natural	→ supernatural
sonic	→ supersonic		

### b. under- (dưới, thấp, không đủ)

Ex: cover	→ undercover	developed	→ underdeveloped
done	→ underdone		

c. over- (*quá*)

Ex: anxious  
bearing

→ overanxious  
→ overbearing

confident  
joyed

→ overconfident  
→ overjoyed

d. sub- (*ở dưới*)

Ex: conscious

→ subconscious

human

→ subhuman

5. Tính từ kép có thể được thành lập bằng cách kết hợp một danh từ với một quá khứ phân từ: N + V<sub>3</sub> → Adj

Ex: man-made  
snow-covered

hand-made  
horse-pulled

corn-fed

6. Ngoài ra ta còn có thể thành lập tính từ bằng cách dùng WELL hoặc ILL kết hợp với một quá khứ phân từ.

Ex: well-prepared  
ill-prepared

well-known  
ill-bred

well-done  
ill-judged

### III. Sự thành lập động từ (Verb formations)

1. Một số ngoại động từ (transitive verbs) được thành lập bằng cách thêm tiền tố *out-* vào nội động từ (intransitive verbs).

*out-* : *tốt hơn, nhanh hơn, dài hơn, v.v...*

Ex: grow → outgrow (*lớn hơn, phát triển hơn*)  
live → outlive (*sống lâu hơn*)  
run → outrun (*chạy nhanh hơn*)  
weigh → outweigh (*nặng hơn*)  
number → outnumber (*nhiều hơn, đông hơn*)

\* Transitive verb: động từ luôn có tân ngữ trực tiếp sau (V + O<sub>d</sub>)

\* Intransitive verb: động từ không có tân ngữ theo sau.

2. Một số động từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm tiền tố *en-* vào sau tính từ, danh từ hoặc một động từ khác.

*en-* : *bổ vào, làm cho, gây ra*

Ex: danger (n) → endanger (v) case (n) → encase (v)  
rich (adj) → enrich (v) large (adj) → enlarge (v)  
close (v) → enclose (v) act (v) → enact (v)  
force (v) → enforce (v)

3. Một số động từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm tiền tố vào các động từ.

a. over- (*quá*)

Ex: act → overact  
take → overtake  
work → overwork

stay → overstay  
throw → overthrow

b. under- (*ở dưới*)

Ex: study → understudy  
sell → undersell  
do → underdo

write → underwrite  
charge → undercharge

### c. super- (*siêu, quá*)

<u>Ex:</u> impose	→ superimpose	intend	→ superintend
pose	→ superpose	charge	→ supercharge
abound	→ superabound		

### 4. Nhiều động từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm *-ize/-ise* vào sau danh từ hoặc tính từ.

Ex: social → socialize symbol → symbolize

## IV. Cách thành lập trạng từ (adverb formations)

Trạng từ thường được thành lập bằng cách thêm hậu tố *-ly* vào sau tính từ.

adj	adv	adj	adv
<u>Ex:</u> beautiful	→ beautifully	careful	→ carefully
careless	→ carelessly	strong	→ strongly
main	→ mainly	bad	→ badly

Lưu ý: một số trạng từ đặc biệt cần ghi nhớ:

good (adj)	→ well (adv)	late (adj)	→ late/ lately (adv)
ill (adj)	→ ill (adv)	fast (adj)	→ fast (adv)

## B. WORD FORMS

### (HÌNH THỨC CỦA TỪ)

Dưới đây là các cách nhận biết từ loại của một từ khi làm bài tập:

### I). Danh từ (nouns)

Danh từ thường được đặt ở các vị trí:

#### 1. Chủ ngữ của câu

Ex: Computers are being used in all kinds of work.

Maths is the subject I like best.

#### 2. Sau các tính từ hoặc tính từ sở hữu (*his, my, her, ...*). Chú ý các câu có nhiều tính từ.

Ex: She is a good teacher.

Dirty air is chiefly a city problem.

His talk was successful.

#### 3. Sau *enough*

Ex: He didn't have enough money to buy that car then.

#### 4. Sau các mạo từ *a, an, the*, hoặc các từ *this, that, these, those, each, every, both, no, ...* (Lưu ý cấu trúc *a/an/the + adj + noun*)

Ex: The scientists have become important people in our society.

Some difficult problems have been solved by this man.

She is such a kind girl that everybody loves her.

## 5. Sau giới từ (*in, on, of, with, ...*)

Ex: The robbery is under investigation.

He has a good knowledge of science.

## 6. Sau các từ chỉ về số lượng (quantifiers: *few, a few, little, a little, some, any, many, most, ...*)

Ex: I don't get much exercise sitting in the office all day.

I have little knowledge about genetics.

Most boys like playing football.

## II. Tính từ (adjectives)

Tính từ thường đứng ở các vị trí sau:

### 1. Trước danh từ.

**adj + N**

Ex: Modern society needs engineers.

adj      N

### 2. Sau hệ từ.

**be/ seem/ appear/ feel/ taste/ look/ keep + adj**

Ex: She is beautiful.

Tom seems tired now.

Peter felt upset because he failed the test.

Mary looks happy now.

**keep/ make + O + adj**

Ex: We should make our school tidy.

O      adj

### 3. Sau *too*.

**be/ seem/ look/... + too + adj**

Ex: He is too short to play basketball.

Daisy is too young to drive a car.

### 4. Trước *enough*.

**be + adj + enough**

Ex: She is tall enough to play volleyball.

Ben is rich enough to buy such an expensive house.

### 5. Trong cấu trúc *so ... that*.

**be/ seem/ look/ feel/ ... + so + adj + that**

Ex: The weather was so bad that we decided to stay at home.

The film is so exciting that I've seen it many times.

6. Tính từ còn được dùng dưới các dạng so sánh (lưu ý tính từ dài hay đứng sau more, the most, less, as ... as).

Ex: Meat is more expensive than fish.

This is the most intelligent boy I've ever seen.

He is as deaf as a post.

7. Tính từ trong câu cảm thán.

**How + adj + S + V**  
**What + (a/ an) + adj + N**

Ex: How beautiful the girl is!

What awful weather!

### III. Trạng từ (adverbs)

Trạng từ thường đứng ở các vị trí sau:

1. Sau trợ động từ và trước động từ thường.

**V(trợ động từ) + adv + V(thường)**

Ex: The South of Vietnam was completely liberated on April 30, 1975.

I have recently finished my homework.

2. Trước tính từ.

**be/ feel/ look/... + adv + adj**

Ex: I'm truthfully grateful to you for your help.

Nitric oxide is highly harmful.

I feel completely interested in this book.

3. Sau too.

**V(thường) + too + adv**

Ex: He studied too lazily to pass his exam.

She came too late to see him yesterday.

4. Trong cấu trúc so ... that.

**V(thường) + so + adv + that**

Ex: Jack drove so fast that he caused an accident.

The child ate so much that he was sick.

He works so hard that he rarely goes to the cinema.

5. Cuối câu.

**S + V (+ O) + adv**

Ex: The doctor told me to breathe in slowly.

She did some odd jobs at home disappointedly.

The surgeon performed the operation successfully.

## 6. Trước enough.

V(thường) + adv + enough

Ex: She drives carefully enough to be safe.

He worked hard enough to succeed.

7. Trạng từ cũng thường đứng một mình ở đầu câu hoặc giữa câu và cách các thành phần khác của câu bằng dấu phẩy (,).

Ex: Suddenly, he heard a strange voice.

It's raining hard. Tom, however, goes to school.

## IV. Động từ (Verbs)

Vị trí của động từ trong câu rất dễ nhận biết vì nó thường đứng sau chủ ngữ. (Nhớ cẩn thận đối với câu có nhiều mệnh đề).

Ex: Tom's behaviour improved at his new school.

S V

I believe her because she always tells the truth.

S V S V

The film which was shown on T.V last night attracted me.

S V

The girl sitting on that chair has won the gold medal.

S V

Chú ý: Khi dùng động từ nhớ lưu ý thì của nó để chia cho đúng.

## EXERCISES

Supply the correct word forms.

1. He is a \_\_\_\_\_ boy. He is always asking questions. (curiosity)
2. All the pupils have done the exercises \_\_\_\_\_. (easy)
3. Keep \_\_\_\_! The teacher is explaining the lesson. (silence)
4. Be \_\_\_\_\_ in your work! (care)
5. Time passes \_\_\_\_\_ when you are alone. (slow)
6. He \_\_\_\_\_ carefully. He rarely has accident. (drive)
7. Ho Chi Minh city is an important \_\_\_\_\_ center.. (commerce)
8. We have a \_\_\_\_\_ newspaper in this town. (week)
9. This exercise seems \_\_\_\_\_. (difficulty)
10. Mrs Green can help Alice to make a good \_\_\_\_\_. (choose)
11. He has \_\_\_\_\_ bought a new car. (recent)
12. How \_\_\_\_\_ the dress is! (expensive)
13. How \_\_\_\_\_ those shopwindow are! (beauty)
14. She has finished her best \_\_\_\_\_. (perform)
15. The cartoon last night was very \_\_\_\_\_. (interest)
16. She \_\_\_\_\_ goes to the movies with her younger sister. (frequency)

17. Last night the singer sang very \_\_\_\_\_. (good)
18. The story is about an \_\_\_\_\_. trip. (excite)
19. In May the days often \_\_\_\_\_. (long)
20. He got rid of the \_\_\_\_\_ by opening a window. (smell)
21. Nobody showed them to their \_\_\_\_\_. (sit)
22. Helen speaks English very \_\_\_\_\_. (fluent)
23. This is the most \_\_\_\_\_ machine in our field. (value)
24. We can keep the land in \_\_\_\_\_ condition by killing weeds. (well)
25. Jack plays football \_\_\_\_\_. (splendid)
26. The ball was followed with great \_\_\_\_\_. (excite)
27. That was an \_\_\_\_\_ match, wasn't it? I was \_\_\_\_\_ to see it. (excite)
28. \_\_\_\_\_ is a good career. I want to become a \_\_\_\_\_. (teach)
29. Rubber trees are very \_\_\_\_\_. (use)
30. Sports are very good for our \_\_\_\_\_. (healthy)
31. Who will take \_\_\_\_\_ of the baby when you go away? (careful)
32. Don't worry about her \_\_\_\_\_. (complain)
33. What is the real \_\_\_\_\_ of the house? (wide)
34. I want to make new dresses but I don't have a \_\_\_\_\_ machine. (sew)
35. She danced so \_\_\_\_\_ that the audience clapped their hands many times. (beauty)
36. I'll have Tom repair our electric \_\_\_\_\_. (cook)
37. Water has no colour. It is a \_\_\_\_\_ liquid. (colour)
38. Please don't make \_\_\_\_\_. (noisy)
39. Mr Green works in this factory as a shop \_\_\_\_\_. (keep)
40. Ky Hoa lake is one of the areas of \_\_\_\_\_. (entertain)
41. Butter is one of the \_\_\_\_\_ of milk. (produce)
42. He is a \_\_\_\_\_ person. He often makes me laugh. (fun)
43. I want to know how people \_\_\_\_\_ New Year in your country. (celebration)
44. On Christmas day, I often send my close friends \_\_\_\_\_ cards. (greet)
45. He is a famous \_\_\_\_\_ in this country. (act)
46. He often writes stories. He is a \_\_\_\_\_. (write)
47. These flowers look \_\_\_\_\_. (nature)
48. It's not \_\_\_\_\_ to answer this question. (difficulty)
49. His play were \_\_\_\_\_ on the stage in London. (performance)
50. The film is \_\_\_\_\_ so I'm \_\_\_\_\_. (bore)
51. The Sword Lake is one of \_\_\_\_\_ places in Hanoi. (history)
52. He devoted all his \_\_\_\_\_ to writing. (live)
53. How \_\_\_\_\_ the street is! (danger)
54. She lives \_\_\_\_\_ although she is very poor. (happy)
55. I'll help you to \_\_\_\_\_ some beautiful paintings. (choice)
56. The love for book is \_\_\_\_\_ in developing the pupils' knowledge. (help)

57. This public library is \_\_\_\_\_ to all people. (open)
58. Books help people to get more \_\_\_\_\_. (know)
59. \_\_\_\_\_ countries need help from \_\_\_\_\_ ones. (develop)
60. This stamp \_\_\_\_\_ is valuable. (collect)
61. The person who takes care of books in the library is a \_\_\_\_\_. (library)
62. He is very \_\_\_\_\_. (friend)
63. She smiles so \_\_\_\_\_, doesn't she? (attract)
64. My \_\_\_\_\_ for your skill is great. (admire)
65. We all held our breath because of that \_\_\_\_\_. film. (thrill)
66. I only had a day to visit all the tourist \_\_\_\_\_. (attract)
67. They ride their bicycles to the countryside for \_\_\_\_\_. (please)
68. Red \_\_\_\_\_ communist countries. (symbol)
69. May Day is celebrated regularly in \_\_\_\_\_. countries. (society)
70. He lost the game because of his \_\_\_\_\_. (care)
71. The teacher stressed the need for regular \_\_\_\_\_. (attend)
72. The cost of \_\_\_\_\_ must be paid by the buyer. (carry)
73. Our \_\_\_\_\_ from London to Sydney took 24 hours. (fly)
74. The police are interested in the sudden \_\_\_\_\_. of the valuable painting. (appear)
75. The master gave Oliver Twist a terrible \_\_\_\_\_. (punish)
76. He gave no \_\_\_\_\_ for his absence. (explain)
77. They were happy because their work was finished \_\_\_\_\_. (success)
78. To prepare his \_\_\_\_\_ works, Karl Marx often spent whole days in the library of the British Museum. (science)
79. He is respected for his \_\_\_\_\_. (simple)
80. They had made a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ before the game started. (prepare)
81. Manchester players have been trying to score another goal, but their efforts are \_\_\_\_\_. (succeed)
82. We must make \_\_\_\_\_ for his youth. (allow)
83. An \_\_\_\_\_ man has stolen all our money. (know)
84. Two of these tablets should be taken \_\_\_\_\_. (day)
85. Dogs are very \_\_\_\_\_ pets. (faith)
86. The Thames flows \_\_\_\_\_ through green meadows. (gentle)
87. Relax in our \_\_\_\_\_ chairs and enjoy our excellent tea and hot chocolate. (comfort)
88. I'm so \_\_\_\_\_ you're going to visit my country. (please)
89. What a naughty boy! He always does things \_\_\_\_\_. (noise)
90. There were ten \_\_\_\_\_ in the race. (complete)
91. His \_\_\_\_\_ makes his parents feel sad. (lazy)
92. You should \_\_\_\_\_ to your teacher. (apology)
93. Jack is \_\_\_\_\_ of his essay on the Thames. (pride)
94. Paris is \_\_\_\_\_ for the Eiffel tower. (fame)

95. He worked hard to \_\_\_\_\_ good crops from poor soil. (product)
96. How \_\_\_\_\_ of you to break that cup! (care)
97. His long \_\_\_\_\_ made us bored and sleepy. (speak)
98. He never takes his father's \_\_\_\_\_. (advise)
99. They sat \_\_\_\_\_ by the stream. (quiet)
100. To my \_\_\_\_\_, the monkey peeled a banana and offered it to me. (amaze)
101. \_\_\_\_\_ air and water are not good for our health. (pollute)
102. Air \_\_\_\_\_ makes us unhealthy. (pollute)
103. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the people in our community with the government is very necessary. (cooperate)
104. The paper mill \_\_\_\_\_ two tons of paper a day. Its \_\_\_\_\_ is one of the highest in our province. (produce)
105. My new car is more \_\_\_\_\_ than the one I had before. (economy)
106. Nothing could \_\_\_\_\_ him. (satisfaction)
107. She got great \_\_\_\_\_ of helping others. (satisfy)
108. There have been many \_\_\_\_\_ developments in the field of science. (wonder)
109. Many people say that \_\_\_\_\_ is the happiest time. (child)
110. We didn't agree with his \_\_\_\_\_. (decide)
111. Most orphans are bred in \_\_\_\_\_. (orphan)
112. Thousands of people were made \_\_\_\_\_ by the war. (home)
113. Mrs Brown lived lonely in her \_\_\_\_\_. (poor)
114. He was \_\_\_\_\_ because he could not pay his debts. (sadness)
115. Dickens' novels were first \_\_\_\_\_ in 1838. (publish)
116. I really don't think he has the \_\_\_\_\_ to do this job. (able)
117. They work \_\_\_\_\_. (good)
118. \_\_\_\_\_ covers the sky at night. (dark)
119. Hard work always brings \_\_\_\_\_. (succeed)
120. He was very \_\_\_\_\_. He was a \_\_\_\_\_. (patriotism)
121. \_\_\_\_\_ methods of farming have helped to increase rice production a great deal. (science)
122. Mr Hung went \_\_\_\_\_ last Sunday. (shop)
123. These abbreviations are \_\_\_\_\_ used in writing letters. (common)
124. I would recommend that you should be interested in reading \_\_\_\_\_ books and magazines. (education)
125. John is old enough to be \_\_\_\_\_ of his parents. (depend)
126. It takes years of \_\_\_\_\_ to acquire the skill of a ballet dancer. (practise)
127. These questions are \_\_\_\_\_. John can \_\_\_\_\_ answer them. (ease)
128. A spaceman must learn to become accustomed to \_\_\_\_\_ in a spaceship. (weight)
129. Make sure that your time is spent \_\_\_\_\_. (use)
130. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ in your project because it is \_\_\_\_\_. (interest)

131. The teacher often \_\_\_\_\_ the students to ask questions. (courage)  
132. I can't jump any \_\_\_\_\_. (height)  
133. The new law will \_\_\_\_\_ many women to return to work. (able)  
134. Many people think that Faraday is the greatest \_\_\_\_\_ in history. (invent)  
135. It was one of his most important \_\_\_\_\_. (achieve)  
136. \_\_\_\_\_ is often more useful than definition for giving the meanings of words. (illustrate)  
137. The boy was given a prize for regular \_\_\_\_\_. (attend)  
138. His discoveries had a great \_\_\_\_\_ on workers. (influential)  
139. Where were the competitions \_\_\_\_\_. (organization)  
140. The representatives joining the festival were from different \_\_\_\_\_. (national)  
141. They have a good \_\_\_\_\_ with their neighbours. (relative)  
142. He left for a \_\_\_\_\_ of reason. (vary)  
143. You can trust him. He is always \_\_\_\_\_, and everything he says is \_\_\_\_\_. (truth)  
144. Many of buildings in the city were moved to make way for \_\_\_\_\_. (develop)  
145. She has been very \_\_\_\_\_ since her husband died. (poverty)  
146. We should learn all the new words by heart in order to \_\_\_\_\_ our vocabulary. (rich)  
147. The little boy felt very \_\_\_\_\_ because his parents didn't let him go with them. (disappoint)  
148. She can't go to school because of her \_\_\_\_\_. (sick)  
149. The \_\_\_\_\_ of that little girl makes the room more pleasant. (present)  
150. \_\_\_\_\_ is a problem throughout the world. (hungry)  
151. Clever students \_\_\_\_\_ knowledge easily. (absorption)  
152. With so many choices, it's hard to \_\_\_\_\_ what to buy. (decision)  
153. The village is very quiet and \_\_\_\_\_. (peace)  
154. All my efforts ended in \_\_\_\_\_. (fail)  
155. I was \_\_\_\_\_ about the dates. (confusion)  
156. You should have a \_\_\_\_\_ about scientific subjects if you want to be a scientist. (curious)  
157. Children need to have a good \_\_\_\_\_. (educate)  
158. \_\_\_\_\_ puzzles are funny. (mathematics)  
159. You don't need to have a \_\_\_\_\_ memory to be a scientist. (miracle)  
160. Our school team won three \_\_\_\_\_ games. (succession)  
161. A scientist doesn't need a miraculous \_\_\_\_\_. (memorize)  
162. It will take a long time to find out a thorough \_\_\_\_\_ to the problem of pollution. (solve)  
163. Traveling by train is very \_\_\_\_\_. (attract)  
164. \_\_\_\_\_ have researched \_\_\_\_\_ subjects. (science)  
165. Countless \_\_\_\_\_ have been made in the textile industry. (improve)

166. His father is an \_\_\_\_\_. (architecture)
167. The \_\_\_\_\_ of world population is being studied. (grow)
168. Japan is an \_\_\_\_\_ country. (industry)
169. She's so busy with \_\_\_\_\_ activities that she has no time for entertainment. (society)
170. Every \_\_\_\_\_ in science helps you gain new knowledge. (succeed)
171. Coke is a \_\_\_\_\_ of cola flavour, water carbon dioxide and sugar. (mix)
172. Some experts say cycling is one of the \_\_\_\_\_ form of exercise. (safety)
173. Is there any \_\_\_\_\_ to treat her so badly? (necessary)
174. After the hot summer, there was a \_\_\_\_\_ of water. (short)
175. The \_\_\_\_\_ will make him a rich man. (inherit)
176. The \_\_\_\_\_ to the questions are at the back of the book. (solve)
177. I'll give you three sweets in \_\_\_\_\_ for an apple. (exchange)
178. In some countries, black people do not have \_\_\_\_\_ with white people. (equal)
179. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ life without electricity and other modern conveniences? (imagination)
180. Mrs Tam has just bought a \_\_\_\_\_ object. It doesn't cost even a pence. (value)
181. The United Nations \_\_\_\_\_ is an international one. (organize)
182. Banks make loans to \_\_\_\_\_. (borrow)
183. Banks provide \_\_\_\_\_ which make it easier for us to pay bills and carry on business. (serve)
184. The \_\_\_\_\_ unit in France was the Franc. (money)
185. I'm worried about the \_\_\_\_\_ of the children. (safe)
186. What do you call the \_\_\_\_\_ relations among countries? (nation)
187. This restaurant is \_\_\_\_\_ for its western meals. (fame)
188. They all passed their exams without the slightest \_\_\_\_\_. (difficult)
189. Applied sciences have \_\_\_\_\_ our homes. (electrification)
190. The \_\_\_\_\_ of a famous doctor was announced last night. (die)
191. Don't leave the lights on. It wastes \_\_\_\_\_. (electric)
192. These countries are \_\_\_\_\_ in imports of raw cotton. (prefer)
193. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the moon for the earth causes the tides. (attract)
194. We \_\_\_\_\_ go out for dinner but we cook our own meals most of the time. (occasion)
195. Travelling a lot will \_\_\_\_\_ our minds. (broad)
196. In some countries, \_\_\_\_\_ has made young people buy things they don't need. (advertise)
197. I can say with \_\_\_\_\_ that you have made much progress in learning English. (certain)
198. The company is very efficient and gives a \_\_\_\_\_ service. (speed)
199. You are very \_\_\_\_\_. (intelligence)
200. People must have \_\_\_\_\_ for the air pollution. (responsible)

201. Special drugs should be \_\_\_\_\_ and dispensed carefully. (manufacture)
202. Do you like \_\_\_\_\_? (chemist)
203. We have some \_\_\_\_\_ for typists. (vacant)
204. He often went to work late, \_\_\_\_\_ he was sacked. (consequence)
205. He was \_\_\_\_\_ because of his illness. (absence)
206. They looked at him in \_\_\_\_\_. (astonish)
207. They live with a great \_\_\_\_\_ belief. (religion)
208. Please don't ask such \_\_\_\_\_. questions. (person)
209. He is \_\_\_\_\_ with his new job. (satisfy)
210. This sun block lotion gives good \_\_\_\_\_ against harmful ultraviolet rays. (protect)
211. She was too \_\_\_\_\_ to tell her teacher about the stupid mistakes. (shame)
212. This photo has just been \_\_\_\_\_. (large)
213. He always feels \_\_\_\_\_ in class because of his laziness. (sleep)
214. She failed the driving test because she didn't follow the guidance of driving \_\_\_\_\_. (instruct)
215. He \_\_\_\_\_ agreed to my suggestion. (ready)
216. The island is \_\_\_\_\_ only by boat. (access)
217. They spent all their money and made no \_\_\_\_\_ for their future. (provide)
218. When foreigners ask him, he answers in English \_\_\_\_\_. (automatic)
219. What he has explained about that problem is \_\_\_\_\_. (reason)
220. You must always tell the \_\_\_\_\_. (truth)
221. The girl looked \_\_\_\_\_ for a moment and then answered. (think)
222. The country's \_\_\_\_\_ resources include forests, coal and oil. (nature)
223. The agency offers practical \_\_\_\_\_ to people starting their own business. (guide)
224. There is a \_\_\_\_\_ to overcome the problems. (determined)
225. We were \_\_\_\_\_ that she would be angry. (fear)
226. These closures will mean \_\_\_\_\_ for about 500 workers. (employ)
227. The house was \_\_\_\_\_ with people. (crowd)
228. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ sorry for the delay. (extreme)
229. Because of his love for teaching, David would \_\_\_\_\_ his teaching career. (continuous)
230. It is often useful to make a \_\_\_\_\_ between two things. (compare)
231. He was \_\_\_\_\_ for the job by a committee. (selection)
232. \_\_\_\_\_ compounds are often used for fertilizers. (chemist)
233. The smoke that comes from a lit cigarette contains many different \_\_\_\_\_ chemicals. (poison)
234. Many \_\_\_\_\_ developed countries spend much money preventing environmental pollution. (industry)
235. Our atmosphere is becoming more and more \_\_\_\_\_. (contaminate)

236. It is \_\_\_\_\_ to drive on the left in Vietnam. (legal)
237. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ what this word means? (explanation)
238. American women are used to being \_\_\_\_\_. (independence)
239. We'd love to take up your \_\_\_\_\_ to visit you some time. (invite)
240. You should spend your money \_\_\_\_\_. (economy)
241. The accident \_\_\_\_\_ him for life. (deaf)
242. The workers have to know the \_\_\_\_\_ of these devices. (intense)
243. He has stood for two hours outside of the \_\_\_\_\_ room. (surgery)
244. Skilled workers are \_\_\_\_\_ admitted. (prefer)
245. She's conservative. She doesn't want any \_\_\_\_\_. (transform)
246. A few diseases are still \_\_\_\_\_ in the world. (treat)
247. Treating diseases by the laser is really a \_\_\_\_\_. (miraculously)
248. He always tells lies. His words are \_\_\_\_\_. (value)
249. The dog took \_\_\_\_\_ in the fire. (satisfy)
250. There was no keen \_\_\_\_\_ between the dog and the man. (intimate)
251. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ bad habits in a child. (courage)
252. Don't be so \_\_\_\_\_. We've only been waiting a few minutes. (patient)
253. No one can measure the \_\_\_\_\_ of this river. (deep)
254. The town is \_\_\_\_\_ situated on the River Ouse. (attract)
255. Playing the piano well is one of his greatest \_\_\_\_\_. (satisfy)
256. The plane arrived \_\_\_\_\_ after a violent storm. (safe)
257. When did \_\_\_\_\_ come to the village? (electric)
258. These snakes will not cause you any serious \_\_\_\_\_. even if they bite you. They are \_\_\_\_\_. (harm)
259. She is an \_\_\_\_\_ mother in a few weeks more. (expect)
260. He has no \_\_\_\_\_ of leaving the city. (intend)
261. Some children have to suffer from lifetime \_\_\_\_\_. (abnormal)
262. Women nowadays have more \_\_\_\_\_ to participate in social activities. (free)
263. If you burn the garbage, it'll give off \_\_\_\_\_ odour. (poison)
264. We can prevent flood by \_\_\_\_\_ the forests. (preserve)
265. I like your new \_\_\_\_\_ machine. (calculate)
266. May I borrow your \_\_\_\_\_? (calculate)
267. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ money to buy a bicycle, so I'm a \_\_\_\_\_ and my money is \_\_\_\_\_. (save)
268. \_\_\_\_\_ is my hobby. I often have a \_\_\_\_\_ when I'm free. (swim)
269. Farmers can help \_\_\_\_\_ the soil by adding fertilizers. (rich)
270. Banking is the business of receiving, \_\_\_\_\_, and lending the money. (safeguard)

## C- ACRONYMS

Acronyms là từ viết tắt được tạo thành từ các mảng tự đầu của một cụm từ.

\* Sau đây là một số *acronyms* thông thường:

- LASER: Light Amplification by Stimulated Emission of Radiation  
(Sự khuyếch đại ánh sáng bằng cách kích thích phát ra tia bức xạ)
- CARE: Cooperative for American Relief Everywhere (Tổ chức cứu tế khắp nơi của Mỹ)
- AIDS: Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome (Hội chứng suy giảm miễn dịch mắc phải)
- UNICEF: United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund  
(Quỹ bảo trợ Nhi đồng của Liên Hiệp Quốc)
- BASIC: Beginner's All-purpose Symbolic Instruction Code  
(Ký hiệu hướng dẫn đa dụng dành cho người bắt đầu sử dụng máy vi tính)
- GATT: General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade  
(Hiệp ước chung về thuế quan và mậu dịch)
- NATO: North Atlantic Treaty Organisation (Tổ chức hiệp ước Bắc Đại Tây Dương)
- SALT: Strategic Arms Limitation Talk  
(Các cuộc đàm phán về việc giới hạn vũ khí chiến lược)
- UFO: Unidentified Flying Object (Vật bay không xác định)
- UNO: United Nations Organisation (Tổ chức Liên Hiệp Quốc)
- VAT: Value Added Tax (Thuế giá trị gia tăng)
- WHO: World Health Organisation (Tổ chức y tế thế giới)
- WAC: Women's Army Corps (Quân Đoàn phụ nữ)
- VIP: very important person (nhân vật rất quan trọng)
- TU: Trade Union (Công đoàn)
- AGM: Annual General Meeting (Cuộc họp chung hàng năm)
- BBC: British Broadcasting Corporation (Chương trình phát thanh Anh Quốc)
- FIFA: International Federation of Football Associations (Liên đoàn bóng đá quốc tế)
- FAO: Food and Agricultural Organisation (Tổ chức thực phẩm và công nghiệp)
- ILO: International Labour Organisation (Tổ chức lao động quốc tế)
- IMF: International Monetary Fund (Quỹ tiền tệ quốc tế)
- MA: Master of Arts (Thạc sĩ văn chương)
- B.A: Bachelor of Arts (Cử nhân văn chương)
- POW: Prisoner of War (Tù nhân chiến tranh)
- SEATO: South East Asia Treaty Organisation (Tổ chức hiệp ước Đông Nam Á)
- EEC: European Economic Community (Công đồng kinh tế châu Âu)
- RADAR: Radio Detective and Ranging (Máy vô tuyến dò tìm và phân loại)

## D. IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS (THÀNH NGỮ)

### Thành ngữ có cấu trúc

#### VERB + NOUN (PHRASE) + PREPOSITION

\* Sau đây là một số thành ngữ thường gặp:

catch sight of : bắt gặp, nhìn thấy

give place to : nhường chỗ

give way to : nhượng bộ, chịu thua

keep pace with/ keep up with : sánh kịp,  
bắt kịp

lose sight of : mất hút, không nhìn thấy

make allowance for : chiều cố đến

make fun of : chế nhạo

make a fuss over/ about : làm rối tung  
lên, làm om sòm

make room for : dọn chỗ cho

make use of : dùng, sử dụng

lose touch with : mất liên lạc

lose track of : mất dấu

put a stop to : làm ngừng lại

take account of : để ý đến, lưu tâm

take care of : chăm sóc

take notice of : lưu ý

pay attention to : chú ý tới

put an end to : kết thúc

set fire to : làm cháy, thiêu

take advantage of : lợi dụng

take note of : để ý, ghi chép

take leave of : từ biệt

give birth to : sanh con

make a contribution to : góp phần

keep correspondence with : liên lạc thư từ

show affection for : có cảm tình

feel pity for/ take (have) : thương xót

feel regret for : hối tiếc, ân hận

pity on .

feel sympathy for : thông cảm

make a decision on/ make up one's mind : quyết định

make complaint about : kêu ca, phàn nàn

feel shame at : xấu hổ

have a look at : nhìn ngắm

get victory over : chiến thắng

play an influence over : có ảnh hưởng

have faith in : tin tưởng

take interest in : quan tâm, thích thú

## EXERCISES

Fill in the blank with a suitable idiomatic expression.

1. She was furious that she was being \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The house has been remodeled and \_\_\_\_\_.
3. He left home without \_\_\_\_\_ anybody.
4. The woman \_\_\_\_\_ whom you \_\_\_\_\_ on the bus this morning is my aunt.
5. The baby \_\_\_\_\_ whom she's going to \_\_\_\_\_ will bring her happiness.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ having deceived her.
7. Tom and Dick are carrying on a discussion which I want to \_\_\_\_\_.
8. This is a rare opportunity \_\_\_\_\_ which you should \_\_\_\_\_ to get a better job.

9. Mr Smith is my old teacher whom I have for a long time. I do not know his present address.
10. Who will the children when you are away?
11. My father does not like politics. He does not political problems and current events.
12. She always the increase of the price of goods.
13. Mary was sad and ashamed because you her.
14. They are good poor students whom the school has to .
15. You have to study harder in order to your classmates.
16. This shop is so small that we didn't it.
17. Mrs Smith is a very clement woman. She orphans and beggars.
18. Do you the "No Parking" sign?
19. The matter the press are is high officials' corruption.
20. We have to move this box in order to the new TV set.
21. I have some friends living in USA. I often them.
22. Your manner is quite ridiculous. I it.
23. The teacher says that we have to our exam papers before ten.
24. For generations our people many enemies and drove them away.
25. The police followed the robbers but finally they them.
26. The Press is called the fourth estate. It the public opinion.
27. I do not long-hair young men.
28. Do you know how to this electronic computer.
29. We should the suffering of others.
30. English is a very important language. We learning it very much.
31. The houses which the pyromaniac last night are not far from our home.
32. The boys are miserable. I them.
33. We are looking at the boat in the open sea, and soon we it.
34. Please this photograph and tell me where your teacher is.
35. Did you Paul in the bookshop yesterday?
36. Have you the day to start off?
37. Every citizen has to the building of his country.
38. We know he works very hard. We his success.
39. The difficulties are so great that I have to them.
40. The rich should the poor.
41. Why do you often your neighbours?
42. Anyhow he's a good man. I think we ought to be generous to him and his family circumstances.
43. I haven't sent letters to her for a long time. In fact, we have with each other.

44. You have to move this table to \_\_\_\_\_ the new television set.
45. Have they \_\_\_\_\_ the "No Smoking" sign?
46. I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ this opportunity to explain the difficulty I've met.
47. He ran as fast as he could, but he was not able to \_\_\_\_\_ his brother.
48. We have to \_\_\_\_\_ these difficult circumstances.
49. He lost control of his temper and \_\_\_\_\_ his anger.
50. Be calm, and don't \_\_\_\_\_ such trifles.
51. You should \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher's explanation.
52. I tried to run after her but I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ her.
53. She decided to \_\_\_\_\_ these letters because they weren't necessary.
54. Her mother was sick, so Linda had to stay at home to \_\_\_\_\_ her.
55. I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ this opportunity to get a new job with higher wage.
56. I have \_\_\_\_\_ him since we left school.
57. Don't you \_\_\_\_\_ him. He is a pity boy.
58. You must \_\_\_\_\_ many opportunities you have to practise speaking English.
59. If we correspond regularly, we won't \_\_\_\_\_ each other.
60. If I \_\_\_\_\_ you in the city again, I'll call the police.
61. If he \_\_\_\_\_ what the teacher says, he might make progress.
62. Tom is old enough to \_\_\_\_\_ himself.
63. You should \_\_\_\_\_ what the teacher says in class.
64. This man was sent to prison for \_\_\_\_\_ his house.
65. It's cruel to \_\_\_\_\_ handicapped people.
66. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ such an unimportant problem.
67. The police followed the thieves but finally they \_\_\_\_\_ them.
68. They don't know how to \_\_\_\_\_ the tool.
69. He was accused of \_\_\_\_\_ the house.
70. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ what he says. He is a liar.
71. On the way home from work today, I \_\_\_\_\_ my old friend.
72. The pile of papers couldn't catch fire by itself. Someone must have \_\_\_\_\_ it.
73. I'm determined to \_\_\_\_\_ all these rumours.
74. Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ her because she is wearing such a funny hat.
75. The teacher promised to \_\_\_\_\_ wishes of the students' parents.

# REPORTED SPEECH

## (LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP)

**Lời nói gián tiếp** (indirect/ reported speech) là lời tường thuật lại ý của người nói.

- Nếu động từ của mệnh đề chính ở thì simple present (say), present perfect (have/ has said) hoặc simple future (will say) thì trong lời trích dẫn ta chỉ đổi đại từ (pronouns) và chia động từ cho thích hợp với đại từ đó.

Ex: The farmer says, "I hope it will rain tomorrow."

→ The farmer says that he hopes it will rain tomorrow.

She has said, "I'm tired now."

→ She has said that she is tired now.

- Nếu động từ trong mệnh đề chính ở thì simple past (said) thì trong lời trích dẫn ta phải đổi thì, đại từ và một số từ hoặc cụm từ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn.

\* Khi chuyển từ lời nói trực tiếp sang lời nói gián tiếp, ta cần lưu ý đến một số thay đổi sau:

### 1. Thay đổi thì động từ (changes in tenses of verbs)

Trực tiếp	Gián tiếp	Ví dụ
Simple Present	Simple Past	"I feel sick." He said he <u>felt</u> sick.
Present Continuous	Past Continuous	"I'm writing a letter." He said he <u>was writing</u> a letter.
Simple Past	Past Perfect	"I arrived at 5p.m." He said he <u>had arrived</u> at 5p.m.
Present Perfect	Past Perfect	"I have seen that film." He said he <u>had seen</u> that film.
Past Continuous/ Perfect Continuous	Past Perfect Cont.	"I was living in Vienna then." He said he <u>had been living</u> in Vienna then.
Simple Future	Future in the Past	"I shall go to Japan in July." He said he <u>would go to</u> Japan in July.

- Ta có thể dùng thì simple present thay vì simple past trong lời nói gián tiếp khi diễn tả một thói quen hay một chân lý.

Ex: "I work late every evening." → He said he works/ worked late every evening.

"The sun rises in the East." → The teacher said the sun rises/ rose in the East.

- Đối với các động từ khiếm khuyết (modal verbs) không có dạng quá khứ, ta có thể mượn các động từ có cùng nghĩa.

must → had to/ would have to

must not → was/ were not to

can → could/ be able to

may → might

will/ shall → would/ should/ be going to

## 2. Thay đổi tính từ và trạng từ (changes in adjectives and adverbs)

Trực tiếp	Gián tiếp	Ví dụ
This	That	"I need <u>this</u> book." He said he needed <u>that</u> book.
These	Those	"I'll take <u>these</u> with me." He said he would take <u>those</u> with him.
Here	There	"I'll return <u>here</u> at 3 o'clock." He said he would return <u>there</u> ...
Now	Then	"I'm going <u>now</u> ." He said he was going <u>then</u> .
Today	That day	"I'll do it <u>today</u> ." He said he would do it <u>that day</u> .
Yesterday	The day before	"I was in Hue <u>yesterday</u> ."
	The previous day	He said he had been in Hue <u>the day before</u> .
Tomorrow	The day after	"We'll wait until <u>tomorrow</u> ."
	The following day	They said they would wait until <u>the day after</u> .
Ago	Before	"I was in Dalat three weeks <u>ago</u> ." He said he had been in Dalat three weeks <u>before</u> .
Next week	The week after	"I'll come to see her <u>next week</u> ." He said he would come to see her <u>the week after</u> .
	The following week	

### ☆ Cách đổi câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp

### L Câu mệnh lệnh và câu yêu cầu (orders and requests)

Câu mệnh lệnh, yêu cầu, đề nghị được đổi từ trực tiếp sang gián tiếp thường được mở đầu bằng những động từ như: *order, command, tell, ask, request, ...* và sau là tân ngữ trực tiếp chỉ người nhận lệnh + động từ nguyên mẫu (object + to-infinitive).

Ex: "Hurry up, Lan." → He told Lan to hurry up.

"Shut the door." → He ordered them to shut the door.

"Don't leave the room." → He ordered them not to leave the room.

"Please don't tell anybody what happened."

→ She asked me not to tell anybody what (had) happened.

### II. Câu hỏi (questions)

Có hai loại câu hỏi: Câu hỏi Yes-No và câu hỏi Why-

#### 1. Câu hỏi Yes - No (Yes - No questions)

- Trong lời nói gián tiếp loại câu hỏi này được mở đầu bằng các động từ *ask, inquire, wonder, want to know, ...*

- Dùng *if* hoặc *whether* ngay sau động từ giới thiệu của mệnh đề chính.

- Đổi trật tự câu hỏi thành câu trần thuật và đổi các đại từ, tính từ, thì của động từ...

Ex: "Have you seen that film?" → He asked if/ whether she had seen that film.

"Will Tom be here tomorrow?" → She wondered if/ whether Tom would be there the day after.

## 2. Câu hỏi Wh- (WH - Questions: mở đầu bằng các nghi vấn từ như *who, what, where, when, ...*)

- Trong lời nói gián tiếp loại câu hỏi này được mở đầu bằng các động từ *ask, require, wonder, want to know, ...*.
- Lặp lại từ để hỏi (*what, when, where, ...*) sau động từ giới thiệu.
- Đổi trật tự câu hỏi thành câu trần thuật và đổi các đại từ, tính từ, thì của động từ,...  
Ex: "What time does the film begin?"  
→ He wanted to know what time the film began.  
"What will happen if she can not find her passport?"  
→ He wondered what would happen if she could not find her passport.

Lưu ý: Trong trường hợp câu trực tiếp có cả câu trần thuật lẫn câu hỏi thì khi đổi sang câu gián tiếp, phần nào vẫn cứ đổi theo phần ấy.

- Ex: "I have left my watch at home. Can you tell me the time?"  
→ He said that he had left his watch at home and asked me if I could tell him the time.

## III. Câu cảm thán (exclamations)

Câu cảm thán thường được thuật lại bằng động từ *exclaim/ say that*.

- Ex: "What a lovely garden they have!"  
→ He exclaimed/ said that what a lovely garden they had.  
"How hot it is!" → He exclaimed/ said that how hot it was.

## IV. Câu trần thuật (statements)

- Câu trần thuật được đổi từ trực tiếp sang gián tiếp thường được mở đầu bằng các động từ *say, tell, ...*  
to say (that) ... to say to somebody... to tell somebody...
- Đổi các đại từ nhân xưng, tính từ hoặc đại từ sở hữu sao cho tương ứng với chủ ngữ hoặc tên ngữ mệnh đề chính.
- Đổi thì của động từ thành thì quá khứ tương ứng.
- Đổi một số tính từ chỉ định và trạng từ hoặc cụm trạng từ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn

- Ex: "I saw her yesterday"  
→ He said he had seen her the day before/ the previous day.

### \* Trường hợp đặc biệt (Special cases)

Khi đổi từ câu nói trực tiếp sang gián tiếp, ta không đổi thì trong mệnh đề phụ ở các trường hợp sau dù mệnh đề chính ở thì quá khứ.

#### 1. Động từ trong câu nói trực tiếp có thời gian xác định.

- Ex: He said, "I was born in 1980". → He said that he was born in 1980.

#### 2. Câu điều kiện loại 2, 3.

- Ex: He said, "If I were you, I wouldn't come here."  
→ He said if he were me he wouldn't come there.

#### 3. Quá khứ giả định (trong wish-clause, as if, ...)

- Ex: Mary said, "I wish I were a boy".  
→ Mary said that she wished she were a boy.

4. Trong lời nói trực tiếp có: *could* *would*, *should*, *might*, *used to*, *ought to*, *would rather*, *had better*, ...

Ex: Tom said to me, "You had better not contact her".

→ Tome said to me I had better not contact her.

5. Lời nói trực tiếp diễn tả một chân lý hoặc một tình huống không đổi.

Ex: My teacher said, "The sun rises in the East".

→ My teacher said the sun rises in the East.

## EXERCISES

Put the following sentences into indirect speech.

1. He said to her, "You are my friend."
2. Johnny said to his mother, "I don't know how to do this exercise."
3. "Don't come back before one o'clock", advised my brother.
4. "Cook it in butter", Mrs Brown said to her daughter.
5. The pupils said to their teacher, "Please give us better marks."
6. "Pull as hard as you can", she said to me.
7. "Who put salt in my coffee?", he asked.
8. My friend said, "Are you going to leave tomorrow?"
9. "Have you done your homework?", said my mother.
10. I asked Bill, "What time did you go to bed last night?"
11. Paul said "I must go home now."
12. "There's been an accident and the road is blocked", said the policeman.
13. "We are waiting for the school bus", said the children.
14. Mary said, "My father died a year ago."
15. "Must you go now?", said Mr. Brown.
16. "Whose bicycle did you borrow yesterday?", his mother asked him.
17. "It isn't so foggy today as it was yesterday", said the teacher.
18. "Be modest if you are a good pupil", said my father.
19. "Shut the door but don't lock it", she said to us.
20. Tom said, "New York is bigger than London."
21. "Please help us," they said to us.
22. "Don't forget to send your parents my regards", she said to me.
23. The traveller asked, "How long does it take to get to London?"
24. John said, "I have finished studying my lesson."
25. Mary said, "I can not go to the movies with you, John."
26. He asked me, "Why didn't you come to class yesterday?"
27. "Did you phone me yesterday?" Tom asked Mary.
28. "Do you like it?" - "Yes"
29. "I didn't know them. Did you, Tom?" she asked.
30. "Avoid the Marble Arch" said the policeman "There's going to be a big demonstration here."
31. "Don't take more than two of these at once", said the doctor, handing me a bottle of pills.

32. They said to me, "Let's go to the zoo."
33. "I shouldn't do that if I were you. Isn't it very dangerous?" He said.
34. "When we've finished this game we'll have supper." They said to me.
35. "Have you got any shampoo, Alice. I must wash my hair." Johny asked.
36. He said to me "Listen! Can you hear someone coming?"
37. "Do as I tell you or you'll be punished. I'll teach you who is master in this house", he said.
38. "When you have cleaned the sitting room, will you please light the fire there? It's rather chilly today", my mother said to me.
39. "I shall expect to see you next Wednesday." Mary said to her friend.
40. The teacher asked "Which book are you taking, John?"
41. I asked the policeman "Do you know how far it is to the station?"
42. "What a dirty face you have!" Ann said to her son.
43. "Don't you know how to behave? There must be no talking in lessons". The teacher told his pupils.
44. "I wonder who is coming on the excursion tomorrow. I do hope it won't rain." She said.
45. "Do as you are told. You are a naughty boy." Mrs Brown said.
46. "It's a very nice evening. Why don't we go for a walk?" Jim suggested.
47. "You must decide what you want to do", she said to her daughter.
48. Mary asked me "Can you tell me why you are so sad?"
49. Jane said to John "Who will come to the movies with me?"
50. "Will you please find out when he last wrote to me?" Jane said to her friend.

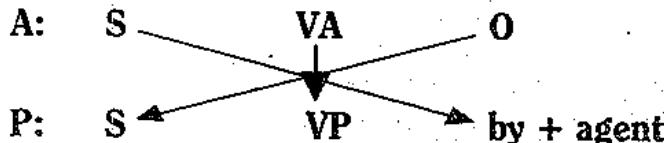
## THE PASSIVE AND ACTIVE SENTENCES (CÂU CHỦ ĐỘNG - CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG)

### QUAN SÁT:

- Câu chủ động (Active sentences): Mr. Smith teaches English.
- Câu bị động (Passive sentences): English is taught by Mr. Smith.

### QUY TẮC:

*Muốn chuyển một câu chủ động sang câu bị động, ta thực hiện các bước sau:*



### 1. Tân ngữ chủ động → chủ ngữ bị động

Lấy tân ngữ của câu chủ động làm chủ ngữ của câu bị động.

Ex: My father built the house. → The house was built by my father.

- Nếu động từ chủ động có hai tân ngữ thì một trong hai tân ngữ có thể dùng làm chủ ngữ trong câu bị động. Tuy nhiên tân ngữ về người được sử dụng nhiều hơn.

Ex: I'm writing her a letter.

→ She is being written a letter.

→ A letter is being written to her.

## 2. Động từ bị động

### BE + PAST PARTICIPLE

Nếu động từ chủ động ở thì *simple present* hoặc *simple past* thì động từ trong câu bị động sẽ là:

### AM, IS, ARE WAS, WERE + PAST PARTICIPLE

Ex: John delivers the newspapers every morning.

→ The newspapers are delivered by John every morning.

My mother wrote that letter.

→ That letter was written by my mother.

Nếu động từ chủ động ở thì *present continuous* hoặc *past continuous* thì động từ trong câu bị động sẽ là:

### AM, IS, ARE WAS, WERE + BEING + PAST PARTICIPLE

Ex: He is asking me a lot of questions.

→ I am being asked a lot of questions.

She was doing her homework at that time.

→ Her homework was being done at that time.

Nếu động từ chủ động ở thì *present perfect* hoặc *past perfect* thì động từ trong câu bị động sẽ là:

### HAVE, HAS HAD + BEEN + PAST PARTICIPLE

Ex: My mother has made that cake.

→ That cake has been made by my mother.

They had prepared a dinner before we came.

→ A dinner had been prepared before we came.

Nếu động từ chủ động dùng với các động từ như *can*, *may*, *must*, *will*, *shall*, *have to*, *used to*, ... thì động từ trong câu sẽ là:

### CAN, MAY, ... + BE + PAST PARTICIPLE

Ex: My friend can answer this question.

→ This question can be answered by my friend.

The manager should sign these contracts today.

→ These contracts should be signed by the manager today.

## 3. Chủ ngữ chủ động → BY + tân ngữ bị động

Ex: My mother made this cake. → This cake was made by my mother.

*Me, you, him, them, people, someone, ...* thường được bỏ trong câu bị động nếu không muốn nêu rõ tác nhân.

Ex: Someone has sent me the flowers. → I have been sent the flowers.

Nếu tân ngữ trong câu bị động chỉ sự vật, sự việc thì ta dùng giới từ *with* thay *by* trước tân ngữ ấy.

Ex: Smoke filled the room. → The room was filled with smoke.

#### 4. Vị trí của trạng từ hoặc trạng ngữ trong câu bị động.

- Trạng từ/ trạng ngữ chỉ nơi chốn đứng trước by + tân ngữ bị động.

Ex: The police found him in the forest.

→ He was found in the forest by the police.

- Trạng từ/ trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian đứng sau by + tân ngữ bị động.

Ex: My parents are going to buy a car tomorrow.

→ A car is going to be bought by my parents tomorrow.

- Trạng từ chỉ thể cách (adverbs of manner) thường đứng giữa be và quá khứ phân từ.

Ex: The scientists have studied the problem carefully.

→ The problem has been carefully studied by the scientists.

### ★ Một số dạng câu bị động

#### 1. Thể sai khiến (Causative form): HAVE, GET

**Active :** Subject + HAVE + object (person) + bare-infinitive + object

**Passive :** Subject + HAVE + object (thing) + past participle (+ by + object (person))

Ex: I had him repair my bicycle yesterday.

→ I had my bicycle repaired yesterday.

**Active :** Subject + GET + object (person) + to infinitive + object (thing)

**Passive :** Subject + GET + object (thing) + past participle (+ by + obj: (person))

Ex: I get her to make some coffee.

→ I get some coffee made.

#### 2. Động từ chỉ giác quan (Verbs of perception): see, watch, hear, look, taste,...

**Active:** Subject + verb + object + bare infinitive/ V-ing + ...

**Passive:** Subject + be + past participle + to infinitive/ V-ing + ...

Ex: They saw her come in.

→ She was seen to come in.

They saw the lorry running down the hill.

→ The lorry was seen running down the hill.

#### 3. Động từ chỉ ý kiến (Verbs of opinion): say, think, believe, report, rumour, ...

**Active:** Subject + verb + (that) + clause (S<sub>2</sub> + V<sub>2</sub> + O<sub>2</sub>...)

**Passive:** • It + be + verb (past participle) + (that) + clause

• S<sub>2</sub> + be + verb (past participle) + to infinitive...

+ to have + past participle

Ex: People say that he is a famous doctor.

→ It is said that he is a famous doctor.

→ He is said to be a famous doctor.

Ex: They thought that Mary had gone away.

→ It was thought that Mary had gone away.

→ Mary was thought to have gone away.

#### 4. Câu mệnh lệnh (Imperative sentences)

**Active : Verb + object + adjunct.**

**Passive : Let + object + be + past participle + adjunct.**

Ex: Write your name here. → Let your name be written here.

**Active : (Subject) + let + sb + do + sth**

**Passive : Subject + be + let/ allowed + to-infinitive**

Ex: He let me go out. → I was let/ allowed to go out.

## EXERCISES

### I. Put the following into the passive voice.

1. They can't make tea with cold water.
2. The chief engineer was instructing all the workers of the plant.
3. Somebody has taken some of my books away.
4. They will hold the meeting before May Day.
5. They have to repair the engine of the car.
6. The boys broke the window and took away some pictures.
7. People spend a lot of money on advertising every day.
8. They may use this room for the classroom.
9. The teacher is going to tell a story.
10. Mary is cutting the cake with a sharp knife.
11. The children looked at the women with a red hat.
12. They have provided the victims with food and clothing.
13. People speak English in almost every corner of the world.
14. You mustn't use this machine after 5:30 p.m.
15. Luckily for me, they didn't call my name.
16. After class, one of the students always erases the chalk board.
17. You must clean the wall before you paint it.
18. They told the new pupil where to sit.
19. I knew that they had told him of the meeting.
20. Nobody has ever treated me with such kindness.
21. No one believes his story.
22. A sudden increase in water pressure may break the dam.
23. We must take good care of books borrowed from the library.
24. A man I know told me about it.
25. We can never find him at home for he is always on the move.
26. They use milk for making butter and cheese.
27. Science and Technology have completely changed human life.
28. John used to visit My Cole at weekends.
29. Weeds cover the river bank.
30. Smoke filled the room.

## **II. Turn the following sentences into the active voice.**

1. These exercises were done well.
2. This dress must be washed in cold water.
3. No mistakes have been made in his composition.
4. His painting will be exhibited for the first time by New Arts gallery.
5. This house was built 100 years ago.
6. These artificial flowers are made of silk.
7. The lessons are being written by the students now.
8. This job has to be done at once.
9. These animals at the zoo are fed twice a day.
10. The operation is going to be performed by French doctors.
11. All the arrangements have been made.
12. When was this radio manufactured?
13. They couldn't be found anywhere.
14. Is mathematics taught in this school?
15. Fortunately the machinery wasn't damaged by the accident.
16. Please wait here while your luggage is being examined.
17. How are candles made?
18. For a long time the earth was believed to be flat.
19. Were you taught how to apply this theory by your teacher?
20. Apples are said to be good for our health.
21. Don't let the dog be teased by the children.
22. It is believed that red is the symbol of luck.
23. What have been done to help the poor in this city?
24. The jewelry must have been stolen while she was out.
25. Where did the treasure used to be hidden by pirates in the old time?

## **III. Put the following into the passive voice.**

### **1. Yes - No questions:**

1. Do they teach English here?
2. Will you invite her to your wedding party?
3. Did the teacher give some exercises?
4. Is she going to write a poem?
5. Have they changed the window of the laboratory?
6. Is she making big cakes for the party?
7. Has Tom finished the work?
8. Are the police making inquiries about the thief?
9. Must we finish the test before ten?
10. Will buses bring the children home?

### **2. Wh- questions:**

11. Why didn't they help him?

12. How many games has the team played?

13. Where do people speak English?

14. Who are they keeping in the kitchen?

15. How can they open this safe?

16. What books are people reading this year?

17. How did the police find the lost man?

18. Who looked after the children for you?

19. How long have they waited for the doctor?

20. What time can the boys hand in their papers?

### 3. Sentences with two objects:

21. The teacher gave each of us two exercise books.

22. Someone will tell him that news.

23. They have sent enough money to these poor boys.

24. They have given the women in most countries in the world the right to vote.

25. They paid me a lot of money to do the job.

### 4. Sentences with verbs of reporting:

26. People believe that 13 is an unlucky number.

27. They rumoured the man was still living.

28. They declared that she won the competition.

29. They know that English is an international language.

30. People think that Jack London's life and writings represent the American love of adventure.

31. They say that John is the brightest student in class.

32. They reported that the President had suffered a heart attack.

33. They think that he has died a natural death.

34. They reported that the troops were coming.

35. People believed that the earth stood still.

### 5. Sentences with verbs *continue* and *begin*.

36. We'll continue to use this computer.

37. They began to plant rubber trees in big plantations.

38. People can continue to enjoy natural resources.

39. People will continue to drink Coca-Cola in the 21st century.

40. American people begin to love football.

### 6. Sentences with phrasal verbs:

41. They gave up the research after three hours.

42. Someone should look into the matter.

43. Don't speak until someone speaks to you.

44. A neighbour is looking after the children.

45. Your story brings back pleasant memories.

## **7. Sentences with verbs of perception:**

46. I have heard her sing this song several times.
47. People saw him steal your car.
48. The teacher is watching them work.
49. He won't let you do that silly thing again.
50. People don't make the children work hard.
51. They made him work all day.
52. The detective saw the woman putting the jewelry in her bag.
53. The terrorists made the hostages lie down.
54. Police advise drivers to use an alternative route.
55. She helps me to do all these difficult exercises.

## **8. Sentences of order:**

56. Open your book.
57. Take off your hat.
58. Don't do that silly thing again.
59. Let's tell them about it.
60. Don't let the other see you.

## **9. Sentences with "advise, beg, order, urge, agree, decide, ..."**

61. She advised me to sell that house.
62. They begged us to help him.
63. He orders us to clean the floor.
64. He recommends me to do the job.
65. She urged him to visit her parents as soon as possible.

## **10. Some special sentences:**

66. It is dangerous for us to take the short cut.
67. You need to have your hair cut.
68. You must see it to believe it.
69. He wants someone to take some photographs.
70. We enjoy writing letters.

## **IV. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. Toshico had her car (repair) by a mechanic.
2. Ellen got Marvin (type) her paper.
3. We got our house (paint) last week.
4. Dr. Byrd is having the students (write) a composition.
5. Mark got his transcripts (send) to the university.
6. Maria is having her hair (cut) tomorrow.
7. Will Mr Brown have the porter (carry) his luggage to his car?
8. My sister has had a new dress (make) recently.
9. The Wilsons won't have a new house (build) on that corner next month.
10. The President had his advisors (arrange) a press conference.

# SENTENCES (CÂU)

Câu là một nhóm từ thường bao gồm một chủ ngữ và một động từ, diễn đạt một lời nói, câu hỏi hoặc một mệnh lệnh.

## I. Phân loại câu (Classification of sentences)

Câu được chia làm 4 loại:

1. Câu trấn thuât (Declarative sentences): Cho người khác biết ý nghĩ và tình cảm của mình.

Ex: It's hot today.

He speaks English very well.

2. Câu nghi vấn (Interrogative sentences): Tìm hiểu ý kiến, tình cảm của người khác hoặc tìm hiểu thông tin về một người, sự vật, sự việc nào đó.

Ex: Is it hot today?

Does he speak English very well?

Where do you come from?

3. Câu cảm thán (Exclamatory sentences): Diễn đạt cảm xúc hay thái độ của một người trước một người, một sự vật hoặc sự việc.

Ex: How hot it is today!

What a beautiful garden!

4. Câu mệnh lệnh (Imperative sentences): Dùng để ra lệnh hoặc yêu cầu ai làm việc gì đó.

Ex: Get out of here.

Bring me another chair.

## II. Các loại câu (Kinds of sentences)

1. Câu trấn thuât (declarative sentences): là loại câu thông dụng và tương đối dễ sử dụng. Câu trấn thuật có thể ở dạng khẳng định (affirmative) hoặc phủ định (negative).

Ex: I like to go shopping.

I don't like to go shopping.

2. Câu nghi vấn (interrogative sentences): gồm 3 dạng

a. Câu hỏi có - không (Yes - No questions): là loại câu hỏi mà câu trả lời là có (yes) hoặc không (no).

- Đối với động từ đặc biệt như *be*, *have*, *can*, *may*, *must*, ... chỉ cần đảo động từ ra trước chủ ngữ.

Ex: Are you a pupil? - Yes, I am./ No, I am not.

Can your father speak English? - Yes, he can./ No, he can't.

- Đối với những động từ thường như *go*, *drink*, *run*, ... ta cần phải muộn trợ động từ *to do* để đặt câu hỏi.

Ex: Do you often walk to school? Yes, I do./ No, I don't.

Does fire burn? Yes, it does./ No, it doesn't.

Did they go to the theatre? Yes, they did./ No, they didn't.

b. Câu hỏi Wh- (Wh - questions): là loại câu hỏi bắt đầu bằng các nghi vấn từ *who*, *what*, *where*, *when*, *why*, *how*, ...

Ex: Who will help you with this work?

What languages can you speak?

When are you coming to see me?

### c. Câu hỏi đuôi (Tag - questions)

Quan sát: Your father is a teacher, isn't he?

statement    question-tag

- Với một câu tràn thuật (statement) xác định thì thêm một câu hỏi đuôi (question-tag) phủ định.

Ex: You can speak English, can't you?

- Với một câu tràn thuật (statement) phủ định thì thêm một câu hỏi đuôi (question-tag) xác định.

Ex: He shouldn't smoke, should he?

- Chủ ngữ của câu hỏi đuôi (question-tag) phải là một đại từ (pronoun).

Ex: That job is hardly suitable for her, is it?

- Nếu động từ của câu tràn thuật là động từ đặc biệt (*be, can, may, will, ...*) thì lặp lại các động từ ấy trong câu hỏi đuôi.

Ex: They were there, weren't they?

- Nếu động từ của câu tràn thuật là động từ thường thì ta phải mượn *to do* trong câu hỏi đuôi.

Ex: They arrived yesterday, didn't they?

She doesn't want to go, does she?

- Động từ trong câu hỏi đuôi nếu là phủ định thì luôn ở dạng viết rút gọn.

Ex: He will come, won't he?

Lưu ý: + Question tag được lên giọng khi người hỏi muốn hỏi xem có đúng không, và câu trả lời có thể là Yes hoặc No.

+ Questions tag được xuống giọng khi người hỏi chờ một sự đồng tình, xác nhận nên câu trả lời thường là Yes.

### 3. Câu mệnh lệnh (imperative sentences): Thường được bắt đầu bằng một động từ nguyên mẫu không *to* (bare-infinitive) và không có chủ ngữ (hiểu ngầm chủ ngữ là YOU).

Ex: Open the door.

Get out of here.

- Chủ từ có thể được diễn đạt bằng một danh từ đứng cuối cụm từ.

Ex: Come in, John.

Get out of here, dirty dog.

- Câu mệnh lệnh phủ định thành lập bằng cách thêm *Don't* trước động từ.

Ex: Don't be so silly.

Don't send for the doctor.

- Câu mệnh lệnh hoặc đề nghị có thể thêm *please* vào đầu hoặc cuối câu để cho lịch sự hơn.

Ex: Please lend me your pencil.

Pass the sugar, please.

- Một số từ hoặc cụm từ mang nghĩa yêu cầu, sai bảo hoặc nhở nha: *will, would, would you mind, if you don't mind, ...*

Ex: Will you lend me your pencil, please?

Would you mind telling me about yourself?

4. Câu cảm thán (exclamatory sentences): diễn đạt cảm xúc hay thái độ (ngạc nhiên, thán phục, tội nghiệp, khinh miệt, ghê tởm, thú vị, ...).

Ex: How fast he runs!

What a lovely girl!

\* Cách thành lập câu cảm thán với *how* và *what*.

**How + adjective/ adverb + subject + verb!**

Ex: How dirty the dog is!

How fluently Mai speaks English!

**What + (a, an) + (adjective) + Noun!**

Ex: What a long car!

What an interesting film!

What sweet oranges!

## EXERCISES

### I. Turn the following sentences into the Yes - No questions and exclamatory sentences.

1. You can swim well.
2. He was very quick.
3. They always work hard.
4. He has a lot of books.
5. She is too young.
6. You eat very quickly.
7. Your father drinks too much.
8. We got home very late.
9. My wife works well.
10. He has a lovely garden.

### II. Put a question tag on the end of these sentences.

1. You have heard about that, ...
2. Nam did the work well, ...
3. He didn't have to speak to me, ...
4. He won't fall down, ...
5. You wouldn't like the window open, ...
6. He used to beat his wife, ...
7. She came very late, ...
8. Come and see me tomorrow, ...
9. That's the sort of thing you would do, ...
10. I'd better go, ...
11. There's an examination tomorrow, ...
12. She's been studying English for two years, ...
13. You can't play tennis today, ...

14. It is surely sunny today, ...
15. Beverly will be attending the university in September, ...
16. I'm never called "Scholar", ...
17. No one has come here, ...
18. Everybody can learn how to swim, ...
19. His family often have tea for breakfast, ...
20. She never works on Sundays, ...

### **III. Write the questions to which the underlined words are the answers.**

1. My name is Lan.
2. I'm 17 years old.
3. I was born in 1980.
4. I was born in Long An.
5. My address is 3 Lê Lợi Street.
6. It's very hot in HCM City in March.
7. It takes two hours to ride to Vung Tau by motorcycle.
8. It's half past eight.
9. It's Mr. Dawson's car.
10. I go to school by bike.
11. I speak English fluently.
12. Lan drank your lemon juice.
13. I weigh 50 kilos.
14. It's October 10th.
15. It's 5 meters long.
16. No, I'm not a teacher - I'm a student.
17. I go shopping once a month.
18. I have learnt English for 6 years.
19. He was absent from school because he felt sick.
20. Mr. Pike enjoys traveling.

### **III. Các mẫu câu cơ bản (Basic sentence patterns in English)**

Dựa vào các mẫu câu cơ bản này ta có thể xếp các từ loại thành một câu đầy đủ để diễn tả điều mình muốn nói. Trong phần này ta chỉ xét đến trường hợp của một câu đơn tức là một nhóm từ gồm có một động từ được chia và diễn tả một ý nghĩa đầy đủ.

#### **1. Các chức năng trong câu:**

- Chủ ngữ (Subjects):** Có thể là người hoặc sự vật, sự việc thực hiện hoặc chịu trách nhiệm cho hành động của câu và thường đứng trước động từ. Mỗi câu trong tiếng Anh đều phải có chủ ngữ, tuy nhiên trong câu mệnh lệnh, chủ ngữ *you* được hiểu ngầm.
  - Chủ ngữ có thể là một danh từ đơn.  
*Ex: Coffee is delicious.*  
*Milk contains calcium.*
  - Chủ ngữ có thể là một ngữ danh từ.

Ex: The book is on the table.

That new red car is John's.

- Chủ ngữ có thể là đại từ, danh động từ hoặc động từ nguyên mẫu.

Ex: Somebody called you while you were out.

Refusing invitations is not always easy.

To lean out of the window is dangerous.

- Trong một số câu, chủ ngữ thật không xuất hiện ở vị trí bình thường mà nó xuất hiện sau động từ và **It** hoặc **There** đóng vai trò chủ ngữ (giả).

Ex: It's hard to believe what he says.

There was a fire in that building last month.

b. **Động từ (verbs):** Động từ là từ theo sau chủ ngữ trong lời nói khẳng định. Động từ diễn đạt hành động hoặc trạng thái của chủ ngữ trong câu. Mỗi câu phải có một động từ.

- Động từ có thể là một từ đơn.

Ex: John drives too fast.

They speak English fluently.

- Động từ có thể là một cụm từ.

Ex: John is going to Miami tomorrow.

Jane has been reading that book.

Lưu ý: Xem thêm phần thi của động từ (Tenses of verbs) và thể của động từ (Voices of verbs).

c. **Bổ ngữ (Complements):** Bổ ngữ là từ hoặc cụm từ được dùng để mô tả chủ ngữ.

- Bổ ngữ có thể là một danh từ, ngữ danh từ, hoặc tính từ.

Ex: My father is a doctor.

Leaves turn yellow in autumn.

- Bổ ngữ cho chủ ngữ (subject complements) thường đi sau các động từ *be, look, seem, become, get, feel, turn, ...*.

Ex: The weather gets cold in the evening.

→ "cold" làm bổ ngữ cho chủ ngữ "the weather" và được gọi là *subject complement*.

- Bổ ngữ cho tân ngữ (object complements) thường đứng ngay sau tân ngữ mà nó bổ nghĩa.

Ex: They elected him President.

→ "President" làm bổ ngữ cho tân ngữ "him" và được gọi là *object complement*.

d. **Tân ngữ (Object):** Tân ngữ làm hoàn chỉnh nghĩa cho động từ và đứng sau động từ trong câu.

- Tân ngữ có thể là danh từ, ngữ danh từ hoặc đại từ và trả lời cho câu hỏi với *who (ai)* hoặc *what (gì, cái gì)*.

Ex: I love Susan. (Who do you love?)

I bought a new car. (What did you buy?)

- Trong một câu không nhất thiết phải có tân ngữ. Tuy nhiên có câu lại có hai tân ngữ.

Ex: My mother gave me a bicycle on my birthday.

(*me* là tân ngữ gián tiếp và *a bicycle* là tân ngữ trực tiếp của động từ *give*)

e. **Định ngữ (Adjuncts):** cho biết thời gian, nơi chốn hoặc cách thức của hành động.

- Định ngữ thường là trạng từ, trạng ngữ hoặc các cụm từ bắt đầu bằng một giới từ.

Ex: He runs fast.

We ate dinner at seven o'clock.

My father came home from Hanoi yesterday morning.

- Trong câu không nhất thiết phải có định ngữ và định ngữ thường trả lời cho câu hỏi với *when, where, how*.

Ex: He runs fast. (How does he run?)

## 2. Các mẫu câu cơ bản:

### a. Subject + Verb

Ex: The ducks are swimming.

(S) (V)

### b. Subject + Verb + Adjunct

Ex: He came there.

(S) (V) (A)

### c. Subject + Verb + Complement

Ex: Her sister looks beautiful.

(S) (V) (C)

### d. Subject + Verb + Object

Ex: Tom can speak English.

(S) (V) (O)

### e. Subject + Verb + Indirect Object + Direct Object

Ex: She has just sent him a letter.

(S) (V) (O<sub>I</sub>) (O<sub>D</sub>)

\* Direct Object (O<sub>D</sub>) : tân ngữ trực tiếp

\* Indirect Object (O<sub>I</sub>) : tân ngữ gián tiếp

### Subject + Verb + Direct Object + Preposition + Indirect Object

Ex: She has just sent a letter to him.

(S) (V) (O<sub>D</sub>) (Pre) (O<sub>I</sub>)

\* Một số động từ thường có 2 tân ngữ như: *give, send, show, buy, ...*

### f. Subject + Verb + Object + Object Complement

Ex: They named their son Tony.

(S) (V) (O) (Co)

### g. Subject + Verb + Preposition + Prepositional Object

Ex: He fell into the stream.

(S) (V) (Pre) (Opree.)

### h. Subject + Verb + Object + Adjunct

Ex: We took a taxi to Ben Thanh Market.

(S) (V) (O) (A)

## EXERCISES

**IV. Underline and identify the subject (S), verb (V), object (O), complement (C), preposition (Pre.) and adjunct (A) in the following sentences.**

1. He wrote a letter.
2. She is a pupil.
3. She is pretty.
4. She is reading.
5. They are here.
6. He was reading thoughtfully.
7. Mrs. Brown wrote some letters to her husband.
8. He wrote for the youth.
9. She gave me some books.
10. They took the class to the zoo.
11. They treated him badly.
12. We consider him the class leader.
13. George is cooking dinner tonight.
14. Trees grow.
15. She opened her book.
16. They painted their doors green.
17. It is raining at seven o'clock this morning.
18. She must have gone to the bank.
19. The bank closed at two o'clock.
20. She did everything for her son.

## PRACTICE TEST

Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it means exactly the same as the sentence printed.

Ex: I haven't enjoyed myself so much for years.

It's years since I enjoyed myself so much.

1. 'Why don't you put a better lock on the door, Barry?', said John.  
John suggested \_\_\_\_\_
2. Although both his legs were broken in the crash, he managed to get out of the car before it exploded.  
Despite his \_\_\_\_\_
3. I haven't eaten this kind of food before.  
This is the first \_\_\_\_\_
4. After fighting the fire for twelve hours, the firemen succeeded in putting it out.  
The firemen managed \_\_\_\_\_

5. The architect has drawn plans for an extension to the house.

Plans

6. In Stratford-on-Avon, we saw Shakespeare's birthplace.

We saw the house

7. It isn't necessary for you to finish by Saturday.

You

8. 'How many survivors are there?' asked the journalist.

The journalist

9. It was such rotten meat that it had to be thrown away.

The meat was

10. It is essential that Professor Van Helsing is met at the airport.

Professor Van Helsing

11. You can't visit the United States unless you get a visa.

If

12. 'Can I borrow your typewriter, Janet?' asked Peter.

Peter asked if

13. She started working as a secretary five years ago.

She has

14. My French friend finds driving on the left difficult.

My French friend isn't

15. They think the owner of the house is abroad.

The owner

16. We didn't go on holiday because we didn't have enough money.

If we

17. The children couldn't go swimming because the sea was very rough.

The sea was too

18. What a pity you failed your driving test!

I wish

19. The mechanic serviced my car last week.

I

20. I'm always nervous when I travel by air.

Traveling

21. He could not afford to buy the car.

The car

22. 'Why don't you put your luggage under the seat?' He asked.

He suggested

23. Although he had a good salary, he was unhappy in his job.

In spite of

24. He was annoyed because his secretary came late to work.

He objected

25. I'm sorry I missed your birthday party.

I wish \_\_\_\_\_

26. They haven't cleaned the streets this week.

The streets \_\_\_\_\_

27. Apples are usually cheaper than oranges.

Apples are not \_\_\_\_\_

28. I advised you to put your money in the bank.

You'd \_\_\_\_\_

29. That restaurant is so dirty that no one wants to eat there.

It is such \_\_\_\_\_

30. John only understood very little of what the teacher said.

John could hardly \_\_\_\_\_

31. Unless someone has a key, we can't get into the house.

We can only get \_\_\_\_\_

32. I'm sure you didn't lock the front door. Here's the key.

You can't \_\_\_\_\_

33. He prefers golf to tennis.

He's rather \_\_\_\_\_

34. He's sorry now that he didn't invite Molly to his party.

He wishes \_\_\_\_\_

35. Bring your swimming things in case it's sunny.

He told \_\_\_\_\_

36. There's no need for you to talk so loudly.

You don't \_\_\_\_\_

37. I haven't been to Britol for 3 years.

The last time \_\_\_\_\_

38. No one has signed this cheque.

This cheque \_\_\_\_\_

39. Jim will be 18 next week.

It's Jim's \_\_\_\_\_

40. Unless he phones immediately, he won't get any information.

If \_\_\_\_\_

41. How long is it since they bought the house?

When \_\_\_\_\_

42. He couldn't repair the broken vase.

The \_\_\_\_\_

43. The garden still needs digging.

The garden hasn't \_\_\_\_\_

44. Have you got a cheaper carpet than this?

Is this \_\_\_\_\_

45. I can't get my feet into these shoes.

These shoes \_\_\_\_\_

46. I'm very pleased that we shall meet again soon.

I'm looking \_\_\_\_\_

47. 'Keep away from this area' said the security guard when we approached the fence.

The security guard told \_\_\_\_\_

48. I've never met such a famous person before.

It's \_\_\_\_\_

49. This pudding can be cooked in its tin.

You don't \_\_\_\_\_

50. It was so late that nothing could be done.

It was too \_\_\_\_\_

51. I asked the hotel porter to wake me up at 8 o'clock the following morning.

'Please \_\_\_\_\_

52. They'll have to change the date of the meeting again.

The date \_\_\_\_\_

53. The garage is going to repair the car for us next week.

We \_\_\_\_\_

54. The bus takes longer than the train.

The train \_\_\_\_\_

55. John has not had his hair cut for over six months.

It is \_\_\_\_\_

56. Maria says she'd like to have been put in a higher class.

Maria wishes \_\_\_\_\_

57. Would you like me to finish the work tonight?

I'll \_\_\_\_\_

58. You may get hungry on the train, so take some sandwiches.

In \_\_\_\_\_

59. My husband didn't leave the car keys, so I couldn't pick him up at the station.

If \_\_\_\_\_

60. The train couldn't run because of the snow.

The snow \_\_\_\_\_

61. I didn't arrive in time to see her.

It wasn't early \_\_\_\_\_

62. I'm sorry I was rude to see you yesterday.

I apologize \_\_\_\_\_

63. He didn't hurry, so he missed the train.

If \_\_\_\_\_

64. Janet is the best tennis-player in the club.

No one \_\_\_\_\_

65. I haven't seen that man here before.

It's \_\_\_\_\_

66. The furniture was so expensive that I didn't buy it.

The furniture was too \_\_\_\_\_

67. The robber made the bank manager hand over the money.

The bank manager \_\_\_\_\_

68. He learned to drive when he was eighteen.

He has \_\_\_\_\_

69. She has never been so unhappy before.

She was unhappier \_\_\_\_\_

70. 'I don't think John will come' said Bill.

Bill doubted \_\_\_\_\_

71. The postman was bitten by our dog.

Our dog \_\_\_\_\_

72. We couldn't drive because of the fog.

The fog \_\_\_\_\_

73. Although his leg was broken, he managed to get out of the car.

In spite of \_\_\_\_\_

74. The cake was so hard that I couldn't eat it.

It was \_\_\_\_\_

75. We didn't go because it rained.

If \_\_\_\_\_

76. I can't cook as well as my mother does.

My mother \_\_\_\_\_

77. I don't suppose you have change for a pound, do you?

Do you happen \_\_\_\_\_

78. He failed to win the race.

He didn't \_\_\_\_\_

79. Mary rang hours and hours ago.

It's hours \_\_\_\_\_

80. I'm sorry that I didn't finish my homework last night.

I wish \_\_\_\_\_

81. She asked John how he liked her new dress.

'How \_\_\_\_\_

82. A train leaves at eight o'clock every morning.

There is \_\_\_\_\_

83. Nobody can deny that she has a beautiful voice.

It \_\_\_\_\_

84. I would like you to help me to put the chairs away.

Do you mind \_\_\_\_\_

85. The child will die if nobody sends for a doctor.  
Unless \_\_\_\_\_
86. He would prefer you to pay him immediately.  
He'd rather \_\_\_\_\_
87. The water was so cold that the children could not swim in it.  
The water was not \_\_\_\_\_
88. Somebody repaired her car yesterday.  
She \_\_\_\_\_
89. You must see the manager tomorrow morning.  
You've \_\_\_\_\_
90. There was never any answer when we rang.  
Every \_\_\_\_\_
91. That's an insulting name to use for him.  
Don't call \_\_\_\_\_
92. John asked if it was the blue one or the green she wanted.  
'Which' \_\_\_\_\_
93. She likes Paris very little, and Rome less.  
She thought Rome: \_\_\_\_\_
94. I can meet you if you arrive before eleven.  
So \_\_\_\_\_
95. They will catch all the prisoners again by tonight.  
All the prisoners \_\_\_\_\_
96. I've warned you not to go near that dog.  
I've warned you about \_\_\_\_\_
97. 'No, please don't tell him.'  
I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_
98. Why don't you ask her yourself?  
I suggest \_\_\_\_\_
99. An up-to-date visa is necessary for Andorra.  
You'll \_\_\_\_\_
100. 'Why didn't I get a computer before?' Thought the office manager.  
The office manager wondered \_\_\_\_\_
101. 'You'd better not lend him any more money, Elizabeth' said John.  
John advised Elizabeth \_\_\_\_\_
102. I started work for the company a year ago.  
I've been \_\_\_\_\_
103. Susan felt sick because she ate 4 cream cakes.  
If Susan \_\_\_\_\_
104. My suit needs to be cleaned before the interview.  
I must \_\_\_\_\_

105. 'You stole my best cassette, Amanda', said William.  
William accused \_\_\_\_\_
106. Because of the rough sea, the ferry couldn't sail.  
The rough sea \_\_\_\_\_
107. Please check for damage before signing the delivery note.  
Don't \_\_\_\_\_
108. Roses can't possibly grow in such poor ground.  
It's impossible \_\_\_\_\_
109. Your car might break down on the rough mountain road, so take plenty of spare parts.  
In case \_\_\_\_\_
110. 'You damage my bicycle, John' said Margaret.  
Margaret accused \_\_\_\_\_
111. It is one hundred years since the birth of D. H. Lawrence, the famous novelist.  
D. H. Lawrence, \_\_\_\_\_
112. John Speke failed to find the source of the River Nile.  
John Speke didn't succeed \_\_\_\_\_
113. Maria didn't apply for the job in the library and regrets it now.  
Maria wishes \_\_\_\_\_
114. Helen wanted to know the name of Shirly's hairdresser's.  
Helen said 'Shirly' \_\_\_\_\_
115. This furniture is so old that it's not worth keeping.  
This is \_\_\_\_\_
116. Handicapped people find shopping in supermarket difficult.  
It's \_\_\_\_\_
117. Why don't you meet to discuss to pay offer?  
I suggest \_\_\_\_\_
118. Without this treatment, the patient would have died.  
If the patient \_\_\_\_\_
119. Although he didn't speak Dutch, Bob decided to settle in Amsterdam.  
In spite of \_\_\_\_\_
120. He is said to have been in the French Foreign Legion.  
People say \_\_\_\_\_
121. 'How old is your little boy?' said the nurse to Mrs. Bingley.  
The nurse \_\_\_\_\_
122. I'm sure it wasn't Mrs. Elton you saw because she's in Bristol.  
It can't \_\_\_\_\_
123. How long have Catherine and Henry been engaged?  
When \_\_\_\_\_
124. In spite of his age, Mr. Benson runs 7 miles before breakfast.  
Although \_\_\_\_\_

125. It's a pity I didn't take my doctor's advice.

I wish \_\_\_\_\_

126. The bread is so stale that we can't eat it.

The bread isn't \_\_\_\_\_

127. Who does this bag belong to?

Whose \_\_\_\_\_

128. 'Never borrow money from friends' my father said.

My father told \_\_\_\_\_

129. The accident happened because the train-driver ignored a warming light.

If the train-driver \_\_\_\_\_

130. The keeper feed the lions at 3 p.m every day.

The lions \_\_\_\_\_

131. We got lost because we didn't have a map.

If \_\_\_\_\_

132. 'Where is the station car park?' Mrs. Smith asked.

Mr. Smith asked \_\_\_\_\_

133. I would prefer you to deliver the sofa on Friday.

I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_

134. He was sorry he hadn't said good-bye to her at the airport.

He regretted \_\_\_\_\_

135. It is pointless to have that old typewriter repaired.

That old typewriter is not \_\_\_\_\_

136. The bridge was so low that the bus couldn't go under it.

It was \_\_\_\_\_

137. I last saw him when I was a student.

I haven't \_\_\_\_\_

138. That was a silly thing to say!

What \_\_\_\_\_

139. We've run out of tea.

There \_\_\_\_\_

140. Philippa asked Olive if she could remember where she had put the camera.

Philippa said 'Olive \_\_\_\_\_

141. It's a six-hour drive from London to Edinburgh.

It takes \_\_\_\_\_

142. Turn off all the switches before leaving the workshop.

All the switches \_\_\_\_\_

143. It is ages Alan visited his parents.

Alan \_\_\_\_\_

144. Mrs. Taylor does not like living in such a small house.

Mrs. Taylor wishes \_\_\_\_\_

145. Mr. Will lost his job because he was late every day.  
If \_\_\_\_\_
146. James spoke to his lawyer before signing the contract.  
James didn't \_\_\_\_\_
147. They traveled across India, and then flew on to Japan.  
After \_\_\_\_\_
148. 'You'd better go to the doctor if you've got a pain in your back, Anna' said Henry.  
Henry suggested \_\_\_\_\_
149. The police made the youth empty his pocket.  
The youth \_\_\_\_\_
150. Joans eats very little so as not to put on weight.  
Joans eats very little because \_\_\_\_\_
151. On arrival at the shop, the goods are inspected carefully.  
When the goods \_\_\_\_\_
152. Lawrence hasn't seen his sister since she left for Japan.  
Lawrence last \_\_\_\_\_
153. John is fat because he eats so many chips.  
If \_\_\_\_\_
154. Peter said he wasn't feeling well.  
Peter said \_\_\_\_\_
155. 'You should take more exercises Mr. Robert' the doctor said 'if you want to lose weight'.  
The doctor advised \_\_\_\_\_
156. Collecting dolls from foreign countries is one of Jane's interests.  
Jane is \_\_\_\_\_
157. George is not nearly as energetic as he used to be.  
George used \_\_\_\_\_
158. If Joe doesn't change his ways, he will end up in prison.  
Unless \_\_\_\_\_
159. 'Will I ever find a job?' Jim asked to himself.  
Jim wondered \_\_\_\_\_
160. 'You should take up a map because you might be lost in those mountains.'  
In case \_\_\_\_\_
161. Temperatures is measured by a thermometer.  
A thermometer \_\_\_\_\_
162. You remembered to post the letter, didn't you?  
You didn't \_\_\_\_\_
163. Mr. Dryden mended the washing machine for me.  
I had \_\_\_\_\_
164. Pat is the tallest girl in her class.  
No one \_\_\_\_\_

165. To get the 40% discount, you must buy all 12 books at the same time.

You can only \_\_\_\_\_

166. Samuel started keeping a diary 5 years ago.

Samuel has \_\_\_\_\_

167. Please don't smoke in the kitchen.

I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_

168. 'I'm sorry, I gave you the wrong number' said Paul to Susan.

Paul apologized \_\_\_\_\_

169. Sally's parents gave her a microcomputer for her birthday.

Sally \_\_\_\_\_

170. It was such bad news that Helen burst into tears.

The news \_\_\_\_\_

171. How long is it since you saw Mary?

When \_\_\_\_\_

172. If he doesn't work harder, he'll lose his job.

Unless \_\_\_\_\_

173. I'd like to visit India more than any other countries in the world.

India is \_\_\_\_\_

174. Alan regretted asking Arthur to lend him 20\$.

Alan wishes \_\_\_\_\_

175. 'When is the first day of your holiday, Peter?' Martha asked.

Martha asked Peter \_\_\_\_\_

176. The flight to Moscow lasted three and a half hours.

It took \_\_\_\_\_

177. I work in a factory which has more than a thousand employees.

There \_\_\_\_\_

178. Belinda felt very depressed but she still went to the party.

Belinda went to the party \_\_\_\_\_

179. Mr. Hill teaches his students to understand different English accents.

Mr. Hill 'students \_\_\_\_\_

180. It was such a boring film that we left before the end.

The film \_\_\_\_\_

181. Robert and Catherine have been married for 4 years.

It's four years \_\_\_\_\_

182. Elizabeth got a bad cough because she started smoking cigarettes.

If \_\_\_\_\_

183. 'Can I have a new bicycle?' said Ann to her mother.

Ann asked \_\_\_\_\_

184. Don't blame me if the tin-opener's broken.

It's not \_\_\_\_\_

185. Although he had a bad cold, William still went to work.

In spite

186. Barbara plays tennis better than Mike.

Mike doesn't

187. Whose suitcase is this?

Who does

188. The train journey from London to Bristol takes 2 hours.

It is a

189. Did they build the garage at the same time as the house?

Was

190. The people who were at the meeting will say nothing to the Press.

Nobody who

191. The heavy rain made it impossible for us to have our picnic.

We were

192. Joan will stay on at school unless she finds a good job before September.

If

193. I don't really want to go out tonight.

I'd rather

194. Shirley didn't begin to read until she was 8.

It wasn't

195. Lucy hasn't worn that dress since Barbara's wedding.

The last

196. Let's go abroad for our holiday this year.

Why

197. He is such a slow speaker that his students get very bored.

He speaks

198. Makengie wrote 4 best sellers before he was 20.

By the age of 20

199. 'Don't leave the house until I get back, William' his mother said.

William's mother

200. I'd rather not see him tomorrow.

I don't

201. Alice's strange ideas astonished everybody.

Everybody

202. It was careless of you to leave the windows open last night.

You shouldn't

203. You will catch a cold if you don't keep your feet dry.

Unless

204. It looks like rain to me.

I

205. This is the most delicious cake I've ever tasted.

I have \_\_\_\_\_

206. The people who were there didn't notice anything unusual.

No one \_\_\_\_\_

207. She left university 2 years ago.

It is \_\_\_\_\_

208. The gate is closed to stop the children running into the road.

The gate is closed so that \_\_\_\_\_

209. Henry regretted buying a second hand car.

Henry wishes \_\_\_\_\_

210. Amanda finally manages to get a job.

Amanda finally succeeded \_\_\_\_\_

211. They have sold that old house at the end of the road.

That old house \_\_\_\_\_

212. 'Don't bite your nails' said Mrs. Rogers to her son.

Mrs. Rogers \_\_\_\_\_

213. Charles lives quite near his aunt's house.

Charles doesn't \_\_\_\_\_

214. That's the last time I go to that restaurant.

I certainly \_\_\_\_\_

215. It was such a dirty beach that I decided not to stay.

The beach \_\_\_\_\_

216. It isn't necessary to finish the work today.

You don't \_\_\_\_\_

217. I don't really want to have lunch yet.

I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_

218. Sebastian's career as a television presenter began 5 years ago.

Sebastian has \_\_\_\_\_

219. That meal was excellent.

What \_\_\_\_\_

220. 'I've seen this film 3 times, Mary' said George.

George told \_\_\_\_\_

221. I don't really want to visit the museum.

I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_

222. John missed the ferry because his car broke down.

If \_\_\_\_\_

223. Jane is a better cook than Robert.

Robert can't \_\_\_\_\_

224. Please do not smoke in this area of the restaurant.

Customers are requested \_\_\_\_\_

225. 'I'm sorry, Angela' said Martin. 'I'm afraid I've damaged your car.'  
Martin apologized \_\_\_\_\_
226. Although he took a taxi, Bill arrived late for the concert.  
In spite of \_\_\_\_\_
227. Carol finds it easy to make friends.  
Carol has no \_\_\_\_\_
228. Mark is too young to see the horror film.  
Mark is not \_\_\_\_\_
229. Whose documents are these?  
Who \_\_\_\_\_
230. 'Have you had enough for lunch?' the landlady asked me.  
The landlady asked \_\_\_\_\_
231. We ought to leave the party now if we are to catch the last train.  
If we don't \_\_\_\_\_
232. It's Alice's job to look after the new staff.  
Alice is responsible \_\_\_\_\_
233. What's your date of birth?  
When \_\_\_\_\_
234. John could not find the right house.  
John was \_\_\_\_\_
235. The doctor should have signed my insurance form.  
My insurance form \_\_\_\_\_
236. Michael laughed when I told him the joke.  
The joke \_\_\_\_\_
237. Jenny does not play tennis as well as she used to.  
Jenny used \_\_\_\_\_
238. The door was too heavy that the child couldn't push it open.  
The door \_\_\_\_\_
239. If you don't want Sally to be angry with you, I suggest you apologize.  
You'd \_\_\_\_\_
240. You might fall if you're not careful.  
Be careful \_\_\_\_\_
241. Mrs. Edwards is the owner of that car.  
That car \_\_\_\_\_
242. The station clock showed half past ten.  
According \_\_\_\_\_
243. Henry found a wallet with no name in it.  
The wallet \_\_\_\_\_
244. Ronald denied stealing Mrs. Clark's handbag.  
Ronald said that \_\_\_\_\_

245. Susan likes staying in hotels but she prefers camping.

Susan doesn't \_\_\_\_\_

246. The fridge was so heavy that we couldn't move it.

The fridge was too \_\_\_\_\_

247. 'John, please don't tell anyone my new address' said Mary.

Mary asked \_\_\_\_\_

248. The judges had never seen a prettier flower display.

It was \_\_\_\_\_

249. His mother is taller than his father.

His father \_\_\_\_\_

250. Tom didn't come to the party. Ann didn't come to the party.

Neither Tom \_\_\_\_\_

251. Everyone likes her.

She \_\_\_\_\_

252. Although the traffic was bad, I arrived on time.

In spite \_\_\_\_\_

253. If you've got a car, you're able to travel around more easily.

Having a car enables \_\_\_\_\_

254. The sudden noise caused me to jump.

The sudden noise made \_\_\_\_\_

255. She wouldn't allow me to read the letter.

She wouldn't let \_\_\_\_\_

256. My father said I could use his car.

My father allowed me \_\_\_\_\_

257. Tom is ill. He became ill three days ago.

Tom has \_\_\_\_\_

258. I can't give up smoking, but I'd like to.

I wish \_\_\_\_\_

259. Tom went to bed but first he had a hot drink.

Before \_\_\_\_\_

260. She often writes to him and he often writes to her.

They \_\_\_\_\_

261. If you don't hurry, you'll be late.

Unless \_\_\_\_\_

262. Because the weather was bad, they postponed the match until the following Saturday.

Because of \_\_\_\_\_

263. Mary is too young to get married.

Mary is not \_\_\_\_\_

264. I don't really want to go to the museum.

I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_

265. I want you to cook the dinner now.

I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_

266. She made herself ill because she worked very hard.

She worked so \_\_\_\_\_

267. We can solve this problem.

This problem \_\_\_\_\_

268. The man injured in the accident was taken to hospital.

The man who \_\_\_\_\_

269. That girl is very beautiful.

What \_\_\_\_\_

270. Tom is not old enough to drive a car.

Tom is too \_\_\_\_\_

271. It is said that he is 108 years old.

He is said \_\_\_\_\_

272. She was very stupid when she went out without a coat.

It was very stupid \_\_\_\_\_

273. That factory is producing more and more pollution.

More and more pollution \_\_\_\_\_

274. She's a faster and more careless driver than I am.

She drives \_\_\_\_\_

275. My shoes need to be cleaned before the interview.

I must have \_\_\_\_\_

276. We spent five hours getting to London.

It \_\_\_\_\_

277. It isn't necessary to shout.

You \_\_\_\_\_

278. When I arrived in Canberra, I wrote a letter home.

On \_\_\_\_\_

279. I've never seen such a mess in my life.

Never \_\_\_\_\_

280. Don't try to escape. It's no use.

It's no use \_\_\_\_\_

281. People throw thousands of tons of rubbish into the forest.

Thousands of tons of rubbish \_\_\_\_\_

282. There is less rain in Tokyo than in Athens in January.

More rain \_\_\_\_\_

283. A fire destroyed most of the old city of London in the 1600s.

The destruction \_\_\_\_\_

# DÁP ÁN

## TENSES:

- |       |   |   |  |
|-------|---|---|--|
| I.    | 1. is sleeping<br>4. sets<br>7. buys<br>10. is cooking - cooks  | 2. eat<br>5. is<br>8. is  | 3. is running - wants<br>6. am doing - think - know<br>9. rains - is raining |
| II.   | 1. have you been studying/ have you studied<br>3. have been living/ have lived<br>5. hasn't been - has been living<br>7. Have you been sleeping - have been ringing<br>9. has lost - has been looking | 2. have been waiting - hasn't come<br>4. has read - have you read<br>6. has gone - has never been<br>8. has been writing - hasn't finished<br>10. have seen |  |
| III.  | 1. think - is knocking<br>4. are working<br>7. is crying<br>10. are - have been<br>13. am - have forgotten  | 2. have written/ have been writing<br>5. have you seen<br>8. is smoking<br>11. belongs<br>14. have been waiting/ have waited                                | 3. circles<br>6. flow<br>9. goes<br>12. has lost<br>15. Have you ever seen   |
| IV.   | 1. have seen<br>5. did you do<br>9. has taught/ has been teaching - graduated<br>10. have you been learning/ have you learnt/ (learned)   | 2. saw<br>6. Did you watch<br>7. was  | 3. has never been<br>4. have read<br>8. has written                          |
| V.    | 1. arrived - was still sleeping<br>3. was having - stopped<br>5. saw - was standing<br>7. were playing - came<br>9. was - was working   | 2. went - were having<br>4. were crossing - saw<br>6. was reading - was learning - was doing<br>8. rang - was taking<br>10. was sitting - saw               |  |
| VI.   | 1. went - had finished<br>4. hadn't eaten<br>7. watched - had done<br>10. had ever seen   | 2. had already seen<br>5. asked - had come<br>8. went   | 3. had already begun<br>6. sat - rested<br>9. was - was                      |
| VII.  | 1. had gone - went<br>4. went - had called<br>7. were you doing<br>10. won  | 2. told - visited<br>5. rang - was having<br>8. had happened  | 3. had already started<br>6. agreed<br>9. had taught - left                  |
| VIII. | 1. stops<br>4. won't come - are<br>7. will come - see<br>10. will send - arrive   | 2. will stay - answers<br>5. will help - finishes<br>8. will go   | 3. catch<br>6. is<br>9. will wait - come                                     |
| IX.   | 1. has finished<br>4. hope - will have stopped<br>7. will have ended - get<br>10. will give - see   | 2. come - has already bought<br>5. will not begin - falls<br>8. will have built   | 3. have finished<br>6. will have left<br>9. will start                       |
| X.    | 1. go - will be sitting<br>3. will be waiting - get<br>5. see - will remind<br>7. will be working<br>9. see   | 2. will explain<br>4. will you be doing - will be practising<br>6. come - will be working<br>8. returns<br>10. will be doing - come                         |  |

- XI.**
- 1. will have completed
  - 2. will be waiting - get
  - 3. will be driving
  - 4. will see
  - 5. will have come
  - 6. will look
  - 7. will have been working
  - 8. will be practising
  - 9. will have been
  - 10. will move
  - 11. will have been working
  - 12. will have finished
  - 13. will give - see
  - 14. won't have done
  - 15. will be interviewing
  - 16. will pass
  - 17. will have been writing
  - 18. will arrive
  - 19. will be
  - 20. Will you have finished
- XII.**
- 1. saw - was waiting
  - 2. has been
  - 3. has taught - graduated
  - 4. doesn't watch
  - 5. met
  - 6. reported - had captured
  - 7. thanked
  - 8. has stolen
  - 9. had been living - broke
  - 10. was
  - 11. am usually
  - 12. was - had been
  - 13. has driven - knew
  - 14. speak
  - 15. wags - sees
  - 16. were you doing - rang
  - 17. had never seen
  - 18. haven't seen
  - 19. got
  - 20. will leave - knows
  - 21. was playing - arrived
  - 22. will come - see
  - 23. will come - Are you
  - 24. will come
  - 25. are you going to spend
  - 26. bloom
  - 27. haven't lived
  - 28. will never forget - have just told
  - 29. are preparing
  - 30. stayed - rode - had borrowed/ borrowed
  - 31. told - visited
  - 32. has worked/ has been working
  - 33. worked
  - 34. build - fly
  - 35. have lost - Can
  - 36. hasn't smoked
  - 37. arrived - had just gone
  - 38. have Bob and Mary been
  - 39. Have you received
  - 40. joined - was
  - 41. Will you remember - will forget
  - 42. had studied
  - 43. wrote
  - 44. left - haven't heard
  - 45. Did you speak - haven't seen - can't - saw
  - 46. were playing
  - 47. discovered
  - 48. will have finished
  - 49. will have been living
  - 50. did your father die - don't know - died
  - 51. had forgot
  - 52. was doing
  - 53. haven't seen
  - 54. was raining
  - 55. will wait
  - 56. hears
  - 57. started/ had started - was
  - 58. have you been studying/ have studied
  - 59. haven't received - left
  - 60. am having
  - 61. will speak
  - 62. will be living
  - 63. is coming
  - 64. is
  - 65. was speaking
  - 66. don't eat
  - 67. will have finished
  - 68. was watching
  - 69. has lived
  - 70. has cut
  - 71. was built
  - 72. is singing
  - 73. have been planted - stopped
  - 74. will not come
  - 75. had been studying
  - 76. says - is talking
  - 77. did you do - had gone
  - 78. have you been waiting/ have you waited
  - 79. had done
  - 80. will have been waiting
  - 81. will have made
  - 82. broke - stole - were dancing
  - 83. were sitting - was doing - was knitting - were reading
  - 84. has painted
  - 85. has asked
  - 86. was listening
  - 87. was working
  - 88. have played - Have you played - came - have played - joined - had arrived
  - 89. will say/ is going to say
  - 90. get - rises
  - 91. had been
  - 92. asks
  - 93. comes
  - 94. am working
  - 95. was - wanted
  - 96. was - had died
  - 97. cried
  - 98. will not send
  - 99. left
  - 100. has given

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES

- |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| <b>I.</b><br>1. will rain<br>5. had promised<br>9. had locked<br>13. was<br>17. go<br>21. was<br>25. have taken<br>29. had just said<br>33. will introduce<br>37. wouldn't do | 2. would get<br>6. is<br>10. lived - was<br>14. built<br>18. are<br>22. is<br>26. has lived<br>30. would capture<br>34. was<br>38. would be | 3. had lost<br>7. has<br>11. would end<br>15. was having<br>19. will take<br>23. had made<br>27. had helped<br>31. would call<br>35. has made<br>39. has never seen | 4. would come<br>8. was - turned<br>12. is<br>16. has lived<br>20. is writing<br>24. hadn't gone<br>28. has just said<br>32. is<br>36. is<br>40. is |   |
| <b>II.</b><br>1. is writing<br>5. would be<br>9. started<br>13. has accepted<br>17. had been  | 2. will look<br>6. comes<br>10. was going<br>14. had never seen<br>18. hadn't come  | 3. was<br>7. rises<br>11. will finish<br>15. will move<br>19. got   | 4. has been<br>8. will do<br>12. were<br>16. never know - will be<br>20. will not rain  |   |
| <b>III.</b>   |   |   |   |   |
| 1. 1. leaving<br>2. 1. was<br>6. leaving<br>3. 1. is presently working<br>5. went   | 2. went<br>2. was<br>7. worked<br>2. has just returned<br>6. was  | 3. was<br>3. was born<br>8. wrote<br>3. was<br>7. spoke   | 4. joined<br>4. was<br>9. had visited<br>3. was<br>7. spoke   | 5. wrote<br>5. began<br>10. had met<br>4. had never had<br>8. enjoyed             |
| 4. 1. decided<br>5. arranged<br>5. 1. had<br>5. had left<br>6. 1. comes   | 5. have worried<br>6. have heard<br>2. missed<br>6. doesn't live<br>7. is   | 3. took<br>7. have begun<br>3. was standing<br>7. had<br>5. has just taken/ took  | 4. took<br>8. grew<br>3. realized<br>8. got   | 5. began<br>10. had met<br>4. had never had<br>8. enjoyed<br>4. have already sold |
| 2. came<br>3. started<br>4. has learnt/ has been learning<br>7. 1. Born<br>5. went  | 6. have<br>6. was<br>7. is  | 6. spoke<br>7. have begun<br>3. was standing<br>7. had<br>5. has just taken/ took   | 6. spoke<br>7. have begun<br>3. was standing<br>7. had<br>5. has just taken/ took   | 6. spoke<br>7. have begun<br>3. was standing<br>7. had<br>5. has just taken/ took |
| 8. 1. was walking<br>4. stopped<br>9. 1. was born<br>4. wrote   | 2. met<br>5. to talk<br>2. began<br>5. traveled   | 3. formed<br>3. hadn't seen<br>6. had done<br>3. didn't finish  | 3. was influenced<br>7. formed<br>3. hadn't seen<br>6. had done   | 4. spent<br>8. didn't advance<br>3. was influenced<br>7. formed                   |
| 10. 1. was walking<br>5. was<br>9. apologized<br>11. 1. was driving   | 2. realized<br>6. stopped<br>10. told<br>2. saw   | 6. helped<br>3. had seen<br>7. asked<br>3. was waving   | 3. didn't finish<br>6. helped<br>3. had seen<br>7. asked  | 4. was following<br>8. had been following<br>11. had mistaken<br>3. was waving    |
| 4. stopped<br>12. 1. was<br>5. will look<br>13. 1. was running  | 5. asked<br>2. was<br>6. told<br>2. to be   | 4. said<br>6. was<br>7. looked<br>3. leading  | 4. said<br>8. give<br>7. looked<br>3. leading   | 8. give<br>4. getting<br>4. seen<br>4. was crying                                 |
| 14. 1. hear<br>15. 1. entered<br>16. 1. was<br>6. felt  | 2. tell<br>2. stood<br>2. to get<br>7. looked   | 4. getting<br>3. have heard<br>3. took<br>3. could look   | 5. to take<br>9. was  | 5. to take<br>10. must know   |

17. 1. was born      2. moved      3. entered      4. contributed  
 5. appeared      6. was living      3. is expanding      4. have built  
 18. 1. has been      2. is living      3. was      4. got      5. didn't know  
 19. 1. got      2. was      3. was      4. got      9. had traveled  
 6. explained      7. was standing      8. told      9. had traveled  
 20. 1. is living/ lives      2. works      3. has been      4. is studying  
 5. arrived      6. has been  
 21. 1. was      2. wrote      3. arrested      4. put  
 22. 1. came      2. turned      3. was sleeping      4. told  
 23. 1. have known      2. moved      3. has lived      4. came  
 24. 1. was walking      2. saw      3. said      4. walked  
 25. 1. went      2. got      3. was      4. was planting  
 5. was  
 6. was working      7. were playing  
 26. 1. heard      2. walked      3. opened      4. opened  
 5. saw      6. greeted      7. asked  
 27. 1. has been      2. worked      3. had      4. didn't have  
 28. 1. bought      2. had been broken down      3. had      3. didn't expect      4. was  
 5. realized      6. had made      7. plays      8. has topped  
 29. 1. were invited      2. to spend      3. had just returned  
 4. rented      5. spent      6. understood  
 7. had      8. were broken      9. was leaked  
 30. 1. are      2. spoken      3. is      4. speak  
 5. is more widely spoken      6. speak      7. is spoken      8. found

- IV.**
1. Don't bother me while I am doing my homework.
  2. You have to listen to your teacher while she is explaining the lesson.
  3. You should do a good deed whenever you have a chance.
  4. He set off for another journey as soon as he had finished his first journey.
  5. It began to rain just as we left home.
  6. She had written three novels before she came here.
  7. I'll have taken three courses by the time you arrive in this city.
  8. The dog has followed its master ever since it was born.
  9. The train had just left when I arrived at the station.
  10. What were you doing when your father came home from work?

## CLAUSES OF CONDITION

- I.**
1. will/ shall give      2. would type      3. would have visited
  4. attended      5. knew      6. had arrived
  7. had      8. hadn't seen      9. studies
  10. would you have accepted?      11. grow/ will grow      12. stopped
  13. would you do      14. doesn't hurry      15. had tried
  16. wouldn't run      17. will you promise      18. see
  19. will arrest      20. had spoken
- II.**
1. Unless you are careful, you ...
  2. Unless you like this one, I'll ...
  3. I'll not be able to do any work unless I have a quiet room.
  4. Unless she hurries, she'll ...
  5. Unless we had more rain, our crops wouldn't be better.
  6. The crops wouldn't have been ruined unless the flood had risen higher.

7. Unless you had sneezed, he ...
8. Unless she did her hair differently she wouldn't look quite nice.
9. Unless John had played for our football team, we would have lost the game.
10. Unless I won a big prize in a lottery, I'd not give up my job.

- III. 1. Were I ...      5. Were I ...      9. Had they ...  
2. Had you ...      6. Were I ...      10. Were there ...  
3. Had he ...      7. Had you ...  
4. Were it ...      8. Were today ...

- IV. 1. ... I would help the poor.  
2. ... he had enough money.  
3. ..., I would take you to the circus.  
4. ..., he would have taken part in the trip with me.  
5. ... had studied hard.  
6. ... had been free.  
7. ..., they would have bought her a new car.  
8. ..., he would have met you.  
9. ..., we would have gone swimming.  
10. ... there were no war.

- V. 1. If you don't keep silent, you'll wake the baby up.  
2. If you left immediately, I wouldn't call a policeman.  
3. If I knew her number, I would ring her up.  
4. If you don't go right now, you'll be late for the train.  
5. If she weren't often absent from class, she could keep pace ...  
6. If I had known her address, I would have written to Alice.  
7. If I knew the answer, I could tell you.  
8. If we had had a map, we wouldn't have got lost.  
9. If his friends hadn't been so late, they wouldn't have missed the train.  
10. If today were Sunday, the pupils could go swimming.  
11. If it hadn't rained heavily, everybody would have gone out.  
12. If this chair weren't too heavy, he could move it.  
13. If he hadn't gone out in the rain last night, he wouldn't have had a flu.  
14. If there weren't the church bells, I could sleep.  
15. If we do morning exercises, we'll feel better.  
16. If you don't stop talking, you won't understand the lesson.  
17. If the boy weren't so young, he could go to school.  
18. If there weren't the fridge, the food would spoil.  
19. If I were you, I would study hard.  
20. If I were you, I would stop smoking.  
21. If you aren't careful, you'll cut ...  
22. If you aren't calm, you'll ...  
23. If there weren't the air, we would die.  
24. If she hadn't had a visa, she couldn't ...  
25. If there weren't the sun, man ...  
26. If he hadn't had money, he ...  
27. If he didn't smoke, he wouldn't be so weak.  
28. If it hadn't been very cold yesterday, we could have gone swimming.  
29. If it weren't very cold, we could go swimming.  
30. If I hadn't been busy, I would have watched TV last night.

## CLAUSES AFTER WISH/ IF ONLY

- I. 1. I were      4. would give      7. had watched      10. would be  
2. hadn't given    5. could take      8. had      ...  
3. had visited     6. had understood    9. had come
- II. 1. I wish my father were here now.  
2. The teacher wishes you worked more than you talked.  
3. John wishes he would be an astronaut in the future (when he grew up).  
4. I wish I had helped you yesterday.  
5. I wish you had given me a chance ...  
6. Mary wishes she would be able to attend ...  
7. We wish we had had enough money ...  
8. I wish you drove more slowly.  
9. The teacher wishes you were more studious.  
10. I wish he would get over ...  
11. I wish I were a doctor.  
12. I wish I had enough money ...  
13. I wish I didn't live in a big city.  
14. Nam wishes he had accepted the job.  
15. I wish tomorrow weren't a workday.  
16. We wish we wouldn't have to work this Saturday.  
17. I wish I hadn't eaten too much ice-cream.  
18. I wish you had been here last week.  
19. I wish I hadn't spoken to him so impolitely yesterday.  
20. Alan wished he hadn't asked Arthur to lend him 20\$.  
21. I wish the baby stopped crying.  
22. He wishes he had invited Molly to his party.  
23. I wish the hotel had been good.  
24. I wish I had understood the lesson.  
25. I wish my friend had passed his exam.

## PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

- I. 1. The boy stood on the benches to get a better view.  
The boy stood on the benches so that he could get a better view.  
2. We lower the volume of the radio so as not to bother our neighbours.  
We lower the volume of the radio so that we will not bother our neighbours.  
3. I'll write to you in order that you'll know my decision soon.  
I'll write to you in order for you to know my decision soon.  
4. These men were talking in whispers in order that nobody could hear their conversation.  
These men were talking in whispers in order for nobody to hear their conversation.  
5. The boy feigned to be sick so that we wouldn't make him work.  
6. The man spoke loudly so that everybody could hear him clearly.  
7. Doris often goes home as soon as the class is over so that her mother won't wait for her.  
8. John gets up early so that he won't be late for class.  
9. Mary hid the novel under her pillow so that her father wouldn't see it.  
10. Alice prepares her lesson carefully in order that she will get high marks in class.

11. The robber changed his address all the time in order that the police couldn't find him.
12. They did their jobs well so that the boss would increase their salary.
13. You should walk slowly so that your sister can follow you.
14. I'm studying hard in order to keep pace with my classmates.
15. We turned out the lights so as not to waste electricity.
16. This pupil read only for short periods each day so as not to strain his eyes.
17. I whispered so that I wouldn't disturb anyone.
18. The clown took off his mask so as not to frighten the children.
19. My father drove carefully so that he wouldn't cause accidents.
20. Sue dutifully followed her parents' advice so as not to cause trouble for her parents.
21. Mr. Thompson is learning Vietnamese in order to read Kim Van Kieu.
22. Please shut the door so that the dog won't go out of the house.
23. The farmer built a high wall around his garden so that the fruits wouldn't be stolen.
24. The police stopped the traffic every few minutes so that the pedestrians might cross the road.
25. The notices are written in several languages for everyone to understand them.
26. I wish to have enough money in order to buy a new house.
27. Dick is practising the guitar to play for the dance.
28. She needs a job so that she will support her old parents.
29. He moved to the front row to hear the speaker better.
30. She put the meat into the oven in order that it would be ready for dinner.

- II.
1. Leave early to get home before dark.
  2. This man changed his address constantly to avoid the police.
  3. I shouted in order to warn everyone of danger.
  4. Banks are developed to keep people's money safe.
  5. Mary went to the library in order to borrow some books.
  6. Yesterday father went to the bank so as to open a checking account.
  7. I went to see him so as to find out what had happened.
  8. Tom is saving up to buy a new bicycle.
  9. He hurried to catch the train.
  10. She is learning French to be able to speak it when she comes to Paris.
- III.
1. We hurried to school so that we wouldn't be late.
  2. He climbed the tree so that he could get a better view.
  3. You should get up early to have time to review your lesson.
  4. Some young people like to earn their own living in order to be independent of their parents.
  5. We should do morning exercises regularly so that we can improve our health.
  6. We should take advantage of the scientific achievements of the world to develop our national economy.
  7. Every people in the world must unite their efforts so that they can maintain and protect peace.
  8. She put on warm clothes so as not to catch cold.
  9. He hurried to the station so that he wouldn't miss the train.
  10. She locked the door so that she wouldn't be disturbed.
- IV.
1. ... he wouldn't miss the bus.
  2. ... to go to the cinema with Tom.
  3. ... they can talk to the foreigners.
  4. ... have a better view.
  5. ... she would call me.
  6. ... to help you.
  7. ... we would understand it well.
  8. ... save a child.

9. ... he can buy a computer.  
 10. ... to be late for school.  
 11. ... to pass our exam.  
 12. ... she will give it to her brother on his birthday.  
 13. ... visit their friends.  
 14. ... to be dismissed from his work.  
 15. ... the boss would increase their salaries.

## PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF RESULT

- I.** 1. so    2. such    3. so    4. such    5. so    6. so    7. such    8. so  
 9. such    10. such    11. so    12. so    13. such    14. so    15. so
- II.** 1. The lesson is so difficult that nobody can understand it.  
 2. The work is so hard that I can't finish it on time.  
 3. This novel was so interesting that I couldn't put it down.  
 4. This song is so simple that all of us can sing it.  
 5. My brothers and sisters were so excited about the trip that they couldn't sleep.
- III.** 1. The house is such an expensive one that nobody can buy it.  
 It is such an expensive house that ...  
 2. The boy is such a nice one that we all like him.  
 He is such a nice boy that ...  
 3. It is such cold weather that we couldn't go out.  
 4. The room was such a dark one that I couldn't see anything.  
 It was such a dark room that ...  
 5. The day was such a nice one that we decided to go to the beach.  
 It was such a nice day that ...
- IV.** 1. The sun shone so brightly that Maria ...  
 2. Dean was such a powerful swimmer that he ...  
 3. There were so few students registered that the class ...  
 4. The house was so beautiful that I ...  
 5. This coffee is so strong that I ...  
 6. It is such a good film that I ...  
 7. There was so much food that everyone ...  
 8. There were so many guests that there ...  
 9. I ate so many sandwiches that I ...  
 10. David has so much work to do that he ...  
 11. He was so sick that he ...  
 12. It was so dark that he ...  
 13. He has such wide knowledge that we ...  
 14. His conduct is so good that all ...  
 15. Mary has such a beautiful voice that we ...  
 16. John is still so weak that he ...  
 17. My father has such a good health that he ...  
 18. There is so much noise that we ...  
 19. My friend is so strong that he ...  
 20. Bill is such an intelligent boy that he ...
- V.** 1. He is such a clever boy (man, person) that he ...  
 2. Mr. Keller is such a rich man that he ...  
 3. This city is such a large one that I've ...  
 4. It was such a nice day that all ...  
 5. This is such a small shop that we ...

6. That was such a big fish that it ...  
7. The test we did yesterday was such a difficult one that we ...  
8. The play we saw yesterday was such a bad one that we ...  
9. The story he told us was such a funny one that I ...  
10. Jane has such a good conduct that everybody ...  
11. Mary has such a beautiful voice that we ...  
12. Miss Snow has such a valuable ring that she ...  
13. Your dog is such a fierce one that nobody ...  
    You have such a fierce dog that ...  
14. His house is such a beautiful one that he ...  
    He has such a beautiful house that ...  
15. Our car is such an old one that we ...  
    We have such an old car that ...
- VI.** 1. ....we hardly understood it.                                 2. .... everybody wanted to buy it.  
3. ... we were late for work.                                     4. .... he rarely goes to the cinema.  
5. ... they don't fit anyone.                                     6. ... we didn't understand what he said.  
7. ... we all admired him.   8. ... they have to spend a lot of time to  
   get over them.  
9. ... we can't climb up the top.                                 10. ... I don't have time to go out.  
11. ... nobody can lift it.   12. ... we want to go swimming.  
13. ... I wanted to see it again.                                 14. ... we kept talking about it.  
15. ... the students can't learn it by heart.                     16. ... I can't sleep.  
17. ... I've read it many times.                                 18. ... we don't see the tops.  
19. ... her students can't follow her.                         20. ... she seldom goes shopping.

- VII.** 1. It was too cold for us to want to go out.  
2. Mr. Pike is too weak to walk without a stick.  
3. The ground is too hard for us to dig.  
4. The elephant is too big to run fast.  
5. Your handwriting is too bad for me to read.  
6. This man is too old to walk.  
7. These shoes are too big for me to wear.  
8. These goods are too expensive to be sold quickly.  
9. She walked too fast for her younger sister to follow.  
10. I got up too late to have time to eat breakfast.

- VIII.** 1. He isn't young enough to wear this coloured shirt.  
2. She isn't strong enough to carry this bag.  
3. This pen isn't cheap enough for me to buy.  
4. Bill isn't intelligent/ clever enough to understand what I say.  
5. This bag isn't light enough for her to carry.  
6. The test wasn't easy enough for them to do.  
7. That sentence wasn't short enough for me to memorize.  
8. The land isn't fertile enough to grow crops.  
9. The room isn't quiet enough for us to study.  
10. This book isn't interesting enough to read.  
11. We weren't early enough to get good seats.  
12. Jack isn't hard-working enough to make progress in his study.  
13. I'm not rich enough to help you with the money.  
14. These oranges aren't sweet enough for us to eat.  
15. The shelf isn't short enough for the boy to reach.

16. This road isn't safe enough for her to go at night.  
 17. The water in this pool isn't pure enough to drink.  
 18. Martha isn't beautiful enough to have a boyfriend.  
 19. This room isn't bright enough for us to study.  
 20. He didn't study well enough to pass his exam.
- IX.** 1. so many    2. so much    3. so much    4. so many    5. so much  
 6. so many    7. so many    8. so much    9. so much    10. so much  
 11. so many    12. so many    13. so much    14. so much    15. so many

## PHRASES AND CLAUSES OF REASON

- I. 1. because    2. because    3. because of    4. because of    5. because
- II. 1. Since she saw the wanted man in a small coffee shop, she phoned the police.  
 2. Because the teacher is sick, we'll have no class tomorrow.  
 3. She walked slowly because her leg was injured.  
 4. Mary looks happy because she has just got good marks.  
 5. He came to the office 10 minutes late because he missed the first bus.  
 6. Because she coughed and sneezed, the doctor said she had to stay out of crowd.  
 7. Since it got dark, I couldn't read the letter.  
 8. I didn't come in time because there was a traffic-jam.  
 9. He stayed at home yesterday because his mother was sick.  
 10. We didn't want to go out because it rained heavily.
- III. 1. Why did you leave school?    2. Why was the train late?  
 3. Why will they leave early?    4. Why does she like him?  
 5. Why did the pupil understand that mathematical problem very well?
- V. 1. We stay at home because it's raining.  
 2. Because most people hear jogging is a good exercise, they begin to jog.  
 3. Because the climate in the country is healthy, people like to live there.  
 4. Because a computer can be used for various purposes, it becomes very popular nowadays.  
 5. Because tomorrow is a public holiday, all the shops will be shut.
- VI. 1. Mary didn't go to school yesterday because of being sick/ her sickness.  
 2. She went to bed early because of feeling tired/ her tiredness.  
 3. Ann didn't go to the circus with Betty because of having a bad cold/ her bad cold.  
 4. John succeeded in his exam because of working hard and methodically.  
 5. ... because of her mother's sickness/ her mother's being sick.  
 6. ... because of his father's kindness to me/ his father's being kind to me.  
 7. ... because of the greenness of the fruits.  
 8. ... because of the difficulty of the test/ its difficulty/ its being difficult.  
 9. ... because of the darkness.  
 10. ... because of the heavy rain.  
 11. ... because of the noise.  
 12. ... because of the fog.  
 13. ... because of his good conduct.  
 14. ... because of the thick fog.  
 15. ... because of the red traffic lights.  
 16. ... because of the bad weather.  
 17. ... because of the warm and damp climate.  
 18. ... because of the crowded and narrow street.  
 19. ... because of the hot weather.  
 20. ... because of his hard life.

## PHRASES & CLAUSES OF CONCESSION

- I.
1. Although he is very rich, he isn't happy.
  2. No matter how rich he is, he isn't happy.
  3. Although she is very intelligent, she can't answer my question.
  4. No matter how intelligent she is, she can't answer my question.
  5. Whatever he does, he is always careful.
  6. No matter what he does, he always tries his best.
  7. Whatever she says, I don't believe her.
  8. No matter what she says, I don't believe her.
  9. No matter how hard he tried, he was not successful.
  10. Although he tried, he was not successful.
  11. Although his life is hard, he is determined to study well.
  12. No matter how hard his life is, he is determined to study well.
  13. Though he was wise and experienced, he was taken in.
  14. No matter what jobs he got, he was not satisfied.
  15. Even though he got good jobs, he was not satisfied.
  16. Whatever jobs you do, you should do it devotedly.
  17. No matter where he lived, he always thought of his homeland.
  18. No matter how cold it was, he didn't wear warm clothes.
  19. Many people believe him although he often tells lies.
  20. No matter when/ at what time you return, she waits for you.
- II.
1. Whatever happens, don't forget to write to me.
  2. Whatever kinds of effort we made to persuade her, she will refuse to consider our proposal.
  3. Whatever kinds of exercises he had taken, he was still putting on weight.
  4. Whatever sorts of difficulties you may encounter, you should keep your promise.
  5. Whatever he says, nobody believes him.
  6. Whatever kinds of difficulties you have, you should review all your lessons before taking your exam.
  7. Whatever kinds of exercises he had taken, he got fatter and fatter.
  8. Whatever difficulties you encounter, you should always study hard.
  9. Whatever others may say, she is certainly right.
  10. Whatever jobs he chose, his parents were pleased with him.
- III.
1. She didn't eat much in spite of being hungry/ her being hungry/ her hunger.
  2. Despite being good at maths/ his being good at maths, he couldn't solve the problem.
  3. In spite of being over sixty/ his age, Mr. Pike doesn't wear glasses.
  4. Despite (his) having much experience in machinery, he ...
  5. In spite of the darkness, they ...
  6. In spite of the noise, I ...
  7. Despite the heavy rain, I ...
  8. ... in spite of the fog.
  9. ... in spite of their greenness/ their being green/ the greenness of the fruits.
  10. ... in spite of the difficult test/ the difficulty of the test.
  11. Despite his strength/ his being strong, I'm ...
  12. In spite of his poverty/ his being poor, everybody ...
  13. Despite the bad weather, the plane ...
  14. In spite of the red traffic lights/ the turning red of the traffic lights, he ...

15. In spite of his hard life at that time, he ...
16. Despite the narrow streets, many people ...
17. Despite his good English, he ...
18. Despite having got an English name/ his English name, he ...
19. In spite of his difficulties, he ...
20. In spite of the bad weather, we ...
21. In spite of not having finished the paper, he ...
22. Despite not feeling alert, she ...
23. Despite his mother's having told him not to, the child ...  
(having been told not to by his mother)
24. In spite of disliking it/ her disliking it, she ...
25. In spite of disliking flying/ her disliking flying, Mary ...
26. Despite being sad/ her being sad, Mary ...
27. Despite her poor memory, the old woman ...
28. Despite having been absent frequently, he ...
29. In spite of being on diet, he ...
30. In spite of the high prices, my daughters ...

## **CLAUSES AFTER AS IF/ AS THOUGH/ ...**

- |     |  |   |                                 |
|-----|--|---|---------------------------------|
| I.  | 1. stay                                    | 2. have stayed                                | 3. drink                        |
|     | 4. stood                                   | 5. cooked                                     | 6. hadn't arrived               |
|     | 7. had slept                               | 8. was/ were                                  | 9. hadn't failed                |
|     | 10. had invited                            | 11. understood                                | 12. went                        |
|     | 13. went                                   | 14. got                                       | 15. knew                        |
|     | 16. paid                                   | 17. had                                       | 18. had swum/ had been swimming |
|     | 19. had met                                | 20. had won                                   |                                 |
| II. | 1. I feel as if my head were on fire now.  | 2. I felt as though I was walking in the air. |                                 |
|     | 3. I'd rather Bill worked hard.            | 4. I'd rather he had wanted to pay his debts. |                                 |
|     | 5. I'd rather he didn't drive too fast.    | 6. He spent his money as if he were a prince. |                                 |
|     | 7. You speak as though you were a prophet. | 8. It's high time we set out.                 |                                 |
|     | 9. It's time you reviewed your lessons.    | 10. I'd rather he gave up smoking.            |                                 |
|     | 11. She looked as if she hadn't known me.  | 12. It's time he called me on the phone.      |                                 |
|     | 13. It's high time we started working now. | 14. She made up as if she were an actress.    |                                 |
|     | 15. She cried as though she were a baby.   | 16. They talk as if they were kings.          |                                 |
|     | 17. It's time we solved this problem.      | 18. Mary dressed up as if she were a queen.   |                                 |
|     | 19. I'd rather she didn't talk too much.   | 20. I'd rather he came to my house tonight.   |                                 |

## **NOUN CLAUSES**

- |    |                       |                       |              |
|----|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| I. | 1. Whether            | 2. whether            | 3. Why       |
|    | 4. why                | 5. that               | 6. Where     |
|    | 7. why                | 8. how                | 9. how many  |
|    | 10. where             | 11. who/ whom         | 12. that     |
|    | 13. Whether/ When     | 14. what              | 15. What     |
|    | 16. when/ why         | 17. how long          | 18. which    |
|    | 19. that              | 20. what              | 21. how much |
|    | 22. why               | 23. who               | 24. that     |
|    | 25. that              | 26. at what time/ how | 27. how much |
|    | 28. how high/ how old | 29. how old           | 30. that     |

II

- II. 1. Tom is sad today.
- 3. he had lost his bicycle.
- 5. he was born in 1980.
- 7. you will win.
- 9. he is rich.

- 2. he was absent from class yesterday.
- 4. old I was.
- 6. he had gone the night before.
- 8. London has fog.
- 10. she died last year.

III

- III. 1. ... how old you are.
- 2. ... what you did yesterday.
- 3. ... how you came here.
- 4. ... where you are going to spend your holiday next summer.
- 5. ... what you want.
- 6. ... you can help me.

IV

V

VI

RELATIVE CLAUSES

**RELATIVE CLAUSES****I.**

- 1. ..., who discovered penicillin, received ...
- 3. which/ that
- 5. , whom I have known for ten years,
- 7. of which
- 9. whom
- 11. which/ that
- 13. which/ that
- 15. ..., who serve in the restaurant, ...
- 17. ..., whose sister I know, is ...
- 19. which/ that
- 21. which
- 23. ..., who is only 34, ...
- 25. where
- 27. whose
- 29. when - where
- 2. that/ which
- 4. whose
- 6. whose
- 8. ...., whose branches are dry, ...
- 10. ...., whose name I don't remember, ...
- 12. who/ that
- 14. whose
- 16. whose
- 18. which/ that
- 20. ...., whose theories have changed the world's history, ...
- 22. who/ that
- 24. ...., whose work is very important, ...
- 26. whom
- 28. that
- 30. which

I.

- 1. Thank you very much for the present which you sent me.
- 2. Romeo and Juliet were lovers whose parents hated each other.
- 3. This is Mrs. Jones, whose son won the championship last year.
- 4. I was sitting in a chair which suddenly collapsed.
- 5. This is the story of the man whose wife suddenly loses her memory.
- 6. Charlie Chaplin, whose films amused millions of people in the world, died in 1977.
- 7. Please post these letters, which I wrote this morning.
- 8. The building whose tower can be seen from afar is the church.
- 9. Mary and Margaret, whom you met yesterday, are twins.
- 10. I'll introduce you to the man whose support is necessary for your project.
- 11. The students who study seriously and methodically will surely be successful in their exams.
- 12. Mary, whose sister I know, has won an Oscar.
- 13. Is this the style of hair which your wife wanted to have?
- 14. Shakespeare, who is the world's greatest dramatist and poet, was born at Stratford on Avon, a small town in England.
- 15. His girl friend, whom he trusted absolutely, turned out to be an enemy spy.
- 16. A man brought in a small girl whose hand had been cut.
- 17. The Smiths, whose house had been destroyed in the explosion, were given rooms in the hotel.

18. He introduced me to his students, most of whom were from abroad.  
19. They gave me four very bad tyres, one of which burst before I had driven four miles.  
20. The man who answered the phone said Tom was out.
- II. 1. The teacher with whom we studied last year is Mr. Pike.  
2. The problem in which we are very interested has been discussed in class.  
3. Many diseases of which people died years ago are no longer dangerous.  
4. Do you see my pen, with which I have just written my lesson?  
5. I like standing at the window from which I can see the park.  
6. We are crossing the meadow over which we flew kites in our childhood.  
7. They are repairing the tubes through which water is brought into our house.  
8. In the middle of the village there is the well from which the villagers take water to drink.  
9. The middle-aged man to whom my father is talking is the director.  
10. This is a rare opportunity of which you should take advantage to get a better job.  
11. The boy of whom you made fun is my cousin.  
12. This matter, to which you should pay attention, is of great importance.  
13. The woman to whom you gave place on the bus lives next door to me.  
14. This snake, of which you are afraid, is venomless.  
15. The examination in which I was successful lasted two days.  
16. These children, of whom she is taking care, are orphans.  
17. The two young men, with whom you are acquainted, are not good persons.  
18. This is the result of our work, with which I'm pleased.  
19. There is a "No Parking" sign of which I do not take notice.  
20. Mr. Brown is the man to whom I'm responsible for my work.
- V. 1. This is the house where we often stay in the summer.  
2. That was the time when he managed the enterprise.  
3. I'll show you the second-hand bookshop where you can find valuable books.  
4. I never forget the park where we met each other for the first time.  
5. The police want to know the hotel where Mr. Bush stayed two weeks ago.  
6. The reasons why I'm scolded by the teacher are basic grammatical ones.  
7. She doesn't want to speak to the cause why she divorced her husband.  
8. The road on which/ where I go to school everyday is shaded with trees.  
9. I have not decided the day when I'll go to London.  
10. He doesn't want to sell the house where he was born.  
11. The airport where we are going to arrive is the most modern one.  
12. He was born on the day when his father was away.  
13. The days when I lived far from home were the saddest ones.  
14. I don't know the reason why she left school.  
15. The bed where I sleep has no mattress.  
16. Our school has a good laboratory where the students practise chemistry.  
17. You didn't tell us the reason why we had to cut down our daily expenses.  
18. The book where we can look up telephone numbers is a telephone directory.  
19. Mrs. Brown rang Dr. Brown when he was going to carry out an urgent operation.  
20. This is the house where we have lived for 5 years.
1. The student who sits next to me is from China.  
2. I thanked the woman who had helped me.  
3. The professor whose course I'm taking is excellent.  
4. Jim passed the exam, which surprised everybody.  
5. Mr. Smith whom I had come to see said he was too busy to speak to me.

6. The man whom I respect most is my father.
  7. The man whose opinions I respect most is my father.
  8. I saw a lot of people and horses that went to market.
  9. Tom has three sisters, all of whom are married.
  10. I recently went back to Paris, which is still as beautiful as a pearl.
  11. I recently went back to Paris, where I was born nearly 50 years ago.
  12. She is the most intelligent woman whom I've ever met.
  13. This doctor, whom you visited yesterday, is famous.
  14. Do you know the music which is being played on the radio?
  15. The police want to know the hotel where Mr. Foster stayed two weeks ago.
  16. You didn't tell us the reason why we have to cut down our daily expenses.
  17. The day when she left was rainy.
  18. The reason why the president will come to that city hasn't been told yet.
  19. Phuong Thao is the singer whose music you like best.
  20. She couldn't come to the party, which is a pity.
  21. I've sent him two letters, neither of which he has received.
  22. That man, whose name I don't remember, is an artist.
  23. The reason which you gave yesterday is not valid.
  24. We enjoyed the city where we spent our vacation.
  25. One of the elephants which we saw at the zoo had only one tusk.
  26. I looked at the moon which was very bright that evening.
  27. My father, whom you met this morning, goes swimming everyday.
  28. That car, whose engine is very good, belongs to Dr. Clark.
  29. In the class there are 48 students, only a few of whom the teacher knows.
  30. The pupils haven't done their homework, which is too bad.
  31. We first met in 1945, when the revolution took place.
  32. The girl who won the race is happy.
  33. The taxi driver who took me to the airport is friendly.
  34. I liked the composition which you wrote.
  35. The people whom we visited yesterday were very nice.
  36. The meeting which I went to was interesting.
  37. The picture at which she was looking was beautiful.
  38. I apologized the woman whose coffee I spilled.
  39. The professor whose course I'm taking is excellent.
  40. The man whose wallet was stolen called the police.
  41. I have to call the man whose umbrella I accidentally picked up.
  42. The city where we spent our vacation was beautiful.
  43. That is the restaurant where I'll meet you.
  44. The town where I grew up is small.
  45. I'll never forget the day when I first met you.
  46. May is the month when the weather is usually the hottest.
  47. 7:30 is the time when my plane will arrive.
  48. Do you remember the year when the First World War ended?
  49. The man whose father is a botanist is a biologist.
  50. I love my parents' house, where I was born.
- VI.**
1. The man about whom we are talking is a famous scientist.
  2. The tree from which we picked these fruits is in front of the house.
  3. The city in which we were born is very large.
  4. Do you remember the day on which we first met?

5. The manager on whom we have all depended so much has just announced his retirement.
6. The officer to whom I spoke yesterday wasn't very friendly.
7. The dog at which the boys threw stones was very frightened.
8. The road on which we are driving was built in 1980.
9. Did you see the letter which came yesterday morning?
10. This is Rex Hotel, which is the biggest hotel in the city.

- VII. 1. ... why you are so sad now.                    2. ... which Mary lost yesterday.
3. ... who are lazy.                                    4. ... who stole my car last week.
5. ... where I was born?                            6. ... who are talkative.
7. ... whom I like best...                            8. .... whom I respect most...
9. ... which she bought last year.                10. ... where we have lived for 10 years.
11. ... who won the gold medal last year.      12. ...where my father works.
13. ... which/ that won the race?                14. ... who set fire to the house.
15. ... which she bought two months ago.      16. ... that knows her?
17. ... where people sell everything.            18. ... that we built last year.
19. ... who saved a baby.                            20. ... why you were absent from class yesterday?

- IX) 1. The man standing there is a clown.  
 2. The envelop lying on the table has no...  
 3. Benzene, discovered by Faraday, became...  
 4. My grandmother, being old and sick, never...  
 5. The students don't know how to do the exercises given by the teacher yesterday.  
 6. The diagrams made by young Faraday were sent...  
 7. The gentleman living next door to me is...  
 8. All the astronauts orbiting the earth in space capsules are weightless.  
 9. All students not handing in their papers will fail...  
 10. I saw many houses destroyed by the storm.  
 11. The street leading to the school...  
 12. The system used here is...  
 13. Mr. Jackson, teaching my son, is...  
 14. Trains leaving from...  
 15. The candidates sitting for the exam...  
 16. We are driving on the road built in 1980.  
 17. Customers complaining about the service...  
 18. The city destroyed during the war...  
 19. My brother, meeting you yesterday, works...  
 20. The vegetables sold in this shop are...

- IX. 1. We had a river to swim.  
 2. The child would be happier if he had someone to play with.  
 3. I have some letters to write.  
 4. If she had a family to cook for, she...  
 5. I haven't anyone to go with.  
 6. We had to eat standing up because we hadn't anything to sit on.  
 7. I wish I had a box to keep my letters in.  
 8. She hadn't anyone to send cards.  
 9. Have you got a key to unlock this door?  
 10. There are six letters to be written today?  
 11. There is a bench for your children to sit on.

12. We have some picture books for children to read.

13. He was the second man to be killed in this way.

14. Here is the novel for her to read.

15. The man to be interviewed was...

X. 1. ... the first woman who took her seat...

2. The last student who was interviewed was...

3. ... the only person who saw...

4. The last person who leaves the room...

5. ... the only person who survived...

6. ... the first boy who reached...

7. ... the first man who left...

8. ... a lake where/ in which we could swim.

9. ... an application form that you must fill in.

10. ... some letters that/ which I must type right now.

## EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY

- |      |                              |                       |                                       |                       |
|------|------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| I.   | 1. much                      | 2. a little           | 3. many                               | 4. fewer              |
|      | 5. too much                  | 6. less               | 7. too much                           | 8. any/ some          |
|      | 9. any                       | 10. How many          | 11. How much                          | 12. any               |
|      | 13. anything                 | 14. a little          | 15. any                               | 16. little            |
|      | 17. a great deal of          | 18. a large number of | 19. a little                          | 20. a few             |
| II.  | 1. Most                      | 2. Most of            | 3. Most of                            | 4. Most - most of     |
| III. | 1. A great deal of           |                       | 2. a great deal of                    |                       |
|      | 3. many of                   |                       | 4. much                               |                       |
|      | 5. much                      |                       | 6. many of                            |                       |
|      | 7. many                      |                       | 8. much                               |                       |
|      | 9. many of                   |                       | 10. much                              |                       |
|      | 11. a large number of/ many  |                       | 12. much - a large number of/ many of |                       |
|      | 13. a great deal of          |                       | 14. A large number of                 |                       |
|      | 15. many/ a large number of  |                       | 16. a great deal of                   |                       |
|      | 17. a great deal of          |                       | 18. A large number of                 |                       |
|      | 19. a great deal of          |                       | 20. much                              |                       |
| IV.  | 1. some                      | 2. someone            | 3. any                                | 4. any - some         |
|      | 6. some                      | 7. some               | 8. any                                | 5. anyone - somewhere |
| V.   | 1. little                    | 2. a little - little  | 3. A few of                           | 4. a little           |
|      | 6. little                    | 7. little of          | 8. A few of                           | 5. little             |
| VI.  | 1. few                       |                       | 9. little                             | 10. few               |
|      | 3. Most of                   |                       | 2. Some/ Many/ A large number of      |                       |
|      | 5. Most                      |                       | 4. Most of                            |                       |
|      | 7. much                      |                       | 6. a little                           |                       |
|      | 9. little                    |                       | 8. a great deal of                    |                       |
|      | 11. most of                  |                       | 10. most/ a large number of/ many     |                       |
|      | 13. much- little             |                       | 12. much                              |                       |
|      | 15. much                     |                       | 14. many                              |                       |
|      | 17. little - a great deal of |                       | 16. most of                           |                       |
|      | 19. little/ a little         |                       | 18. Few                               |                       |
|      | 21. much - many              |                       | 20. many - a few                      |                       |
|      | 23. Most of                  |                       | 22. Most/ Many/ A large number of     |                       |
|      |                              |                       | 24. many - much                       |                       |

25. much

27. Most

29. Some/ Many/ A large number of

26. A great deal of

28. Most of

30. Most

VII. 1. many

2. plenty of

3. millions of

4. number

5. A lot of

6. Much

7. most

8. much

9. much

## STYLES

### I.

1. He didn't intend to make a long journey with her.
2. Has the city government decided to build... ?
3. She isn't interested in what...
4. Do most school-leavers strongly desire to work...?
5. I don't think they disagree with what... .
6. The plan didn't succeed just because most members weren't determined to do it well.
7. During the lesson, she always looks carefully at all...
8. My friend wished to become a pilot.
9. You needn't answer all the questions...
10. Please call me when you arrive, and we'll meet at a...
11. She doesn't know what will be for she never thinks about it.
12. She said she would visit me someday.
13. He decided to leave home.
14. I didn't intend to stay here.
15. She is greatly interested in music.
16. The two schoolgirls exchanged their English lessons.
17. He bathes every morning.
18. I arranged with the neighbours about feeding the cats.
19. She didn't explain her plan.
20. She was examined by a doctor.

### II.

1. I had an argument with:..
2. Are you in agreement with... .
3. She usually gives her hair a brush before going out.
4. She had a number of complaints about his rudeness.
5. Because of engine trouble, the plane had to make a landing on the fields.
6. Take a look at this picture.
7. I'm very much in falling in love with her.
8. We must make an early start.
9. He was in receipt of her letter...
10. After lunch time she usually takes a rest.

### III.

1. They tend to minimize problems.
2. They strongly desire to put... .
3. They gave a great deal of thought to their work.
4. They knew little about the job of their choice.
5. They are determined to overcome problems.
6. He pays us a visit whenever... .
7. They have tended to choose... .
8. Their future work is thought much by some children.
9. You'd better not contact her.
10. I had a good sleep last night.
11. Carol Stuart is a good cook and swimmer.

12. She strongly desires a scholarship.
13. The villagers cordially welcomed us.
14. He doesn't intend to leave the city.
15. She is a good English teacher.
16. This man is a beggar.
17. She is a careful typist.
18. Hardly had we begun to walk when it rained.
19. This woman sleeps very little.
20. My grandfather loves music.
21. He drives carefully.
22. She is a good singer.
23. Mary is a good cook.
24. No one in his team plays football as well as him.
25. She is a good tennis player.
26. English is spoken in Australia.
27. A school is being built for the poor.
28. She hasn't been seen since 1980.
29. His parents were visited by him last week.
30. English can be spoken fluently by her.
31. The shop is opened at six o'clock.
32. Millions of dollars are spent on advertising every year.
33. We are going to be told a story by the teacher.
34. We built this house 100 years ago.
35. They have made all the arrangements.
36. She ought to wear evening dress.
37. They were going to increase our salary.
38. They have to do this job at once.
39. We couldn't find them anywhere.
40. His story isn't believed.

## EMPHASIS

1. It was Ted that broke the news to me./ Ted himself broke the news to me.
2. It is important to know your limitations.
3. It is money, not affection that they want.
4. He did misunderstand my intentions.
5. It was after she had gone that I remembered her name.
6. I did do my English test very well.
7. Is it Mary that wash up everyday?/ Does Mary herself wash up everyday?
8. It was from Francis that she first heard the news.
9. It is perhaps because he's a misfit that I get along with him.
10. It is pilots, not ground staff that we need.
11. It is certain that prices will go up.
12. It is better to be early.
13. It was Peter himself not Paul that lent us money.
14. We found it impossible to get a visa.
15. It is today that he is going.
16. We ordered wine itself. We didn't order beer.
17. Bad roads don't cause accidents. Speed itself does.
18. It is cruel to tease animals.

19. It takes time and practice to master a second language.  
 20. I did love you.  
 21. I myself love you.  
 22. I love you yourself.  
 23. It was in 1966, not in 1967 that it happened.  
 24. It was England that won the World Cup in 1966.  
 25. We did enjoy ourselves.  
 26. Does Mr. Smith want to visit ourselves?  
 27. It is unlikely that income tax will be reduced.  
 28. It is in autumn that the countryside is most beautiful.  
 29. The teacher does wish you worked more than you talked.  
 30. It was in Waterloo that Napoleon was finally defeated.  
 31. I myself am wrong.  
 32. It was Ann, not Mary that I saw.  
 33. John did take your book. He told me so.  
 34. Do remember to lock the door before you leave.  
 35. It was by train that we reached Istanbul.  
 36. It is fun to be a hostess.  
 37. I think it's not a good idea to take up yoga.  
 38. Do be careful.  
 39. It was very kind of him to help me.  
 40. It takes Mrs. Jones too much time to make up.  
 41. You are mistaken.  
 42. Do visit us again some time.  
 43. Don't you make too much noise.  
 44. I did do my English test very well.  
 45. Only by hard work can you succeed.  
 46. It was the smoke from factory chimneys that polluted the air.  
 47. My mother made this cake itself.  
 48. I do enjoy travelling.  
 49. David himself teaches in a Technical College.  
 50. Do help me solve this problem.

## DANH TỪ (NOUNS)

I.	- treat	: common,	abstract,	countable noun
	- city	: common,	concrete,	countable noun
	- air	: common,	concrete,	uncountable noun
	- countryside	: common,	concrete,	countable noun
	- rain	: common,	concrete,	uncountable noun
	- sun	: common,	concrete,	countable noun
	- door	: common,	concrete,	countable noun
	- friends	: common,	concrete,	countable noun
	- house	: common,	concrete,	countable noun
	- dogs	: common,	concrete,	countable noun
	- welcome	: common,	concrete;	uncountable noun
	- forest	: common,	concrete,	countable noun
	- evening	: common,	concrete,	countable noun
	- deer	: common,	concrete,	countable noun
	- days	: common,	concrete,	countable noun

II.	- ways	: object of preposition
	- meals	: object
	- window ledge	: object of preposition
	- saucer	: object of preposition
	- breakfast	: object of preposition
	- porridge	: object
	- cornflakes	: object
	- milk	: object of preposition
	- sugar	: object of preposition
	- lunch	: object of preposition
	- vegetable; potatoes	: object
	- pudding	: object of preposition
	- tea-time	: object of preposition
	- table	: object of preposition
	- jam-pot	: object of preposition
	- cries of delight	: object of preposition
	- doors	: object
	- moods	: subject
	- child	: object of preposition
	- expression	: object of preposition
	- face	: object of preposition
	- shoulder	: object of preposition
	- ear	: indirect object
	- bite	: direct object

III. Beds, churches, roofs/ rooves, taxis, dishes, maps, cats, books, dogs, rooms, boys, sizes, houses, forces, changes, places, pencils, guests, listeners, things, pedestrians, sentences.

/s/ roofs, maps, cats, books, guests

/z/ beds, rooves, dogs, rooms, boys, pencils, listeners, things, pedestrians

/iz/ churches, taxis, dishes, sizes, houses, forces, changes, places, sentences.

IV.	+ air	: không khí	+ fruit	: thành quả
	airs	: diệu bộ	fruits	: trái cây
	+ damage	: sự thiệt hại	+ pain	: đau đớn
	damages	: tiền bồi thường thiệt hại	pains	: khó khăn
	+ paper	: giấy viết	+ work	: công việc
	papers	: giấy tờ	works	: nhà máy, những tác phẩm
	+ salt	: muối		
	salts	: các loại muối		

V.	1. brings	2. is	3. were	4. were	5. has
	6. makes	7. have	8. is	9. brighten	10. is
	11. don't	12. do	13. isn't	14. seems	15. is
	16. are	17. is	18. were	19. wasn't	20. is

VI.	1. Ann's mother	2. the top of the page
	3. yesterday's newspaper	4. the name of this street
	5. our neighbours' garden	6. Don and Mary's children
	7. Helen's friend's wedding	8. the ground floor of the building
	9. Mike's parents' car	10. the economic policy of the government (the government's economic policy)

- VII. 1. A photographic portrait of Peter in the exhibition was much praised.  
 2. John's wedding presents were magnificent.  
 3. It's about three hours' drive to London from my house.  
 4. Last week's storm caused a lot of damage.  
 5. Tomorrow's meeting has been cancelled.

## DẠI TỪ (PRONOUNS)

- |           |             |              |              |             |
|-----------|-------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|
| I. 1. him | 2. her      | 3. us        | 4. she       | 5. He       |
| 6. she    | 7. mine     | 8. himself   | 9. We        | 10. himself |
| 11. her   | 12. himself | 13. I        | 14. yourself | 15. Mine    |
| 16. me    | 17. she     | 18. yourself | 19. us       | 20. he      |
- 
- |                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| II. 1. myself: emphasis | 6. ourselves: object    |
| 2. herself: object      | 7. themselves: emphasis |
| 3. yourself: object     | 8. himself: emphasis    |
| 4. ourselves: object    | 9. yourself: object     |
| 5. yourself: object     | 10. myself: object      |
- 
- |                  |                       |                        |             |
|------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|-------------|
| III. 1. anything | 2. somebody           | 3. anybody             | 4. anything |
| 5. something     | 6. somebody - anybody | 7. something - anybody | 8. Anybody  |
| 9. anybody       | 10. Anybody           |                        |             |
- 
- |                |           |             |            |             |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| IV. 1. anybody | 2. nobody | 3. Anything | 4. Nothing | 5. anything |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|------------|-------------|
- 
- V. 1. It is very interesting to learn English.  
 2. It takes only one hour from London to Brighton by train.  
 3. It is extremely difficult to understand some parts of King Lear.  
 4. It is clear to everyone but himself that he will fail.  
 5. It won't be easy to find our way home.  
 6. It was my question that made him angry.  
 7. We find it a good chance to meet each other on this occasion.  
 8. Do you think it difficult to explain to him what happened?  
 9. It is thought that he is a famous doctor in this city.  
 10. It is stupid to fall asleep like that.

- |          |       |      |       |       |      |       |      |      |        |
|----------|-------|------|-------|-------|------|-------|------|------|--------|
| VI. 1. Ø | 2. of | 3. Ø | 4. of | 5. of | 6. Ø | 7. of | 8. Ø | 9. Ø | 10. of |
|----------|-------|------|-------|-------|------|-------|------|------|--------|
- 
- |                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| VII. 1. most of the day    | 6. all (of) the money     |
| 2. Many people             | 7. all the time           |
| 3. Some of the photographs | 8. most of the time       |
| 4. Some people             | 9. most people            |
| 5. most of the food        | 10. half of the questions |
- 
- |               |            |         |           |             |
|---------------|------------|---------|-----------|-------------|
| VIII. 1. none | 2. either  | 3. any  | 4. none   | 5. any      |
| 6. either     | 7. neither | 8. none | 9. either | 10. neither |

## TÍNH TỪ (ADJECTIVES)

- |                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| I. 1. a. disappointing   | b. disappointed         |
| 2. a. exhausting         | b. exhausted            |
| 3. a. depressing         | b. depressed            |
| 4. a. exciting           | b. exciting             |
| I. 1. interested         | 2. exciting             |
| 4. embarrassed           | 5. amazed               |
| 7. amused                | 8. terrifying - shocked |
| 10. boring - interesting | 9. bored - boring       |

- III.** 1. surprising    2. confusing    3. interested    4. boring  
       5. interested    6. exhausted    7. excited    8. amusing  
       9. bored       10. interesting
- IV.** 1. a nice new pullover    2. a new green pullover  
       3. a beautiful old house    4. black leather gloves  
       5. an old American film    6. a long thin face  
       7. big black clouds       8. a lovely sunny day  
       9. a long wide avenue    10. a small black metal box  
       11. a big fat black cat    12. a lovely little old village  
       13. beautiful long black hair    14. an interesting old French painting  
       15. an enormous red and yellow umbrella
- V.** 1. tastes awful / tasted awful    2. feel fine  
       3. smell nice       4. look wet  
       5. sounds/ interesting (or sounded/ interesting)
- VI.** 1. ten-minute call    2. twelve-storey    3. language    4. three-act    5. two-day  
       6. 79-piece       7. 16-ounce       8. six-quart    9. brick       10. ten-speed
- VII.** 1. ✓    2. a lot of    3. a lot of    4. ✓    5. ✓  
       6. a lot       7. many/ a lot of    8. a lot       9. ✓    10. ✓
- VIII.** 1. little    2. many    3. much    4. many    5. few  
       6. little    7. a little    8. a few    9. few    10. little  
       11. little   12. A little   13. little   14. a few/ many   15. few  
       16. much    17. many    18. much-little   19. much    20. many-much

## TRẠNG TƯ (ADVERBS)

- I.** 1. well    2. intense    3. brightly    4. fluently    5. smooth  
       6. accurately    7. bitter    8. soon    9. fast    10. terrible  
       11. sick    12. happy    13. terrible    14. properly    15. quiet  
       16. heavily    17. clean    18. terribly    19. colourful    20. selfishly
- II.** 1. quickly    2. careful    3. continuously    4. happily    5. fluent  
       6. specially    7. complete    8. perfectly    9. nervous    10. financially
- III.** 1. seriously ill    2. absolutely enormous    3. unusually quiet  
       4. completely changed    5. unnecessarily long
- IV.** 1. right    2. right    3. wrong (hard)
- V.** 1. They hardly know each other.    2. I hardly slept last night.  
       3. I can hardly hear you.    4. You've hardly changed.  
       5. She hardly said a word.
- VI.** 1. Rarely does she smile at me.  
       2. Not until he told me had I known her.  
       3. Hardly will you finish your work before it's dark.  
       4. Only in this shop can you buy this book.  
       5. No longer is my teacher teaching in this school.  
       6. Never has she seen such a beautiful sight.  
       7. Seldom does this rich man help the poor.  
       8. Never in life did she feel happy.  
       9. Not until 1981 did people discover AIDS.  
       10. No sooner had Martin sat down than the telephone rang.  
       11. Nowhere could the lost child be found.

12. No help did I get from him.
13. Not only did he refuse to help me but he also laughed at me.
14. Never does he smoke in bed.
15. Only within two months has she made good progress.
16. Under no circumstances should you travel alone.
17. Only in summer is it hot enough to sit outside.
18. Seldom is it wise to say too much about oneself.
19. Nowhere did he find a job after he had graduated from college.
20. Little do I know about computer.

## CÁC MỨC ĐỘ SO SÁNH CỦA TÍNH TỪ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ

- |             |  |                                |                              |                   |
|-------------|--|--------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------|
| <b>I.</b>   | 1. best  | 2. happiest                    | 3. faster                    | 4. creamiest      |
|             | 5. more colourful  | 6. better                      | 7. good                      | 8. more awkwardly |
|             | 9. least   | 10. prettier                   | 11. the better               | 12. the sicker    |
|             | 13. few  | 14. much                       | 15. furthest                 |                   |
| <b>II.</b>  | 1. ... as pretty...  | 2. more expensive              | 3. more important            |                   |
|             | 4. best  | 5. happier                     | 6. most international        |                   |
|             | 7. stronger  | 8. more comfortable            | 9. better                    |                   |
|             | 10. most delightful  | 11. most careful               | 12. worse                    |                   |
|             | 13. better ... better  | 14. lazier ... lazier          | 15. more fluently            |                   |
|             | 16. worse - prepared   | 17. cheaper... cheaper         | 18. more hard working        |                   |
|             | 19. more interesting   | 20. worst - bred               |                              |                   |
| <b>III.</b> | 1. more quiet/ quieter   | 2. stronger                    | 3. smaller                   |                   |
|             | 4. warmer (less cold)  | 5. more interesting            | 6. more difficult            |                   |
|             | 7. better  | 8. worse                       | 9. more quietly              |                   |
|             | 10. more often   |                                |                              |                   |
| <b>IV.</b>  | 1. earlier than  | 2. thinner                     | 3. bigger                    |                   |
|             | 4. more important than   | 5. more crowded than           | 6. more peaceful than        |                   |
|             | 7. more easily   | 8. higher than                 | 9. more reliable             |                   |
|             | 10. more serious than  |                                |                              |                   |
| <b>V.</b>   | 1. It's colder today than it was yesterday.  |                                |                              |                   |
|             | 2. It takes more time to travel by train than by car.                                |                                |                              |                   |
|             | 3. Joe did worse than Chris in the exam.   |                                |                              |                   |
|             | 4. My friend arrived earlier than I expected.  |                                |                              |                   |
|             | 5. We were busier at work today than usual.  |                                |                              |                   |
|             | 6. Jane's sister doesn't cook as well as Jane./ Jane's sister cooks worse than Jane. |                                |                              |                   |
|             | 7. Nobody in this team plays football as well as Tom.                                |                                |                              |                   |
|             | 8. The speed of light is the fastest.  |                                |                              |                   |
|             | 9. Jack isn't as old as he looks.  |                                |                              |                   |
|             | 10. You spent more money than I did.   |                                |                              |                   |
| <b>VI.</b>  | 1.... harder and harder....  | 2.... bigger and bigger....    | 3.... more and more nervous. |                   |
|             | 4.... worse and worse.   | 5.... more and more talkative. |                              |                   |
| <b>VII.</b> | 1.... than an I am.  |                                |                              |                   |
|             | 2.... than he does.  |                                |                              |                   |
|             | 3.... surprised than we were.  |                                |                              |                   |
|             | 4.... player than she is.  |                                |                              |                   |
|             | 5.... as lucky as they have been.  |                                |                              |                   |

## ĐỘNG TỪ (VERBS)

- I. 1. living  
3. to lock- go-do  
5. buying- dealing  
7. cutting- have- done  
9. smoking- to risk- setting  
11. keeping- to fill  
13. to hear- come- seeing- to bring  
15. park- to park  
17. to see- to find- buy  
19. to become  
21. find  
23. change  
25. plant- to get  
27. to go  
29. stealing- spending
- II. 1. to accept 2. having  
6. leaving 7. to return
- III. 1. us 2. his  
6. George's 7. the defense attorney's
- IV. 1. to have  
4. know  
7. run  
10. arguing- working  
13. seeing  
16. letting- run- being  
19. laughing- slip  
22. to try- to come  
25. burning- burn  
28. buying  
31. driving- riding  
34. to do  
37. going- stay  
40. make  
43. to fire  
45. to take  
48. gambling
2. going- being- putting- told- to take  
4. to buy- to ask  
6. to convince- managing- helping  
8. to come- go (going)- to climb- making  
10. to turn- working  
12. counting- thinking- moving- be-ing- get  
14. taking- keeping- to sell  
16. to leave- to put  
18. to read  
20. preparing- coming  
22. camping  
24. not to drink  
26. to tell  
28. shouting  
30. to do
3. going 4. to reach 5. opening  
8. buying 9. to accept 10. to be  
3. our 4. me 5. his  
9. our 10. John's
2. making  
5. waiting  
8. travelling- shooting  
11. to smoke  
14. not to touch  
17. talking- to finish  
20. to disappoint  
23. see  
26. look  
29. to do  
32. going  
35. to send  
38. looking- being  
41. sitting- jogging  
44. earn- cleaning- make- blackmailing  
46. to come  
49. falling
3. leaving  
6. seen- cry- crying  
9. to get- eating  
12. to have  
15. showing- to work  
18. to come- standing  
21. to sign  
24. joining  
27. crawling  
30. to eat  
33. swear/ swearing  
36. to know- to live  
39. cry  
42. to write  
47. to lock- going  
50. to wait

## SỐ TỪ (NUMERALS)

- I. 1. 23<sup>rd</sup> July, 1919 - The twenty third of July, nineteen nineteen.  
2. 9<sup>th</sup> November, 1803 - The ninth of November, eighteen (hundred) and three.  
3. 13<sup>th</sup> January, 1063 - The thirteen of January, ten (hundred) and sixty three.  
4. 22<sup>nd</sup> May, 1966 - The twenty second of May, nineteen sixty six.  
5. 5<sup>th</sup> February, 1761 - The fifth of February, seventeen sixty one.
- II. 1. five and two - sevenths  
2. sixty two over two six  
3. eight over one seven two  
4. forty two over nine three  
5. three quarters
6. twenty six per cent  
7. eight and seven sixteenths  
8. four and a half  
9. two thirds  
10. five twelfths

# GIỚI TỪ (PREPOSITIONS)

I.	1. at - of	2. to - on	3. at	4. in	5. on	6. in - at
	7. with	8. by	9. in	10. by	11. by	12. at
	13. at	14. into	15. on	16. on	17. in/ into	18. in
	19. in	20. in/ on	21. at	22. at	23. in	24. at
	25. at	26. at	27. in	28. In	29. in	30. to
	31. at - at	32. at	33. at	34. on	35. in	36. on
	37. into/ in	38. with	39. from	40. at	41. with	42. with
	43. to	44. with	45. for	46. for	47. to	48. from
	49. of	50. to - for	51. of	52. from	53. on	54. of
	55. of	56. to	57. of	58. in	59. of	60. in
	61. with	62. about	63. in	64. to	65. of	66. about
	67. for	68. at	69. on - of	70. for	71. of - of	72. in-in
	73. in	74. to	75. about	76. with	77. to - for	78. with
	79. for	80. with	81. to	82. of	83. of	84. of
	85. to - from	86. of	87. of	88. of	89. for	90. about
	91. of	92. about	93. with	94. in	95. to	96. with
	97. to	98. to	99. at	100. with	101. about	102. at
	103. with	104. of	105. of	106. on	107. for	108. at
	109. from	110. about	111. with	112. to	113. to	114. in
	115. at	116. about	117. about	118. in	119. of	120. to
	121. to	122. of	123. about	124. to	125. to	126. of
	127. for	128. for	129. of	130. for	131. up	132. off
	133. for	134. from	135. of	136. to	137. at	138. to - in
	139. to	140. in	141. for	142. with	143. from	144. from
	145. of	146. with	147. from	148. with	149. with	150. for
	151. to	152. with	153. of	154. of	155. in	156. for
	157. with	158. to	159. of	160. to	161. with	162. to
	163. for	164. at	165. at	166. to	167. with	168. to
	169. to	170. from	171. about	172. of	173. to	174. in
	175. to	176. for	177. fer	178. with	179. to	180. for
	181. from	182. of	183. to - for	184. of	185. at	186. for
	187. for	188. with	189. for	190. with	191. from	192. of
	193. in	194. in	195. of - to	196. for - of	197. of	198. to
	199. from	200. of				

II. 1. In 2. to 3. in 4. on 5. In 6. at 7. in 8. with 9. For 10. In

III. 1. at 2. on- in 3. at 4. on 5. At 6. on  
 7. at 8. in- in 9. on 10. on 11. in 12. on (at)  
 13. in 14. on- on 15. at 16. in 17. in 18. in  
 19. on 20. on 21. at- on 22. at 23. on 24. in  
 25. in- in 26. at- at- in 27. at- in 28. in 29. at 30. in- at

IV. 1. to 2. Ø 3. at 4. to 5. to 6. into  
 7. Ø; to 8. at 9. to- in 10. to 11. into 12. to

13. to 14. into 15. into

V. 1. by 2. with 3. by 4. with 5. by- in 6. on

7. by 8. by- with- on 9. by 10. in

VI. 1. to 2. in 3. to 4. for 5. with 6. of  
 7. on 8. with 9. about 10. in- in 11. from- to 12. between

13. for      14. in      15. for      16. of      17. for      18. on  
 19. against    20. of

## LIÊN TỪ (CONJUNCTIONS)

- I. 1. neither ... nor    2. so    3. either... or    4. so  
 5. so    6. because    7. although    8. whether/ and  
 9. when    10. unless
- II. 1. Nam will pass the exam if he studies hard.  
 2. Mary came to class late because her motorbike had a puncture.  
 3. Her mother was very sick so she couldn't come to class.  
 4. Although Tom was very lazy, he passed the final examination.  
 5. Daisy is very nice, therefore all her friends love her very much.  
 6. Daisy is such an intelligent girl that she always gets the scholarships.  
 7. We will take the trip unless it is stormy.  
 8. I had forgot locking the door when I drove to the office this morning.  
 9. We study hard so that we can pass the final examination.  
 10. Although she earned her living by selling newspapers, she got a B.A degree.
- III. 1. She is in either London or Berlin.  
 2. He was neither an idler nor a gambler.  
 3. Neither he nor I am present at the meeting.  
 4. The computer can not only gather facts but also store them.  
 5. This prize will mean an honour not only for him but also for us.

## MAO TỪ (ARTICLES)

- |                      |                     |                      |                  |
|----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|------------------|
| 1. the               | 2. the, Ø, the      | 3. Ø, Ø              | 4. the, the, the |
| 5. a, Ø, Ø, Ø        | 6. the, the         | 7. the (Ø), the, Ø   | 8. Ø             |
| 9. the, a, Ø, a      | 10. a, Ø, the       | 11. Ø, the           | 12. Ø, the, Ø    |
| 13. Ø, the           | 14. Ø, a (the), Ø   | 15. Ø                | 16. Ø, Ø, the    |
| 17. the (Ø), the (Ø) | 18. Ø, an           | 19. the, an          | 20. Ø            |
| 21. the, a           | 22. the/ Ø, Ø       | 23. the (a), a, Ø, Ø | 24. Ø, the, Ø    |
| 25. an, Ø, the       | 26. a               | 27. the              | 28. the, the     |
| 29. Ø, the           | 30. a, the, a, a, a | 31. the, a, the, Ø   | 32. Ø, the       |
| 33. the, the         | 34. an, the         | 35. the              | 36. the, a       |
| 37. Ø                | 38. the, the        | 39. the , a          | 40. the          |

## WORD-FORM

- |                |                 |                        |                        |
|----------------|-----------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. curious     | 2. easily       | 3. silent              | 4. careful             |
| 5. slowly      | 6. drives       | 7. commercial          | 8. weekly              |
| 9. difficult   | 10. choice      | 11. recently           | 12. expensive          |
| 13. beautiful  | 14. performance | 15. interesting        | 16. frequently         |
| 17. well       | 18. exciting    | 19. lengthen           | 20. smell              |
| 21. seats      | 22. fluently    | 23. valuable           | 24. good               |
| 25. splendidly | 26. excitement  | 27. exciting - excited | 28. teaching - teacher |
| 29. useful     | 30. health      | 31. care               | 32. complaint          |
| 33. width      | 34. sewing      | 35. beautifully        | 36. cooker             |
| 37. colourless | 38. noise       | 39. keeper             | 40. entertainment      |
| 41. products   | 42. funny       | 43. celebrate          | 44. greeting           |
| 45. actor      | 46. writer      | 47. natural            | 48. difficult          |

49. performed	50. boring - bored	51. historical	52. life
53. dangerous	54. happily	55. choose	56. helpful
57. open	58. knowledge	59. developing - developed	
60. collection	61. librarian	62. friendly	63. attractively
64. admiration	65. thrilling	66. attractions	67. pleasure
68. symbolizes	69. socialist	70. carelessness	71. attendance
72. carriage	73. flight	74. appearance	75. punishment
76. explanation	77. successfully	78. scientific	79. simplicity
80. preparation	81. unsuccessful	82. allowance	83. unknown
84. daily	85. faithful	86. gently	87. comfortable
88. pleased	89. noisily	90. competitors	91. laziness
92. apologize	93. proud	94. famous	95. produce
96. careless	97. speech	98. advice	99. quietly
100. amazement	101. polluted	102. pollution	103. cooperation
104. produces - production		105. economical	106. satisfy
107. satisfaction	108. wonderful	109. childhood	110. decision
111. orphanage	112. homeless	113. poverty	114. sad
115. published	116. ability	117. well	118. darkness
119. success	120. patriotic - patriot	121. scientific	122. shopping
123. commonly	124. educational	125. independent	126. practice
127. easy - easily	128. weightlessness	129. usefully	
130. interested - interesting		131. encourages	132. higher
133. enable	134. inventor	135. achievement	136. illustration
137. attendance	138. influence	139. organized	140. nations
141. relationship	142. variety	143. truthful - true	144. development
145. poor	146. enrich	147. disappointed	148. sickness
149. presence	150. hunger	151. absorb	152. decide
153. peaceful	154. failure	155. confused	156. curiosity
157. education	158. mathematical	159. miraculous	160. successive
161. memory	162. solution	163. attractive	164. scientists - scientific
165. improvements	166. architect	167. growth	168. industrial
169. social	170. success	171. mixture	172. safest
173. need	174. shortage	175. inheritance	176. solution
177. exchange	178. equality	179. imagine	180. valueless
181. organization	182. borrowers	183. services	184. monetary
185. safety	186. national	187. famous	188. difficulty
189. electrified	190. death	191. electricity	192. preferential
193. attraction	194. occasionally	195. broaden	196. advertisement
197. certainty	198. speedy	199. intelligent	200. responsibility
201. manufactured	202. chemistry	203. vacancies	204. consequently
205. absent	206. astonishment	207. religious	208. personal
209. satisfied	210. protection	211. ashamed	212. enlarged
213. sleepy	214. instructor	215. readily	216. accessible
217. provision	218. automatically	219. reasonable	220. truth
221. thoughtful	222. natural	223. guidance	224. determination
225. fearful	226. unemployment	227. crowded	228. extremely
229. continue	230. comparison	231. selected	232. chemical
233. poisonous	234. industrial	235. contaminated	236. illegal
237. explain	238. independent	239. invitation	240. economically

- |                      |                      |                               |                     |
|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| 241. deafened        | 242. intensity       | 243. surgical                 | 244. preferentially |
| 245. transformation  | 246. untreatable     | 247. miracle                  | 248. valueless      |
| 249. satisfaction    | 250. intimacy        | 251. encourage                | 252. impatient      |
| 253. depth           | 254. attractively    | 255. satisfaction             | 256. safely         |
| 257. electricity     | 258. harm - harmless | 259. expectant                | 260. intention      |
| 261. abnormalities   | 262. freedom         | 263. poisonous                | 264. preserving     |
| 265. calculating     | 266. calculator      | 267. saving - saver - savings |                     |
| 268. swimming - swim |                      | 269. enrich                   | 270. safeguarding   |

## IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. made fun of   | 2. made use of                        |
| 3. taking leave of                                     | 4. to - gave place/ of - caught sight |
| 5. of- take care                                       | 6. feel regret for                    |
| 7. put an end to                                       | 8. of- take advantage                 |
| 9. with- lost touch                                    | 10. take care of                      |
| 11. pay attention to/ take account of                  | 12. pays attention to                 |
| 13. made fun of  | 14. for-make allowance                |
| 15. keep pace with/ keep up with                       | 16. take notice of                    |
| 17. takes care of/ makes allowance for/ feels pity for | 19. in-taking interest                |
| 18. take notice of                                     | 21. keep correspondence with          |
| 20. make room for                                      | 23. put an end to                     |
| 22. feel shame at                                      | 25. lost track of                     |
| 24. got victory over                                   | 27. show affection for/ have faith in |
| 26. plays an influence over                            | 29. feel pity for/ take pity on       |
| 28. make use of  | 31. to- set fire                      |
| 30. take interest in                                   | 33. lose sight of                     |
| 32. feel pity for                                      | 35. catch sight of                    |
| 34. have a look at                                     | 37. make a contribution to            |
| 36. made a decision on                                 | 39. pay attention to/ put an end to   |
| 38. have faith in                                      | 41. make complaint about              |
| 40. make allowance for/ feel pity for/ take pity on    | 43. lost touch with                   |
| 41. make sympathy for                                  | 45. taken notice of                   |
| 43. lost touch with                                    | 47. keep pace with/ keep up with      |
| 45. taken notice of                                    | 49. gave way to                       |
| 47. keep pace with/ keep up with                       | 51. pay attention to                  |
| 49. gave way to  | 53. set fire to                       |
| 51. pay attention to                                   | 55. take advantage of                 |
| 53. set fire to  | 57. make fun of                       |
| 55. take advantage of                                  | 59. lose touch with                   |
| 57. make fun of  | 61. pays attention to                 |
| 59. lose touch with                                    | 63. take note of/ take notice of      |
| 61. pays attention to                                  | 65. make fun of                       |
| 63. take note of/ take notice of                       | 67. lost track of                     |
| 65. make fun of  | 69. setting fire to                   |
| 67. lost track of                                      | 71. caught sight of                   |
| 69. setting fire to                                    | 73. put an end to/ put a stop to      |
| 71. caught sight of                                    | 75. take account of                   |
| 73. put an end to/ put a stop to                       | 74. makes fun of                      |

## LỜI NÓI GIÁN TIẾP (REPORTED SPEECH)

1. He said to her she was his friend.
2. Johnny said to his mother he didn't know how to do that exercise.
3. My brother advised me not to come back before one o'clock.
4. Mrs. Brown told her daughter to cook it in butter.
5. The pupils asked their teacher to give them better marks.
6. She told me to pull as hard as I could.
7. He asked who had put salt in his coffee.
8. My friend asked me if I was going to leave the day after.
9. My mother asked me if I had done my homework.
10. I asked Bill what time he had gone to bed the night before.
11. Paul said that he had to go home then.
12. The policeman said that there had been an accident and the road was blocked.
13. The children said that they were waiting for the school bus.
14. Mary said that her father had died a year before.
15. Mr. Brown asked me if I had to go then.
16. His mother asked him whose bicycle he had borrowed the day before.
17. The teacher said that it wasn't so foggy that day as it had been the day before.
18. My father told me to be modest if I was a good pupil.
19. She told us to shut the door but not to lock it.
20. Tom said that New York is/was bigger than London.
21. They begged us to help them.
22. She told me not to forget to send my parents her regards./ She reminded me to send my parents her regards.
23. The traveller asked me how long it took to get to London.
24. John said that he had finished studying his lesson.
25. Mary said to John she couldn't go to the movies with him.
26. He asked me why I hadn't come to class the day before.
27. Tom asked Mary if she had phoned him the day before.
28. He asked me if I liked it and I said that I did.
29. She said to Tom she hadn't known them and asked him if he had known them.
30. The policeman told everybody to avoid the Marble Arch because there was going to be a big demonstration there.
31. Handing me a bottle of pills, the doctor told me not to take more than two of those at once.
32. They asked me to go to the zoo./ They suggested going to the zoo.
33. He said that he shouldn't do that if he were me because it was very dangerous.
34. They told me when they had finished that game they would have supper.
35. Johny said that she had to wash her hair and asked Alice if she had got any shampoo.
36. He told me to listen and asked me if I heard someone coming.
37. He asked me to do as he told me or I would be punished and said that he would teach me who was master in that house.
38. My mother said that it was rather chilly that day and asked me to light the fire there when I had cleaned the sitting room.
39. Mary said to her friend she would expect to see him the following Wednesday.
40. The teacher asked John which book he was taking.
41. I asked the policeman if he knew how far it was to the station.
42. Ann exclaimed what a dirty face her son had.

43. The teacher asked his pupils whether they knew how to behave and remarked that there must be no talking in lessons.
44. She wondered who was coming on the excursion the next day and hoped it wouldn't rain.
45. Mrs. Brown told him to do as he was told, and complained that he was a naughty boy.
46. Jim said that it was a very nice evening and suggested having a walk.
47. She asked/ urged her daughter to decide what she wanted to do.
48. Mary asked me if I could tell her why I was so sad/ Mary asked me to tell her why ...
49. Jane asked John who would come to the movies with her.
50. Jane asked her friend to find out when he last wrote to her.

## THỂ CHỦ ĐỘNG - THỂ BỊ ĐỘNG (THE ACTIVE - PASSIVE VOICE)

- I.
1. Tea can't be made with cold water.
  2. All the workers of the plant were being instructed by the chief engineer.
  3. Some of my books have been taken away.
  4. The meeting will be held before May Day.
  5. The engine of the car has to be repaired.
  6. The window was broken and some pictures were taken away by the boys.
  7. A lot of money is spent on advertising everyday.
  8. This room may be used for the classroom.
  9. A story is going to be told by the teacher.
  10. The cake is being cut with a sharp knife by Mary.
  11. The women with a red hat was looked at by the children.
  12. The victims have been provided with food and clothing.
  13. English is spoken in almost every corner of the world.
  14. This machine mustn't be used after 5:30 p.m.
  15. Luckily for me, my name wasn't called.
  16. After class, the chalk board is always erased by one of the students.
  17. The wall must be cleaned before it is painted.
  18. The new pupil was told where to sit.
  19. I knew that he had been told of the meeting.
  20. I have never been treated with such kindness.
  21. His story isn't believed.
  22. The dam may be broken by a sudden increase in water pressure.
  23. Books borrowed from the library must be taken good care of.
  24. I was told about it by a man I know.
  25. He can never be found at home for he is always on the move.
  26. Milk is used for making butter and cheese.
  27. Human life has completely been changed by Science and Technology.
  28. Mr Cole used to be visited at weekends by John.
  29. The river bank is covered with weeds.
  30. The room was filled with smoke.
- II.
1. They did these exercises well.
  2. They must wash this dress in cold water.
  3. He has made no mistakes in his composition.
  4. New Arts gallery will exhibit his painting for the first time.
  5. They built this house 100 years ago.

6. They make these artificial flowers of silk.
7. The students are writing the lessons now.
8. You have to do this job at once.
9. They feed these animals at the zoo twice a day.
10. French doctors are going to perform the operation.
11. They have made all the arrangements.
12. When did they manufacture this radio?
13. We couldn't find them anywhere.
14. Do they teach mathematics in this school?
15. Fortunately the accident didn't damage the machinery.
16. Please wait here while they are examining your luggage.
17. How do they make candles?
18. For a long time they believed that the earth was flat.
19. Did your teacher teach you how to apply this theory?
20. They say that apples are good for our health.
21. Don't let the children tease the dog.
22. People believe that red is the symbol of luck.
23. What have they done to help the poor in this city?
24. They must have stolen the jewelry while she was out.
25. Where did pirates use to hide the treasure in the old time?

- III.
1. Is English taught here?
  2. Will she be invited to your wedding party?
  3. Were some exercises given by the teacher?
  4. Is a poem going to be written?
  5. Has the window of the laboratory been changed?
  6. Are big cakes being made for the party?
  7. Has the work been finished by Tom?
  8. Are inquiries about the thief being made by the police?
  9. Must the test be finished before ten?
  10. Will the children be brought home by buses?
  11. Why wasn't he helped?
  12. How many games have been played by the team?
  13. Where is English spoken?
  14. Who is kept in the kitchen?
  15. How can this safe be opened?
  16. What books are being read this year?
  17. How was the lost man found by the police?
  18. By whom were the children looked after for you?
  19. How long has the doctor been waited for?
  20. What time can the boys' papers be handed in?
  21. Each of us was given two exercise books by the teacher.

Two exercise books were given to us by the teacher.

22. He will be told that news.
- That news will be told to him.
23. Money has been sent enough to these poor boys.
- These poor boys have been sent enough money.
24. The women in most countries in the world have been given the right to vote.
- The right to vote has been given to the women in most countries in the world.

25. I was paid a lot of money to do the job.  
A lot of money was paid to me to do the job.
26. It is believed that 13 is an unlucky number.  
13 is believed to be an unlucky number.
27. It was rumoured that the man was still living.  
The man was rumoured to have been still living.
28. It was declared that she won the competition.  
She was declared to have won the competition.
29. It is known that English is an international language.  
English is known to be an international language.
30. It is thought that Jack London's life and writings represent the American love of adventure.  
Jack London's life and writings are thought to represent the American love of adventure.
31. It is said that John is the brightest student in class.  
John is said to be the brightest student in class.
32. It was reported that the President had suffered a heart attack.  
The President was reported to have suffered a heart attack.
33. It is thought that he has died a natural death.  
He is thought to have died a natural death.
34. It was reported that the troops were coming.  
The troops were reported to have been coming.
35. It was believed that the earth stood still.  
The earth was believed to have stood still./ The earth was believed to stand still.
36. This computer will continue to be used.
37. Rubber trees began to be planted in big plantations.
38. Natural resources can continue to be enjoyed.
39. Coca-Cola will continue to be drunk in the 21st century.
40. Football begins to be loved by American people.
41. The research was given up after three hours.
42. The matter should be looked into.
43. Don't speak until you are spoken to.
44. The children are being looked after by a neighbour.
45. Pleasant memories are brought back with your story.
46. She has been heard to sing this song several times.
47. He was seen to steal your car.
48. They are being watched to work.
49. You won't be let to do that silly thing again.
50. The children aren't made to work hard.
51. He was made to work all day.
52. The woman was seen to put the jewelry in her bag by the detective.
53. The hostages were made to lie down by the terrorists.
54. Drivers are advised using an alternative route by police.
55. I am helped to do all these difficult exercises.
56. Let your book be opened.
57. Let your hat be taken off.
58. Don't let that silly thing be done again.
59. Let them be told about it.

60. Don't let yourself be seen by the other.  
 61. She advised me that the house should be sold.  
 62. They begged us that he should be helped.  
 63. He orders us that the floor must be cleaned.  
 64. He recommends me that the job should be done.  
 65. She urged him that her parents should be visited as soon as possible.  
 66. It's dangerous for the short cut to be taken.  
 67. Your hair needs cutting. (your hair needs to be cut.)  
 68. It must be seen to be believed.  
 69. He wants to have some photographs taken./ He wants photographs to be taken.  
 70. We enjoy letters being written.
- IV.** 1. repaired    2. to type    3. painted    4. write    5. sent  
 6. cut            7. carry            8. made            9. built            10. arrange

## CÂU (SENTENCES)

- I.** 1. Can you swim well?  
     How well you can swim!  
 2. Was he very quick?  
     How quick he was!  
 3. Do they always work hard?  
     How hard they work!  
 4. Does he have a lot of books? (Has he a lot of books?)  
     What a lot of books he has!  
 5. Is she too young?  
     How young she is!  
 6. Do you eat very quickly?  
     How quickly you eat!  
 7. Does your father drink too much?  
     How much your father drinks!  
 8. Did we get home very late?  
     How late we got home!  
 9. Does my wife work well?  
     How well my wife work!  
 10. Does he have a lovely garden? (Has he a lovely garden?)  
     What a lovely garden (he has)!

- II.** 1. ... haven't you?    2. ... didn't he?    3. ... did he?  
 4. ... will he?            5. ... would you?    6. .... didn't he?  
 7. ... didn't she?        8. ... will you?        9. ... isn't it?  
 10. ... hadn't I?        11. ... isn't there?    12. .... hasn't she?  
 13. ... can you?          14. ... isn't it?        15. ... won't he?  
 16. aren't I?            17. has they?            18. can't they?  
 19. don't they?          20. does she?

- III.** 1. What's your name?  
 2. How old are you?  
 3. When were you born?  
 4. Where were you born?  
 5. What is your address?  
 6. What's the weather like in HCM City in March?

7. How long does it take to ride to Vung Tau by motorcycle?
8. What time is it?
9. Whose car is it?
10. How do you go to school?
11. How do you speak English?
12. Who drank my lemon juice?
13. How much do you weigh?
14. What's the date?
15. How long is it?
16. Are you a teacher?
17. How often do you go shopping?
18. How long have you learnt English?
19. Why was he absent from school?
20. What does Mr. Pike enjoy?

IV.	1. He	/wrote	/a letter.
	S	V	O
2.	She	/is	/a pupil.
	S	V	C
3.	She	/is	/ pretty.
	S	V	C
4.	She	/ is reading.	
	S	V	
5.	They	/are	/ here.
	S	V	A
6.	He	/ was reading	/ thoughtfully.
	S	V	A
7.	Mrs Brown	/ wrote	/ some letters / to / her husband.
	S	V	Od pre. OI
8.	He	/ wrote	/ for / the youth.
	S	V	pre. Opre.
9.	She	/ gave	/ me / some books.
	S	V	Od
10.	They	/ took	/ the class / to the zoo.
	S	V	A
11.	They	/ treated	/ him / badly.
	A	V	A
12.	We	/ consider	/ him / the class leader.
	S	C	Co
13.	George	/ is cooking	/ dinner / tonight.
	S	V	A
14.	Trees	/ grow.	
	S	V	
15.	She	/ opened	/ her book.
	S	V	O
16.	They	/ painted	/ their doors / green.
	S	V	Co
17.	It	/ is raining	/ at seven o'clock this morning.
	S	V	A

18. She / must have gone / to / the bank.  
 S            V            pre.            Opre.
19. The bank / closed / at two o'clock.  
 S            V            A
20. She / did / everything / for / her son.  
 S            V            O            pre.            Opre.

## PRACTICE TEST

1. John suggested that Barry should put (to Barry that he should put) a better lock on door.
2. Despite his two broken legs (both his legs being broken) in the crash, he managed to get out...
3. This is the first time I've eaten this kind of food.
4. The firemen managed to put the fire out (to put out the fire) after fighting it for 12 hours.
5. Plans for an extension to the house have been drawn by the architect.
6. We saw the house in Stratford on Avon where (in which) Shakespeare was born.
7. You don't need to finish (don't have to finish) by Saturday.
8. The journalist wanted to know how many survivors there were (the number of survivors).
9. The meat was so rotten that it had to be thrown away.
10. Professor Van Helsing must (has to) be met at the airport.
11. If you don't get (haven't got) a visa, you can't visit the United States.
12. Peter asked if he could borrow (Janet could lend him) Janet's (her) typewriter.
13. She has worked as (been working as) (been) a secretary for five years.
14. My French friend isn't used (accustomed) to driving on the left.
15. The owner of the house is thought to be abroad.
16. If we had had enough money, we would have gone (we could have gone) on holiday.
17. The sea was too rough for the children to go swimming.
18. I wish you had passed (you had managed to pass) (you hadn't failed) your driving test.
19. I had (got) my car serviced last weeks/ the mechanic.
20. Traveling by air always makes me nervous.
21. The car was too expensive for him (cost more than he could afford) (was so expensive that he couldn't afford) to buy.
22. He suggested that I should put my luggage under the seat.
23. In spite of having a good salary (getting a good salary) (his good salary), he was unhappy in his job.
24. He objected to his secretary's coming (the fact that his secretary came) late to work.
25. I wish I hadn't missed (I had been at) (I had attended) your birthday party.
26. The streets haven't been cleaned this week.
27. Apples are not usually as expensive as (so expensive as) oranges.
28. You'd better put your money in the bank.
29. It is such a dirty restaurant that no one wants to eat there.
30. John could hardly understand what the teacher said (what his teacher was saying).
31. We can only get into the house if someone has a key.
32. You can't lock the front door. Here's the key.
33. He'd rather play golf than tennis.

34. He wishes he had invited Molly to his party.
35. He told me to bring my swimming things in case it was rainy.
36. You don't need to (*have to*) talk so loudly.
37. The last time I went to (*I was in*) Bristol was 3 years ago.
38. This cheque *has not been signed* (*has no signature*) (*lacks a signature*).
39. It's Jim's 18th birthday next week.
40. If he does not phone immediately, he won't get any information.
41. When did they buy the house?
42. The broken vase couldn't be repaired.
43. The garden hasn't been dug.
44. Is this the cheapest carpet (*one*) you've got? (*you have?*)
45. These shoes *are too small* (*are not big enough*) for my feet.
46. I'm looking forward to meeting you.
47. The security guard told us to keep away from this area when we approached the fence.
48. It's the first time I've ever met such a famous person.
49. You don't have to (*need to*) take this pudding out of its tin to cook it.
50. It was too late *to do anything* (*for anything to be done*).
51. Please wake me up at 8:00 tomorrow morning.
52. The date of the meeting will have to be changed again.
53. We are going to have (*get*) the car repaired.
54. The train is quicker (*faster*) than the bus.  
(*does not take as long as the bus*)  
(*takes a shorter time than the bus*)
55. It is over six months since John *had* (*got*) his hair cut.
56. Maria wishes that *she's been put* (*they'd put her*) in a higher class.
57. I'll finish the work tonight *if you like*. (*if you wait me to*) (*shall I?*)
58. In case you get hungry *you'd better* (*you should*) (*you ought to*) take some sandwiches.
59. If my husband *had left* the car keys, I *could* (*would*) have picked him up at the station.
60. The snow *prevented* (*stopped*) *the train from running*.  
*made the train stop running.*  
*made it impossible for the train to run.*  
*disrupted the train schedules.*
61. It wasn't early enough to see her.
62. I apologize for *being* (*for having been*) rude to you yesterday.  
for my rudeness to you yesterday.
63. If he'd hurried he *would* (*could*) (*might*) have caught the train.  
*wouldn't have missed*
64. No one in the club is *better at tennis* (*is a better tennis player*) than Janet.
65. It's the first time I've seen that man here.
66. The furniture was *too expensive for me to buy* (*expensive so I didn't buy it*)
67. The bank manager *was made* (*was forced*) to hand over the money.
68. He has been able to *drive* (*been driving*) since he was 18.
69. She was unhappier than she had ever been before.
70. Bill doubted *whether* (*if*) (*that*) John could come.

71. Our dog bit the postman.
72. The fog prevented us from driving.
73. In spite of the fact that his leg was broken, he managed to get out of the car  
    the fact that he had a broken leg  
    the fact that he had broken his leg  
    his broken leg  
    having a broken leg  
    having broken his leg  
    his leg being broken
74. It was such a hard cake that I could not eat it.  
    impossible to eat the cake because it was so hard.
75. If it hadn't been raining (rained), we'd have gone (we could have gone).
76. My mother cooks better than me (I do) (I can).  
    is a better cook than me (I am).
77. Do you happen to have change for a pound?
78. He didn't win (manage to win) (succeed in winning) the race.
79. It's hours since Mary rang.
80. I wish I had finished my homework last night.
81. 'How do you like my new dress?' she asked John.  
    'How do you like my new dress, John?' she asked.
82. There is an eight o'clock train every morning.
83. It can't be denied that she has a beautiful voice.
84. Do you mind helping me to put the chairs away?
85. Unless someone sends for a doctor (a doctor is sent for), the child will die.
86. He'd rather you paid him immediately.
87. The water was not warm enough for the children to swim.
88. She had her car repaired yesterday.
89. You've got (have) to see the manager tomorrow morning.
90. Every time we rang there wasn't any answer (there was no answer).
91. Don't call him by such an insulting name.
92. Which one do you want the blue (one) or the green (one)? John asked.
93. She thought Rome was even worse than Paris.
94. So long as you arrive before eleven I can meet you.
95. All the prisoners will have been (will be) caught again by tonight.
96. I've warned you about your going near that dog.
97. I'd rather you didn't tell him.
98. I suggest that you should ask her yourself.
99. You'll need an up-to-date visa for Andorra.
100. The office manager wondered why he hadn't got a computer before.
101. John advised Elizabeth not to lend him any more money.
102. I've been working for the company (with the company) for a year (since last year).
103. If Susan hadn't eaten 4 cream cakes, she wouldn't have been sick.
104. I must get (have) my suit cleaned before the interview.
105. William accused her (Amanda) of stealing (of having stolen) his best cassette.
106. The rough sea prevented the ferry from sailing (stopped the ferry sailing).
107. Don't sign the delivery note before checking (before having checked) (without having checked) for damage.

108. It's impossible *to grow roses* (*for roses to be grown*) in such poor ground.
109. In case your car breaks down on the rough mountain road, take plenty of spare parts.
110. Margaret accused John of damaging her bicycle.  
*him of having damaged*
111. D.H. Lawrence, the famous novelist, was born 100 years ago.
112. John Speke didn't succeed in finding the source of the River Nile.
113. Maria wishes she had applied for the job in the library.
114. Helen said 'Shirly, where do you *get your hair done* (*have your hair cut*)?'
115. This is such old furniture that, it's not worth keeping.
116. It's difficult for handicapped people *to go shopping* (*to do their shopping*).
117. I suggest (that) you (should) have a meeting to discuss to pay offer.
118. If the patient hadn't followed (*been given*) this treatment, he would have died.
119. In spite of *his not speaking Dutch* Bob decided to settle in Amsterdam.  
*the fact that he didn't speak Dutch*  
*being unable to speak Dutch*
120. People say that he was in the French Foreign Legion.
121. The nurse asked Mrs. Bingley *how old her little boy was*.  
*her little boy's age*  
*what her little boy's age was*
122. It can't have been Mrs. Elton you saw because she's in Bristol.
123. When did Catherine and Henry become (get) engaged?
124. Although he's *quite old* he runs 7 miles before breakfast.  
*not a young man*  
*is an old man*  
*is no longer young*
125. I wish I had taken / followed (*hadn't ignored*) my doctor's advice.
126. The bread isn't fresh enough *to eat* (*to be eaten*).
127. Whose *bag* is this? (*is this bag?*)
128. My father told me *never to* (*that I ought never to*) (*that I should never*) (*that I must never*) borrow money from friends.
129. If the train-driver *had not ignored* (*had taken notice of*) a warning light, the accident wouldn't have happened.
130. The lions *are* (*get*) fed at 3 p.m every day.
131. If we had had a map, we wouldn't have got lost.
132. Mr. Smith asked me where the station car park was.
133. I'd rather you *delivered* the sofa (*had the sofa delivered*) on Friday.
134. He regretted not saying (not having said) good-bye to her at the airport.
135. That old typewriter is not worth being repaired.
136. It was such a low bridge that the bus couldn't go under it.
137. I haven't seen him since I was a student.
138. What a silly thing to say!
139. There *is no more tea* (*is no tea left*) (*isn't anymore tea*) (*isn't any tea left*).
140. Philippa said 'Olive, where *did you put* the camera?'  
*do you remember where you (have) put*  
*can you remember where you put*
141. It takes six hours *to drive* from London to Edinburgh.

142. All the switches *must be turned off* before leaving the workshop.  
*are to be turned off*  
*have got to be turned off*
143. Alan has not visited his parents for ages.
144. Mrs. Taylor wishes that *she did not live* (*were not living*) in such a small house/ that she lived in a big house.
145. If Mr. Will *had not been late* (*had arrived on time*) (*had not arrived late*), he would not have lost his job.
146. James didn't sign the contract *until* (*till*) he had spoken to his lawyer.
147. After they had traveled across India, they flew on to Japan.
148. Henry suggested *Anna* (*to Anna that*) she should go (*she'd better go*) to the doctor.
149. The youth was made to empty his pocket.
150. Joans eats very little because *she's anxious about putting on weight*.  
*she doesn't want to put on weight*.  
*she's worried about becoming fat*.
151. When the goods *arrive in/ at* (*are delivered to at*) (*have been delivered to at*) the shop, they are inspected carefully.
152. Lawrence last saw his sister *when she left for* (*before she went to*) (*on her departure for*) Japan.
153. If John *ate less* chips, he *wouldn't be so fat*.  
(*didn't eat so many*) *would be less fat*  
(*ate fewer*) *would be thinner*  
*would be slimmer*
154. Peter said '*I'm not feeling well*' ('*I don't feel well*') ('*I feel sick*')
155. The doctor advised *Mr. Robert* to *take* (*to do*) *more exercises* if he wanted to lose weight.
156. Jane is *interested in* (*keen on*) (*fond of*) collecting dolls from foreign countries.
157. George used to be *much* (*far*) (*a lot*) more energetic than he is now (*at present*).
158. Unless *Joe* (*he*) changes his ways, he will end up in prison.
159. Jim wondered if (*whether*) he *would ever* (*was ever going to*) find a job.
160. In case you *should get lost* in those mountains, you'd better take a map.
161. A thermometer is *something which is used for measuring* (*a thing which is used to measure*) temperature.
162. You didn't *forget to post* the letter, did you?
163. I had *the washing machine* (*my washing machine*) *repaired* (*mended*) by Mr. Dryden./ I had Mr Dryden repair the washing machine.
164. No one *in the class* is (*in her class is*) *as tall as* (*so tall as*) (*taller than*) Pat is.
165. You can only get (*receive*) (*obtain*) the 40% discount if you buy all 12 books at the same time.
166. Samuel has kept (*been keeping*) a diary for 5 years.
167. I'd rather you *did not smoke* in the kitchen.
168. Paul apologized to Susan for giving her the wrong number.
169. Sally was given a microcomputer *for her birthday* by her parents.  
*by her parents for her birthday*.
170. The news was so bad that *Helen burst into tears* (*it made her burst into tears*).
171. When did you last see Mary? (*When was the last time that you saw Mary?*)
172. Unless he works harder, he'll lose his job.
173. India is the country I'd like to visit most.

174. Alan wishes he *had never asked* (*not asked*) Arthur to lend him 20\$.
175. Martha asked Peter when *the first day of his holiday was* (*his holiday began*).
176. It took three and a half hours to fly (*to get*) to Moscow by air.
177. There are more than a thousand employees in the factory where I work.
178. Belinda went to the party *even though she felt* (*although she felt*) (*in spite of feeling*) (*despite feeling*) depressed.
179. Mr. Hill's students are taught how to *understand* (*to distinguish*) different English accents.
180. The film *was such a boring one* (*was so boring that*) (*bored us so much*) *that we left before the end* (*did not stay until the end*).
181. It's four years since *Robert and Catherine* (*they*) *got* (*were*) married.
182. If Elizabeth hadn't *started* (*begun*) smoking cigarettes, she wouldn't have had a bad cough.
183. Ann asked her mother *if* (*whether*) she could have a new bicycle.
184. It's not my fault *if* (*that*) the tin-opener *is broken* (*has been broken*).
185. In spite of *his bad cold* (*a bad cold*) (*his suffering from a bad cold*), William still went to work.
186. Mike doesn't play tennis *as well as* (*so well as*) Barbara does.
187. Who *does* this suitcase belong to?
188. It is a 2 hour train journey from London to Bristol.
189. Was the garage built at the same time as the house?
190. Nobody who was at the meeting will say anything to the Press.
191. We were *not able to have our picnic because of the heavy rain*.  
*prevented from having our picnic due to the heavy rain*.
192. If Joan doesn't find a good job before September, she will stay on at school.
193. I'd rather not go out tonight.
194. It wasn't until Shirley was 8 she *began* (*started*) *to read* (*reading*).
195. The last time that Lucy wore that dress was *at Barbara's wedding* (*when Barbara got married*).
196. Why don't we go abroad for our holiday this year?
197. He speaks so slowly that his students get very bored.
198. By the age of 20 Makengie (*he*) had written 4 best sellers.
199. William's mother told her son not to leave the house *before* (*until*) she got back.
200. I don't *want* (*wish*) (*have any desire*) to see him tomorrow.
201. Everybody was astonished *at* (*by*) Alice's strange ideas.
202. You shouldn't *have* (*left*) the windows open last night.
203. Unless you keep your feet dry, you will *catch* (*get*) a cold.
204. I *think* (*reckon*) (*expect*) that it *will* (*may*) (*might*) (*is going likely to*) rain.
205. I have never *tasted* (*eaten*) such a delicious cake in my life.
206. No one who was there noticed anything unusual.
207. It is 2 years since she left university.
208. The gate is closed so that the children can't run into the road.
209. Henry wishes that he hadn't bought a second-hand car.
210. Amanda finally succeeded in getting a job.
211. That old house at the end of the road has been sold.
212. Mrs. Rogers told her son *not to bite* (*to stop biting*) his nails.
213. Charles doesn't live too far from his aunt's house.
214. I certainly won't go (*will never go*) to that restaurant again.

215. The beach was so *dirty* (*such a dirty place*) that I decided not to stay.
216. You don't have to finish the work today.
217. I'd rather not *eat* (*have*) my lunch yet.
218. Sebastian has *been* (*worked*) (*been working*), as a television presenter for 5 years.
219. What an excellent meal!
220. George told Mary (that) he had seen this film 3 times.
221. I'd rather not visit the museum.
222. If John's car had not broken down, he *wouldn't have missed* to catch (*would have caught*) the ferry.
223. Robert can't cook *as* (*so*) well as Jane can (does).
224. Customers are requested not to smoke in this area of the restaurant.
225. Martin apologized to Angela for *damaging* (*having damaged*) her car.
226. In spite of taking (*having taken*) (*the fact that Bill had taken*) a taxi, he arrived late for the concert.
227. Carol has no *trouble* (*problem*) (*difficulty*) in making friends.
228. Mark is not old enough to see the horror film.
229. Who do these documents belong to?
230. The landlady asked me *if* (*whether*) I had *had* (*eaten*) enough food for lunch.
231. If we don't leave the party now, we *won't* (*won't be able to*) catch the last train.
232. Alice is responsible for looking after the new staff.
233. When were you born?
234. John was unable to find the right house.
235. My insurance form *should* (*ought to*) have been signed by the doctor.
236. The joke *which* (*that*) I told him made him laugh.
237. Jenny used to play tennis better *than now* (*than she does now*).
238. The door was too heavy for the child *to push open* (*to open*).
239. You'd better apologize her.
240. Be careful or otherwise you *will* (*might*) (*could*) have a fall.
241. That car belongs to Mrs. Edwards.
242. According to the station clock, it was half past ten.
243. The wallet *that* (*which*) *Henry had found* (*found by Henry*) had no name in it.
244. Ronald said that he hadn't stolen Mrs. Clark's handbag.
245. Susan doesn't like staying in hotels as much as *she does* (*enjoys*) (*likes*) camping.
246. The fridge was too heavy for us to move.
247. Mary asked John not to tell anyone her new address.
248. It was the prettiest flower display *that* (*which*) the judges had ever seen.
249. His father is not as tall as his mother.
250. Neither Tom nor Ann came to the party.
251. She's liked by everyone.
252. In spite of the bad traffic, I arrived on time.
253. Having a car enables you to travel around more easily.
254. The sudden noise made me jump.
255. She *wouldn't let* me read the letter.
256. My father allowed me to use his car.
257. Tom has been ill for 3 days.
258. I wish I could give up smoking.
259. Before going to bed, Tom had a hot drink.
260. They often write to each other.

261. Unless you hurry, you'll be late.
262. Because of the bad weather, they postponed the match.
263. Mary is not old enough to get married.
264. I'd rather not go to the museum.
265. I'd rather you cooked the dinner now.
266. She worked so hard that she made herself ill.
267. This problem can be solved.
268. The man who was injured in the accident was taken to hospital.
269. What a beautiful girl!
270. Tom is too young to drive a car.
271. He is said to be 108 years old.
272. It was very stupid of her to go out without a coat.
273. More and more pollution is being produced by that factory.
274. She drives faster and more carelessly than me (I do).
275. I must have my shoes cleaned before the interview.
276. It took us five hours to get to London.
277. You needn't shout.
278. On arriving in Canberra, I wrote a letter home.
279. Never have I seen such a mess in my life.
280. It's no use trying to escape.
281. Thousands of tons of rubbish are thrown into the forest.
282. More rain falls in Athens than in Tokyo in January.
283. The destruction of most of the old city of London was made by a fire in the 1600s.

09/12/34/1368

# MỤC LỤC

<b>TENSES (Các thì) .....</b>	5
<b>SEQUENCE OF TENSES (Sự phối hợp các thì).....</b>	18
<b>CLAUSES AND PHRASES (Mệnh đề và cụm từ) .....</b>	25
A. Clauses of condition. (Mệnh đề chỉ điều kiện) .....	25
B. Clauses after wish - if only (Mệnh đề sau wish và if only).....	29
C. Phrases and Clauses of Purpose (Cụm từ và mệnh đề chỉ mục đích) ...	31
D. Phrases and Clauses of Result (Cụm từ và mệnh đề chỉ kết quả) .....	34
E. Phrases and Clauses of Reason (Cụm từ và mệnh đề chỉ lý do).....	39
F. Phrases and Clauses of Concession (Cụm từ và mệnh đề chỉ sự tương phản) .....	41
G. Clauses after as if, as though, it's high time, it's time, would rather .....	44
H. Noun clauses (Mệnh đề danh từ) .....	46
I. Relative clauses (Mệnh đề quan hệ) .....	48
<b>EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY (Sự diễn tả về số lượng) .....</b>	58
<b>STYLES (Văn phong) .....</b>	63
<b>EMPHASIS (Đang nhấn mạnh) .....</b>	68
<b>THE PARTS OF SPEECH (Từ loại) .....</b>	71
1. Nouns (Danh từ) .....	71
- Phân loại danh từ .....	71
- Chức năng của danh từ trong câu .....	72
- Số của danh từ .....	72
- Sự tương hợp giữa chủ ngữ và động từ .....	74
- Cách của danh từ .....	76
2. Pronouns (Đại từ) .....	79
- Đại từ nhân xưng .....	79
- Đại từ sở hữu .....	80
- Đại từ phản thân .....	80
- Đại từ chỉ định .....	81
- Đại từ bất định .....	82
- Đại từ liên hệ .....	82
- Từ xác định đứng trước .....	83
3. Adjectives (Tính từ) .....	86
- Phân loại tính từ .....	86
- Phân từ dùng làm tính từ .....	88
- Danh từ dùng làm tính từ .....	88
- Chức năng của tính từ .....	89
- Trật tự từ của tính từ .....	89

4. Adverbs (Trạng từ) .....	93
- Hình thức trạng từ.....	93
- Phân loại trạng từ.....	93
- Chức năng của trạng từ.....	94
- Phép đảo chủ ngữ và động từ sau các trạng từ.....	95
5. Comparisons (So sánh) .....	98
6. Verbs (Động từ) .....	103
- Phân loại động từ.....	103
- Các hình thức của động từ.....	104
- Cách dùng động từ .....	104
• Một số động từ đáng chú ý .....	109
7. Numerals (Số từ) .....	114
- Số đếm .....	114
- Số thứ tự .....	114
8. Prepositions (Giới từ) .....	116
- Hình thức của giới từ.....	116
- Phân loại giới từ.....	116
• Cách dùng của giới từ .....	117
9. Conjunctions (Liên từ) .....	131
- Hình thức của liên từ.....	131
- Phân loại liên từ. ....	131
10. Articles (Mạo từ) .....	133
11. Word study (Từ vựng học) .....	137
A- Word formations (Cách thành lập từ) .....	137
B- Word forms (Hình thức của từ) .....	141
C- Acronyms (Từ viết tắt). ....	152
D- Idiomatic expressions (Thành ngữ) .....	153
<b>REPORTED SPEECH (<i>Lời nói gián tiếp</i>) .....</b>	<b>156</b>
<b>THE PASSIVE AND ACTIVE SENTENCES</b>	
( <i>Câu chủ động - Câu bị động</i> ) .....	160
<b>SENTENCES (Câu) .....</b>	<b>167</b>
- Phân loại câu .....	167
- Các loại câu .....	167
- Các mẫu câu cơ bản .....	170
<b>PRACTICE TEST .....</b>	<b>173</b>
<b>ĐÁP ÁN .....</b>	<b>188</b>

HẾT

